

# 点金训练

## 教师用书

► 英语

《点金训练》编写组 编

选择性必修 第四册

配外研版



四川教育出版社



# CONTENTS

# 目录

## Unit 1 Looking forwards

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	1
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	5
Section III	Using language .....	10
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	19
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	22
	读后续写技能养成 .....	29

## Unit 2 Lessons in life

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	39
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	43
Section III	Using language .....	48
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	55
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	58
	读后续写技能养成 .....	63

## Unit 3 The world meets China

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	73
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	77
Section III	Using language .....	82
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	89
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	92
	读后续写技能养成 .....	99



## Unit 4 Everyday economics

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	108
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	112
Section III	Using language	118
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	124
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	127
	读后续写技能养成	133

## Unit 5 Into the unknown

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	144
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	148
Section III	Using language	153
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	161
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	164
	读后续写技能养成	170

## Unit 6 Space and beyond

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	180
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	184
Section III	Using language	189
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	198
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	201
	读后续写技能养成	207
	综合检测(一)	217
	综合检测(二)	224

## Unit 1

## Looking forwards

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 阅读课文，获取课文主要信息，叙述课文中两位作家的成长历程、他们在成长过程中的不同际遇及代表作，同时结合自己的成长经历，理解如何“面对未来”；
- 观看视频，总结鲁迅做出的重大的人生选择并归纳其背后的原因，了解他在民族面临危难时如何立志从思想上唤醒民众，初步思考“人生的选择”这一主题；
- 观看图片，学会比较分析不同道路之间的差异，谈一谈对人生的道路的看法，对“人生的选择”形成初步认识。

## 自主式预习

## 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

## (一)核心词汇

- ambition *n.* 追求,理想
- correspondent *n.* 通讯员,记者
- historical *adj.* (有关)历史的
- detective *n.* 私家侦探
- ultimately *adv.* 最后,最终
- trainee *n.* 接受工作培训的人;实习生
- backwards *adv.* 往回,往前面
- take action 采取行动
- go on 继续
- by contrast 相比之下,相对照

11. compared to 与……相比

12. give up 放弃

13. in the face of 面对

## (二)阅读词汇

- dot *n.* 点,小圆点
- boyhood *n.* (男性的)童年时期,少年时代
- bullfighting *n.* 斗牛
- come one's way 发生在某人身上
- be forced to do 被迫做
- long to do 渴望/盼望做
- kill off 杀死;消灭
- get enough of 对……厌烦
- take a leaf out of/from sb.'s book 以某人为榜样,效仿某人

## 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	The most important issue of our lives—the <b>1.</b> <u>future</u> .	How should we approach the future, by <b>2.</b> <u>taking action</u> to shape it or just accepting whatever comes our way?

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2 (Para. 2)	Having plans <b>3. in place</b> for the future is no guarantee of their becoming reality.	This can be illustrated by comparing the lives of two famous authors. Though they shared the same <b>4. ambitious and energetic approach</b> to life, their careers unfolded quite differently.
Part 3 (Para. 3 — Para. 5)	Information about the two writers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The American writer, Ernest Hemingway, had the <b>5. ambition</b> to write from early boyhood. He did many different jobs and used his extraordinary experiences to <b>6. inform</b> his writing. Finally he succeeded as a writer.</li> <li>• <b>7. By contrast</b>, the young Arthur Conan Doyle, whose main ambition was to become a writer of <b>8. historical novels</b>, wasn't so lucky. Compared to the stories of his fictional <b>9. detective</b>, Sherlock Holmes, his success in other fields was nothing.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 6)	Make preparations for the unknown.	Whatever twists and turns you may encounter, learn from the two authors and be prepared for the <b>10. unexpected</b> .

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What is possibly the most important concern in life?
  - Yesterday.
  - Today.
  - The future.
  - The day before yesterday.
- What did Hemingway do to achieve his ambition to become a writer?
  - He joined a local Kansas newspaper as a trainee reporter.
  - He became foreign correspondent for the *Toronto Star*.
  - He used his experiences both in Europe and Cuba to inform his writing.
  - All the above.
- What's Doyle's main writing ambition?
  - Becoming a writer of historical novels.
  - Working as a doctor in the local area.
  - Being known for his fictional stories.
  - Devoting himself to writing one story about what he knew.

答案: 1~3 CDA

### II. 课文语法填空

Facing the future, can we take action to shape it, **1. or** should we just accept whatever comes our way? As many of us already know, **2. having** (have) plans in place for the future is no guarantee that they will become reality. In this respect, some people are **3. more fortunate** (fortunate) than others, as can **4. be illustrated** (illustrate) by comparing the lives of two famous authors—Ernest Hemingway and Arthur Conan Doyle.

Hemingway, born in 1899, was single-minded in his ambition **5. to write** (write) from early boyhood. In order to achieve his goal, he did many different **6. jobs** (job) and used his own experiences to inform his writing. **7. Eventually** (eventual) his hard work paid off, winning the Pulitzer Prize for Fiction and the Nobel Prize in Literature. **8. By contrast**, Doyle wasn't so lucky. He longed to become known for his historical novels amongst other academic works, but his success in other fields was nothing, **9. compared** (compare) to the stories of

his fictional detective, Sherlock Holmes.

Though both of them were ultimately successful, their paths to success were quite different. So, whatever twists and turns you might encounter, be prepared for **10. the unexpected.**

### III. 阅读升华

1. Why did Doyle kill off the famous detective in a

novel?

Because he wanted to focus on writing his historical novels by doing so.

2. What do you want to be when you grow up? And how do you plan to achieve your goal?

略

## 课后素养评价(一)

### I. 阅读理解

We humans have an outsize influence on this planet, and our winged, finned, and four-legged neighbours are in their tough time. Many animals have died out in response to the pressures, but some survivors are adapting. Some animals are showing off never-before-seen behaviours, shifting their diets, and even evolving different shapes, sizes, and colours.

The shifts can't be avoided and are likely permanent; There's no going back to when wildlife was still completely wild. "There's no place anywhere on the planet in its original condition. There are micro-plastics at the bottom of the ocean, and Antarctica is melting. The world has changed because we're in it," says Tag Engstrom, a biologist at California State University.

African elephants in Mozambique's Gorongosa National Park are some daring members of the animal kingdom, who have found a will and a way to change right along with it.

Normally elephants use their 6-foot-long tusks to dig wells in search of water, lift objects, rip bark off trees, and even battle lions. In other words, the ivory appendages (附属品) are not just impressive to look at—they are highly useful tools. So it might seem strange that a significant number of African elephants in Mozambique's Gorongosa National Park, once an illegal hunting wildlife area, are now being born without tusks.

According to a 2021 DNA analysis published in the journal *Science*, that the elephants are born without tusks is no coincidence. After decades of being shot by ivory brokers, the leading elephants in some herds have passed down a trait that prevents

the females' prize possessions from growing in—and helps them avoid being hunted. No one knows yet how widespread these genes might be in the greater population of African elephants, or how the loss of tusks might affect the mammals' survival overall. But the findings are a powerful, if depressing, reminder of the extremes a species might endure to escape from extinction.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍在人类活动的影响下一些动物正在进化,以避免灭绝。

1. How do the animals respond to humans' influence?

- A. Many animals have evolved four legs.
- B. Animals can survive despite the tough time.
- C. Some animals are developing different shapes.
- D. Animals live in harmony with human beings.

**C 细节理解题。**根据第一段中的“Many animals have died out in response to the pressures, but some survivors are adapting. Some animals are showing off never-before-seen behaviours, shifting their diets, and even evolving different shapes, sizes, and colours.”可知,面对人类的影响,一些动物正在发展出不同的形状。故选 C。

2. Why are the shifts likely permanent?

- A. We human beings are evolving.
- B. Wildlife are not going back to the wild.
- C. Plastics appear at the bottom of the ocean.
- D. The planet is no longer what it was like before.

**D 细节理解题。**根据第二段中的“The shifts can't be avoided and are likely permanent; There's no going back to when wildlife was still completely wild. 'There's no place anywhere on the planet in its original condition...’”可知,人类活动导致地球不再如从前一般了。故选 D。

3. What can we infer from the 2021 DNA analysis?
- A. The elephants evolve the new trait by chance.  
 B. Elephants in some herds are all born without tusks.  
 C. Genes will be widespread in the greater population.  
 D. The new trait may help elephants survive the extinction.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“According to a 2021 DNA analysis published in the journal *Science*, that the elephants are born without tusks is no coincidence. After decades of being shot by ivory brokers, the leading elephants in some herds have passed down a trait that prevents the females' prize possessions from growing in—and helps them avoid being hunted.”可推知,这些非洲母象进化成生来就没有象牙的样子是为了避免被捕杀,从而不会因此灭绝。故选 D。

4. In which column of a magazine can we most likely find the text?

A. Travel.            B. Science.  
 C. Puzzles.           D. Well-being.

B 文章出处题。通读全文,尤其是第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍在人类活动的影响下一些动物正在进化,以避免灭绝。这和科学研究相关。由此推知,本文最有可能出自杂志的科学版块。故选 B。

## II. 七选五

No matter what profession or occupation you hold, you will need to work with others to meet your goals. Group work is a great way to showcase your own skills while getting help from your teammates in areas where you might not be as strong. 1

Clarify the team expectations, so everyone is on the same page. 2 It's likely that each teammate has a different idea about what's expected of them, as well as what everyone else needs to be doing. It's essential that the team discuss these expectations and agree on one universal list of expectations that everyone will follow.

3 No one likes a teammate who barely

contributes to the project. Take on an equal part of the work, and speak up if you realise you aren't doing your fair share. Not only will your group mates appreciate your work ethic, but it will show your supervisor or instructor that you're a good team player.

Direct your concern towards the problem, not your teammates. Don't accuse or blame anyone on your team for causing the conflict, even if you believe they did. 4 Have your team work through conflict, using it to their benefit.

Focus on the success of the group, not your personal success. When you're on a team, everyone's success depends on each member working towards a common goal. 5 Keep your focus on your team's success, and your own success will follow.

- A. Make sure you do an equal share of the work.  
 B. Volunteer to take on extra work when necessary.  
 C. Treat the team's accomplishments as a group success.  
 D. Our guide will show you how to boost your teamwork skills.  
 E. State the issue you're having, then listen to what everyone has to say.  
 F. Instead, keep all of your comments focused on the issue and how your team can solve it.  
 G. This can include explaining the expectations or asking questions if you find them unclear.

答案:1~5 DG AFC

### 【微点写作】求职信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 对于你们征聘的职位,我高兴地感觉到自己完全有资格申请。

I am glad that I feel quite qualified for the position you advertised.

2. 我对你们征聘的销售经理职位极其感兴趣。

I am extremely interested in your advertised position of sales manager.

3. 此外,我日语说得很流利。

In addition, I can speak Japanese fluently.



## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，感知课文的语篇结构及语言特点，学习和掌握语篇中与话题相关的表达，并能运用所学表达进行交流；
3. 结合两位作家成长历程中积极的人生态度以及课文中史蒂夫·乔布斯的名言，加深对本单元主题的认识，学习他们坚持不懈、矢志不渝的良好品质。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Every time I see him, I think of my **boyhood**.  
童年时期
2. She rocked **backwards** and forwards on her chair.  
往回
3. The letters “i” and “j” have **dots** over them. 点
4. **Bullfighting** is part of Spanish culture and history.  
斗牛

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>ambition</u> <i>n.</i> 追求, 理想	<u>ambitious</u> <i>adj.</i> 有理想的, 有抱负的; 有野心的
<u>correspondent</u> <i>n.</i> 通讯员, 记者	<u>correspond</u> <i>v.</i> 符合, 相一致; 通信; 相当于
<u>historical</u> <i>adj.</i> (有关) 历史的	<u>history</u> <i>n.</i> 历史
	<u>historian</u> <i>n.</i> 历史学家
<u>detective</u> <i>n.</i> 私家侦探	<u>detect</u> <i>v.</i> 察觉, 发现; 探测
<u>ultimately</u> <i>adv.</i> 最后, 最终	<u>ultimate</u> <i>adj.</i> 最后的, 最终的; 极端的 <i>n.</i> 最好的事物, 极品, 精华
<u>trainee</u> <i>n.</i> 接受工作培训的人; 实习生	<u>train</u> <i>v.</i> (接受) 训练; (被) 培训
	<u>trainer</u> <i>n.</i> 教练(员); 运动鞋; 跑鞋

#### III. 补全短语

1. in place 适当; 在正确的位置
2. in this respect 在这一方面, 就这点来说
3. be based on 根据; 以……为基础

4. devote oneself to 致力于, 献身于
5. focus on 集中于
6. under pressure 在压力下
7. turn out 证明是, 结果是
8. in the face of 面对
9. take action 采取行动
10. compared to 与……相比

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: although 引导让步状语从句  
Although they shared the same ambitious and energetic approach to life, their careers unfolded in contrasting ways.  
虽然他们面对生活都有远大的志向, 而且精力充沛, 但他们的职业生涯的发展却截然不同。
2. 句型公式: on doing sth.  
On leaving high school, he joined a local Kansas newspaper as a trainee reporter.  
高中一毕业, 他就进入堪萨斯当地的一家报社做实习记者。
3. 句型公式: whatever 引导让步状语从句  
So, whatever twists and turns you might encounter, take a leaf out of the books of these two authors and be prepared for the unexpected.  
因此, 不管你可能会遇到怎样的坎坷和曲折, 都应以此两位作家为榜样, 做好应对意外的准备。
4. 句型公式: 独立主格结构  
Though both of these men were ultimately successful, their paths to success were very different, their futures not necessarily turning out exactly as they planned.  
虽然这两个人最终都成功了, 但他们的成功之路截然不同, 他们的未来也不一定完全如他们所计划的那样。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. ambition n. 追求,理想

(教材原文) The American author, Ernest Hemingway, born in 1899, was from early boyhood single-minded in his **ambition** to write.

美国作家欧内斯特·海明威生于1899年,从少年时代起就一心一意地致力于写作。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Her **ambition is to become** part of the national team for the next Paralympic Games.

她的理想就是成为下一届残奥会的国家队队员。

She never **achieved her ambition of becoming** a famous writer.

她一直未能实现自己当著名作家的理想。

They **were very ambitious for** their children.

他们望子成龙心切。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) an ambition _____ / of doing sth. 做某事的雄心 achieve one's ambition 实现某人的理想 (2) ambitious <i>adj.</i> 有理想的,有抱负的;有野心的 be ambitious _____ sth./sb. 渴望得到某物/希望某人成功
探究结论	(1) to do (2) for

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is my lifelong ambition to coach (coach) a leading team.

② The young man is very weak, but he is very ambitious (ambition).

③ Her parents were ambitious for her and her brother.

(2) 完成句子

You will achieve your ambition as long as you work hard.

只要你努力,你会实现你的理想。

### 2. correspondent n. 通讯员,记者

(教材原文) He went on to become foreign

**correspondent** for the *Toronto Star* and used his extraordinary experiences in Europe and later Cuba to inform his writing.

他后来成为《多伦多星报》的驻外记者,并根据他在欧洲和后来在古巴的独特经历进行写作。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The written record of the conversation doesn't **correspond to/with** what was actually said.

那次谈话的书面记录与实际所说的不符。

In African languages there is a close **correspondence** between sounds and letters.

在非洲各语言中,发音和字母之间有着密切的对应关系。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) correspond <i>v.</i> 符合,相一致;通信;相当于 correspond with sb. 与某人通信/联系 correspond _____ sth. 与某物相一致/符合 correspond to sth. 类似于某物,相当于某物 (2) correspondence <i>n.</i> 来往信件,通信联系 in correspondence with 与……有通信联系 (3) corresponding <i>adj.</i> 相当的;相应的,一致的
探究结论	(1) to/with

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Your description of the event doesn't correspond to/with hers.

② We have kept up a correspondence (correspond) for many years.

(2) 一句多译

他与十年前遇到的美国朋友们仍然保持着联系。

① He is still in correspondence with the American friends he met ten years ago. (correspondence)

② He still corresponds with the American friends he met ten years ago. (correspond)

## 3. devote v. 致力于, 奉献于; 把……专用于

(教材原文) After Sherlock Holmes made him a household name, Doyle gave up medicine and **devoted** himself entirely to writing.

夏洛克·福尔摩斯让他家喻户晓后, 道尔放弃了行医, 全身心地投入到写作中。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

I'm **devoting all my energy to educating** children.

我把我所有的精力都用于教育孩子。

She **devoted herself to** her career.

她全力倾注于自己的事业。

The old scientist **is devoted to** his homeland.

这位老科学家深爱着他的祖国。

I feel that I've been given a second life to **devote to** something that is meaningful.

我觉得我被给予了第二次生命来致力于有意义的事情。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) devote one's time/energy _____ (doing) sth. 某人把时间/精力用在/献给(做)某事上 devote _____ to 某人献身于……, 致力于…… (2) devoted <i>adj.</i> 挚爱的; 忠诚的 be devoted _____ (doing) sth. 献身于(做)某事, 专心于(做)某事 (3) devotion <i>n.</i> 挚爱; 奉献; 忠诚
探究结论	(1) to; oneself (2) to

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The woman is devoted (devote) to taking care of her children.

② She got the prize for her devotion (devote) to the poor children.

③ Neighbours devoted their spare time to helping (help) others rebuild homes.

(2) 句型转换

The woman devotes herself to the research, so she has little time to go home.

→① Devoted to the research, the woman has little time to go home. (形容词短语作状语)

→② Devoting herself to the research, the woman has little time to go home. (现在分词作状语)

## 4. 独立主格结构

(教材原文) Though both of these men were ultimately successful, their paths to success were very different, **their futures not necessarily turning out exactly as they planned**.

虽然这两个人最终都成功了, 但他们的成功之路截然不同, 他们的未来也不一定完全如他们所计划的那样。

[句式分析] their futures not necessarily turning out exactly as they planned 是独立主格结构, 在句中作状语。它是由名词(their futures)加上分词短语(not necessarily turning out exactly as they planned)构成的独立结构, 用于修饰整个句子。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

I have received letters from so many people, **all expressing their concern**.

我已经收到了那么多人的来信, 所有人都表达了他们的关心。

**Time permitting**, we will go to the park.

如果时间允许, 我们就去公园。

**All things taken into account**, her performance is satisfactory.

把所有因素都考虑在内, 她的表演是令人满意的。

**Nobody to come tomorrow**, we'll have to put off the meeting till next week.

如果明天没有人来, 我们就不得不把会议推迟到下周。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) 独立主格结构的基本构成形式: 名词/代词+现在分词/过去分词/不定式/形容词/副词/介词短语等。这种结构的功能相当于分词或分词短语作状语, 但区别在于, 分词的逻辑主语是整个句子的主语, 而独立主格结构中的逻辑主语是它本身的名词或代词。 (2) 如果逻辑主语与后面的非谓语动词是逻辑上的主动关系, 用“名词/代词+doing”结构; 如果是被动关系, 则用“名词/代词+_____”结构; 如果强调是将来发生的动作, 则用“名词/代词+_____”结构。
探究结论	(2) done; to do/be done

### 三评 多维度评价测试

#### (1) 单句语法填空

① So many people to help (help) him, he is sure to succeed.

② The homework finished (finish), the boy went out to play.

③ The boy was lying on the ground, his eyes staring (stare) at the sky.

#### (2) 句型转换

After all the work had been finished, the young man went home. (改为独立主格结构)

→ All the work finished, the young man went home.

## 课后素养评价(二)

### I. 单词拼写

1. His ambition (理想) to become a pilot was held back by his poor eyesight.
2. As a CCTV's war correspondent (记者), he is likely to expose himself to many dangers.
3. We had many difficulties at first, but ultimately (最终) we succeeded.
4. We must learn the lessons and look ahead, not backwards (往回).
5. This comedy was set in America, whose leading character was a detective (私家侦探) with reputation.
6. Looking back on his boyhood (童年时期), he was full of mixed feelings.
7. Mount Tai is attractive to tourists for its beautiful scenery and historical (历史的) sites.
8. To his delight, he was engaged as a trainee (实习生) copywriter yesterday.

### II. 短语填空

by contrast; in the face of; take action; be based on; focus on; turn out; compared to; devote oneself to

1. I was at a disadvantage compared to the younger members of the team.
2. Let's all take action now and contribute to the environmental protection.
3. You will never gain success unless you fully devote yourself/yourselves to your work.
4. This conference held yesterday focused on two key missions: keeping (维持) the world peace and promoting economy.
5. When you look at their new system, ours seems very old-fashioned by contrast.
6. We all believe that things will turn out fine.
7. Jordan never gave up in the face of failure and finally he succeeded.

8. Questions 22 to 25 are based on the passage you have just heard.

### III. 完成句子

1. We found the detective checking out the dots on the window just now.  
我们刚才发现私家侦探正在检查窗子上的小圆点。
2. On seeing the trainees chatting while working, the boss burst with anger.  
一看到实习生们一边工作一边聊天,老板就勃然大怒。
3. As is known to all, Mark Twain is a great American writer.  
众所周知,马克·吐温是一位伟大的美国作家。
4. Whatever he told me about, I wouldn't change my mind.  
不管他跟我说的是什么,我都不会改变主意。
5. Many trees, flowers, and grass to be planted, our newly-built school will look more beautiful.  
种上许多的树、花和草后,我们新建的学校看上去将会更美。

### IV. 完形填空

Mark Eklund was in the first third-grade class that I taught at Saint Mary's School. Neat in appearance, he had that happy-to-be-alive 1 that made even his occasional mischievousness (恶作剧) delightful. What impressed me so much, 2, was his sincere response every time I had to correct him for misbehaving: "Thank you for 3 me!" I did not know what to 4 it at first, but before long I became accustomed to hearing it many times a day.

One Friday, I asked the pupils to think of the 5 things of their classmates and write them down. That Saturday, I 6 the name of each student on a

separate sheet of paper, and I listed what everyone else had said about that individual. On Monday I gave each student his or her 7. Some of them ran two pages. Before long, the entire class was smiling. “Really?” I heard the whispers. “I never knew that meant 8 to anyone.”

Several years later, I heard of the news that Mark was 9 in the war. At his funeral, Mark’s parents found me. “We want to show you something,” Mark’s father said, taking a wallet out of his pocket. “They found this 10 Mark when he was shot dead. It 11 him all his life.” Opening it, he carefully removed two 12 pieces of notebook paper that had obviously been folded and refolded many times. I knew without looking that the pieces of paper were the ones on which I had listed all the good things Mark’s 13 had said about him. That’s 14 I finally sat down and cried right there.

Sometimes the smallest thing could 15 the most to others.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的学生 Mark 的故事。Mark 乐观真诚,在老师安排的一项活动中得到了同学们的称赞,这些称赞一直陪着 Mark 直到他阵亡。这件事让作者意识到最微小的事情对别人来说可能意义重大。

1. A. altitude                      B. attitude  
C. gratitude                      D. latitude

B 根据上文的“happy-to-be-alive”和下文的“his occasional mischievousness (恶作剧) delightful”可知,快乐是 Mark 的生活态度。故选 B。

2. A. though                      B. instead  
C. therefore                      D. otherwise

A 根据下文的“his sincere response every time I had to correct him for misbehaving”可知,Mark 这种不寻常的表现让作者印象深刻,这与常理形成转折关系。故选 A。

3. A. punishing                      B. praising  
C. advising                      D. correcting

D 根据上文的“correct him for misbehaving”可知,此处是指作者纠正他的不良行为。故选 D。

4. A. do with                      B. begin with  
C. deal with                      D. agree with

A 此处指 Mark 说“Thank you for 3 me!”让作者感到意外,有点不知所措。表示“如何处理”,与 what 搭配用 do with。故选 A。

5. A. worst                      B. most  
C. nicest                      D. happiest

C 根据下文的“the pieces of paper were the ones on which I had listed all the good things”可知,作者让学生们写同班同学身上最美好的事情。故选 C。

6. A. set down                      B. broke down  
C. settled down                      D. turned down

A 根据上文的“I asked the pupils to think of the 5 things of their classmates and write them down”和下文的“I listed what everyone else had said about that individual”可知,作者把学生的名字和写的内容都记了下来。故选 A。

7. A. homework                      B. essay  
C. notebook                      D. list

D 根据上文的“I listed what everyone else had said”可知,作者把学生的名字和写的内容都记了下来,然后把这个清单发给学生。故选 D。

8. A. something                      B. nothing  
C. anything                      D. everything

C 此处表示“意味着什么”,否定句中用 anything。故选 C。

9. A. killed                      B. wounded  
C. awarded                      D. scolded

A 根据下文的“At his funeral”可知,Mark 在战争中去世了。故选 A。

10. A. with                      B. on  
C. off                      D. in

B 此处指钱包是在 Mark 身上找到的。故选 B。

11. A. stuck out                      B. stuck with  
C. stuck up                      D. stuck to

B 根据上文的“They found this 10 Mark when he was shot dead.”可知,此处指钱包中有对于 Mark 来说珍贵的东西,他一直珍藏在身上。故选 B。

12. A. worn                      B. torn  
C. dirty                      D. clean

A 根据下文的“had obviously been folded and refolded many times”可知,这两张纸被反复折叠过多次了,已经磨损破旧了。故选 A。

13. A. teachers                      B. parents  
C. classmates                      D. friends  
C 这里和上文的“I asked the pupils to think of the 5 things of their classmates and write them down”相呼应,纸上写的是同班同学们对 Mark 的称赞。故选 C。
14. A. because                      B. how  
C. when                              D. where  
C 此处指作者看到 Mark 一直珍藏着同学们对他的赞美时激动得哭了。故选 C。
15. A. show                          B. confirm  
C. express                          D. mean  
D 句意:有时候,最微小的事情对别人来说可能意义重大。此处表示“意味着”。故选 D。

【微点写作】求职信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我希望你们能给我一个实现我的理想的机会。

I hope you can give/offer me a chance to realise my ambition.

2. 如果我能被你们公司录用,我将非常感激。

I'd appreciate it if I could be admitted into your company.

3. 如果您需要了解我更多的信息,请发邮件到 lihua@163.com 联系我。

If you need to know more about me, please contact me at lihua@163.com.

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务及目标

1. 在实际语境中复习巩固、灵活运用动词的常见时态形式;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习并掌握有关“选择与决定”的表达,并能在实际生活中灵活运用;
4. 关注语用功能,学会如何礼貌地提问题以及说明原因,并能在实际生活中运用所学的相关表达。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They met again after a **gap** of twenty years. 间隔
2. She will design a **fantastic** new kitchen for you—and all within your budget. 极好的
3. When choosing our **majors**, we need to take our interests and our career plans into consideration. 专业
4. By **regulating** the economy and competition, the government could ensure equal opportunity. 管理
5. We need to ensure a smooth **transition** between the old system and the new one. 过渡
6. The job will require you to use all your skills to the **maximum**. 最大限度
7. Winning this contract is **crucial** to the success of the company. 至关重要的

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>admission</u> <i>n.</i> 允许进入 (加入)	admit <i>v.</i> 承认;准许进入 (加入);接受……(入学)
<u>participation</u> <i>n.</i> 参加, 参与	participate <i>v.</i> 参加,参与
<u>originally</u> <i>adv.</i> 起初; 独创地	origin <i>n.</i> 起源,源头 original <i>adj.</i> 最初的,原来的;独创的
<u>congratulation</u> <i>n.</i> 祝贺,道贺	congratulate <i>v.</i> 祝贺,向……道贺
<u>option</u> <i>n.</i> 选择;可选择的事物;选修课	optional <i>adj.</i> 可选择的;选修的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>accomplishment</u> <i>n.</i> 完成;成就	<u>accomplish</u> <i>v.</i> 完成
<u>independent</u> <i>adj.</i> 独立的,自主的	<u>depend</u> <i>v.</i> 依靠,依赖
	<u>dependent</u> <i>adj.</i> 依靠的,依赖的
	<u>independence</u> <i>n.</i> 独立,自主
<u>employment</u> <i>n.</i> 就业;雇用	<u>employ</u> <i>v.</i> 雇用;运用
	<u>employer</u> <i>n.</i> 雇主
	<u>employee</u> <i>n.</i> 雇员

## III. 补全短语

1. in addition to 除了……之外
2. make up one's mind 做出决定,拿定主意
3. pass up 放弃,错过(机会)
4. put off 推迟……,使……延期
5. reject... out of hand 坚决拒绝……;彻底否决……
6. weigh up 仔细考虑,权衡
7. free of 没有……的;免于……的
8. be suitable for 适合
9. have second thoughts (对原先的决定)犹豫,产生怀疑

10. due to 由于,因为

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:过去完成时

... the young Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Scotland in 1859, had originally worked as a doctor.

……于1859年出生于苏格兰的年轻的阿瑟·柯南·道尔,最初是一名医生。

2. 句型公式:过去进行时

... Doyle wrote some of his early Holmes stories while he was waiting for patients in his medical practice in London.

……道尔在伦敦行医等待病人时写下了他早期的一些福尔摩斯故事。

3. 句型公式:现在完成进行时

... but Sherlock Holmes has been entertaining readers for well over a century.

……但夏洛克·福尔摩斯却在一个多世纪以来一直吸引着读者。

4. 句型公式:It+be+adj.+(for sb.) to do sth.

It is crucial for teenagers to develop into mature and responsible members of society.

对青少年来说,发展成为成熟和负责任的社会成员是至关重要的。

## 任务型课堂

1. admission *n.* 允许进入(加入);承认;入场费

(教材原文)I've been recommended for **admission** to study physics at my dream university.  
我被推荐去我梦想中的大学学习物理。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

Three students in the class have **gained admission to** Peking University so far.

到目前为止,这个班已有三名学生被北京大学录取。

She **admitted him to be** right.

她承认他是正确的。

I shall never forget the day when I **was admitted into/to** the Party.

我永远不会忘记入党的那一天。

He **admitted reading** the letter without permission.

他承认未经允许读了这封信。

She **admits being** strict with her children.

她承认对自己的孩子很严厉。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) obtain/gain admission _____ 获准进入</p> <p>(2) admit <i>v.</i> 承认;准许进入(加入);接受……(入学)</p> <p>admit + <i>n./pron.</i> + to be... 承认……是……</p> <p>admit sb./sth. into/to... 允许某人/某物进入……</p> <p>admit _____ sth. 承认做某事</p>
探究结论	<p>(1)to (2)doing</p>

### 三评 多维度评价测试

#### (1) 单句语法填空

① No one can get the admission (admit) to the museum without a ticket.

② She dreamed of being admitted (admit) into Peking University.

③ All of us admit him to be (be) one of the best players in China.

#### (2) 句型转换

The man admitted that he had stolen the old computer. (改为简单句)

→ The man admitted having stolen the old computer.

## 2. participation n. 参加, 参与

(教材原文) In addition to **participation** in school, a part-time job—such as working in a café or in an office administration role—can also be helpful in this transition.

除了上学、兼职, 像在咖啡馆工作或在办公室担任管理职位, 也有助于这一过渡。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Any student who is interested in the photography show is welcome to **participate**.

欢迎任何对这个摄影展感兴趣的学生来参加。

I am sure the far-sighted people of this country will **participate in** the debate.

我相信这个国家的有识之士会参加这场辩论。

If you have time, please answer the comment of another **participant**.

如果你有时间, 请答复另外一位参与者的评论。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) participate <i>v.</i> 参加, 参与 participate _____ 参加, 参与 (2) _____ <i>n.</i> 参与者
探究结论	(1) in (2) participant

**【易混辨析】participate in; attend; take part in; join; join in**

易混词汇	区别
participate in	正式用词, 指参与某活动或事件, 含积极、主动之意。

易混词汇	区别
attend	侧重出席会议、参加学术活动等。
take part in	侧重参加某项群众性、集体性的活动, 突出参加者在其中发挥一定的作用。
join	普通用词, 指加入团体、组织等并成为其中一员, 如参军、入党、入团等。
join in	指与他人一起参与某活动或一同做某事, 可用于 join in (doing) sth./join sb. in (doing) sth.。

### 三评 多维度评价测试

#### (1) 单句语法填空

① Companies can encourage participation (participate) in lectures on healthy eating and living.

② (2023 · 新高考 I 卷) You'll hear these participants' (participant) stories and learn what strategies worked well for them.

#### (2) 选词填空

participate in; attend; take part in; join; join in

① They all participated in/took part in the competition held last month.

② He joined the army at the age of 18.

③ I first just watched the game, and then was invited to join in.

④ Jane can't attend the meeting at 3 o'clock this afternoon because she will be teaching a class at that time.

⑤ The famous man took part in/participated in the student movements actively when he was at school.

## 3. “It+be+adj.+(for sb.) to do sth.”句型

(教材原文) **It is crucial for teenagers to develop** into mature and responsible members of society. 对青少年来说, 发展成为成熟和负责任的社会成员是至关重要的。



续表

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

**It is important for zookeepers to protect** the pandas.

对动物园管理员来说,保护大熊猫是很重要的。

**It's difficult for us to finish** the work in such a short time.

对我们来说,在这么短的时间内完成这项工作很困难。

**It's clever of you to work out** the maths problem.

你解出了这道数学题,真聪明。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	句型“ <b>It + be + adj. + for/of sb. to do sth.</b> ”表示“某人做某事是……(的)”,在此句型中,_____是形式主语,真正的主语是不定式的复合结构 <b>for/of sb. to do sth.</b> 。若句中的形容词仅仅是描述行为,不对不定式行为者的品格进行评价,用_____;这类形容词常用的有 <b>difficult, easy, hard, important, dangerous, (im) possible, interesting, pleasant, necessary</b> 等。若句中的形容词是描述不定式行为者的性格、品质
------	---

探究要点	的,用_____;这类形容词常用的有 <b>kind, good, nice, right, wrong, clever, careless, polite, foolish, brave, generous</b> 等。
探究结论	<b>It; for; of</b>

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's important for you to practise your oral English in daily life.

② It's necessary for us to get (get) to school on time.

③ It's very kind of you to help the old man go across the road.

(2) 完成句子

① It's not easy for them to learn a foreign language well.

对于他们来说学好一门外语不容易。

② It is very careless of him to lose so many things.

他丢了这么多东西,真是太粗心了。

## 语法探究

## 复习动词时态——现在完成时、现在完成进行时、过去完成时、过去进行时、将来进行时、过去将来时

## 「语法感知」

① For many of us, it's something we already **have experienced**.

② What **will** we **be doing** in ten years' time?

③ He **would** later **go on** to win the Nobel Prize in Literature.

④ ... the young Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Scotland in 1859, **had** originally **worked** as a doctor.

⑤ ... Doyle wrote some of his early Holmes stories while he **was waiting for** patients in his medical practice in London.

⑥ ... but Sherlock Holmes **has been entertaining** readers for well over a century.

1. 以上例句中含完成时态的句子有①④⑥(填序号),完成时态经常与 **already**, “**for + 时间段**”等时间状语连用。

2. 例句②⑤⑥中含有**进行时**态;例句②中的结构为“**will be + 现在分词**”,表示**将来进行时**;例句⑤中的结构为“**was + 现在分词**”,表示**过去进行时**,例句⑥中的结构为“**has been + 现在分词**”,表示**现在完成进行时**。

3. 例句③中的结构为“**would + 动词原形**”,表示过去将来时。

## 「语法精讲」

### 一、现在完成时

#### (一)概念及构成

现在完成时表示到目前为止已经完成的动作或存在的状态,它强调的是结果,而不是动作。

构成:have/has+过去分词。

#### (二)用法

1. 表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果。常与 already, just, recently, so far, up to now, till now, ever, never 等连用。

**I have already finished** all the work.

我已经完成了所有的工作。

Mr Smith **has just left**.

史密斯先生刚离开。

2. 表示过去已经开始并持续到现在(可能还会继续进行下去)的动作或状态,常和表示一段时间的状语连用,如 for, since, these days, this year 等。

We **have been** good friends **since** we were very young.

我们从小就是好朋友。

**I have been** in the army **for** more than 5 years.

我在部队已经待了五年多了。

3. 在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中,代替将来完成时。

Once you **have promised**, you should keep it.一旦许下诺言,你就应当遵守。

As long as you **have cleaned** all the windows, you are allowed to play.

只要你把所有的窗户擦完,你就可以玩了。

#### (三)现在完成时与一般过去时的区别

现在完成时强调的是过去的动作对现在造成的影响或结果,它连用的时间状语与现在有关,不与表示过去的时间状语连用;一般过去时单纯表示过去发生的动作或存在的状态,与现在的情况没有关系,它一般与表示过去的时间状语连用,如 yesterday, last year, in the past, ago 等。

**I lived** in London for two years.

我在伦敦住过两年。(现在不在伦敦)

**I have lived** in London for two years.

我在伦敦已住了两年了。(现在还在伦敦)

### 二、现在完成进行时

#### (一)概念及构成

现在完成进行时是兼有现在完成时和现在进行

时两者基本特点的时态。由于它有现在完成时的特点,所以它可以表示某一动作对现在产生的结果或影响;由于它又有现在进行时的特点,所以它也可以表示某一动作的延续性、临时性、重复性、生动性乃至感情色彩。

构成:have/has been+现在分词。

#### (二)用法

1. 表示从过去某一时间开始一直持续到现在的动作,这个动作是否继续下去,则由具体语境决定。它常和表示与现在有关的一段时间的状语,如 all the time, this week, this month, all night, all the morning, these days, for+时间段, since+时间点等连用,还与疑问词 how long 连用。

**I have been waiting** for you here for an hour.

我已经在这里等了你一个小时。

2. 表示一直到说话时为止的一段时间内一再重复发生的动作。

You **have been saying** that for five years.

那话你已经说了五年。

We **have been seeing** each other quite a lot recently.

最近我们经常见面。

#### (三)现在完成进行时和现在完成时的区别

1. 现在完成进行时一般强调动作的延续性,过去发生的动作现在可能仍在继续;现在完成时强调过去发生的动作现在已经完成或表示曾经发生过。

**I have been writing** an article.

我一直在写一篇文章。(仍在写)

**I have written** an article.

我已写好了一篇文章。(已完成)

2. 现在完成进行时有时表示刚刚结束的动作,强调动作在不久前持续进行,带有感情色彩;现在完成时一般强调动作的结果,无感情色彩。

Where have you been? We **have been looking for** you everywhere.

你到哪里去了? 我们到处找你。(表示刚刚结束的动作)

We **have looked for** him, but haven't found him.

我们找过他,但没有找到。(表示动作已结束,强调动作的结果)

3. 现在完成进行时可以表示动作的重复性;现在完成时则常常不表示重复性。

**Have you been meeting** her lately?

你最近一直在见她吗？（有“经常见面”之意）

**Have you met** her lately?

你最近见过她吗？（没有“经常见面”的意思）

### 三、过去完成时

#### （一）概念及构成

过去完成时表示过去某一时刻或动作以前已经发生或完成了的动作，对过去的某一点造成的某种影响或结果，用来指在另一个过去的动作之前就已经完成了的事件。

构成：had + 过去分词。

#### （二）用法

1. 表示在过去某一时刻或动作之前完成了的动作，即“过去的过去”。这个过去的时间可以用 by, before 等构成的介词短语或时间状语从句来表示，也可以用一个过去的动作来表示，还可以通过具体语境来表示。

He **had learned** English for a few years **before** he went to the United States.

在去美国之前，他已学习了几年英语。

2. 表示从过去的某一时刻开始，一直延续到过去另一时刻的动作或状态，常和 for, since 构成的时间状语连用。

He said he **had worked** in that factory **since** 1949.

他说自从 1949 年以来他就在那家工厂工作。

3. 在含有定语从句的主从复合句中，如果叙述的是过去的事，先发生的动作常用过去完成时。

I returned the book that I **had borrowed**.

我归还了我借的书。

She found the key that she **had lost**.

她找到了她丢失的那把钥匙。

4. 过去完成时常常用在宾语从句（或间接引语）中，这时从句中的动作发生在主句表示的过去的动作之前。

He said that he **had known** her well.

他说他很了解她。

I thought I **had sent** the letter a week before.

我认为我一星期前就把信寄出去了。

### 四、过去进行时

#### （一）概念及构成

过去进行时表示在过去某一时刻或某一时间段内正在发生或进行的动作或状态。

构成：was/were + 现在分词。

#### （二）用法

1. 表示在过去某一时刻或某一阶段正在发生的动作。

I **was having** a shower at that time.

那时我正在冲澡。

She **was having** an English class from 7:00 to 8:00 last night.

昨天晚上 7 点到 8 点她正在上英语课。

2. 某些趋向性动词，如 go, come, start, leave, return 等用过去进行时表示过去将要发生的动作。

She wanted to know when we **were starting** this task.

她想知道我们什么时候开始这项任务。

3. 与 always, forever, frequently 等副词连用时，可表示某种感情色彩。

She **was forever complaining**.

她老是抱怨。（厌烦）

She **was always thinking of** others.

她老是想着别人。（赞扬）

### 五、将来进行时

#### （一）概念及构成

将来进行时表示将来某一时刻或者将来某一段时间内正在进行的动作，预料要发生的或即将发生的动作。

构成：shall/will be + 现在分词。（shall 用于第一人称单数 I 和复数 we；will 可用于各种人称。美式英语中所有的人称都用 will。）

#### （二）用法

1. 表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间内正在进行的动作。

At this time tomorrow we **will be driving** on the way home.

明天这个时候我们将正在开车回家的路上。

What **will you be doing** at eight o'clock this evening?

今天晚上 8 点你将在做什么？

Don't phone me between 5 and 6. **We'll be having** dinner then.

五点到六点之间不要给我打电话。那时我们正在吃晚饭。

2. 表示预料中要发生的动作。

Hurry up! The guests **will be arriving** at any minute!

快点！客人随时会来！

3. 表示按计划或安排要发生的动作。

I **will be seeing** you next week.

我下个星期来看你。

六、过去将来时

(一)概念及构成

过去将来时表示从过去的某一时间来看将来要发生的动作或呈现的状态。

构成:

1. would+动词原形
2. was/were going to+动词原形
3. was/were+动词不定式
4. was/were about to+动词原形
5. was/were on the point of+现在分词

(二)用法

1. would+动词原形

“would+动词原形”为过去将来时的一般形式,常表示从过去某一时间看将要发生的动作或呈现的状态。

He said he **would come** to see me.

他说他要来看我。

He told me he **would go to** Beijing.

他告诉我他将去北京。

2. was/were going to+动词原形

(1)“was/were going to+动词原形”可表示根据计划或安排即将发生的事。

She said she **was going to start** at once.

她说她将立即出发。

I was told that he **was going to return** home.

我听说他准备要回家。

(2)“was/were going to+动词原形”可表示根据当时情况判断有可能但不一定会发生某事。

It seemed as if it **was going to rain**.

好像要下雨了。

3. was/were+动词不定式

“was/were+动词不定式”表示曾计划做某事,如果计划的事情没有实现,要用不定式的完成式。

He said he **was to take up** the position.

他说他要担任这个职务。

He said he **was to have taken up** the position, but later changed his mind.

他说他本打算担任这个职务的,但是后来改变了主意。

4. was/were about to+动词原形

“was/were about to+动词原形”表示过去正要或即将发生的动作。

He **was about to say** something more, but then checked himself.

他还想说几句,却又止住了。

5. was/were on the point of+现在分词

“was/were on the point of+现在分词”表示“正要……时”。

I **was on the point of leaving** when you came in.

当你们进来时,我正要离开。

6. 某些动词,如 come, go, leave, arrive, start 等表示发生的、表示起止的动词,可用过去进行时代替过去将来时。

He said the train **was leaving** at six the next morning.

他说火车第二天早晨六点出发。

She told me she **was coming** to see me.

她告诉我她要来看我。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Every means had been tried (try) to solve the problem, but none of them worked.
2. This is the most interesting party that I have enjoyed (enjoy).
3. At this time tomorrow you will be sitting (sit) there doing some more exercise.
4. The man was told the train was leaving (leave) at 10 o'clock the next morning.
5. It is the first time that he has left (leave) his country.
6. No sooner had (have) he come into the room than it began to rain heavily.

II. 完成句子

1. At this time next month we will be enjoying our holidays in Europe.  
下个月的这个时候我们将正在欧洲享受自己的假期。
2. He has been playing computer games all day.  
他一天都在玩电脑游戏。
3. The road hasn't been cleaned since it snowed.  
自从下过雪以后,这条路一直没有清扫过。
4. I had finished reading your book by seven o'clock last night.  
我已经在昨天晚上7点之前把你的书读完了。
5. Nobody knew whether the guests were coming.  
没人知道客人们是否要来。

## 课后素养评价(三)

### I. 词语填空

employment; have second thoughts; admission; participation; apply for; make up one's mind; pass up; put off; reject... out of hand; weigh up

- The company was one of the first to offer meaningful employment to the blind.
- The manager has rejected his proposal out of hand because it is considered impractical.
- They tried to get into the club but were refused admission.
- At first, many parents had second thoughts about the online training lessons.
- Thanks to your encouragement, I made continuous progress in physics, and finally made up my mind to study it in university.
- Have you weighed up the advantages and disadvantages before you made the final decision?
- Her friends couldn't believe she passed up the chance to be a millionaire at that time.
- He isn't a man who tends to put off what he can do today till tomorrow.
- From now on the project will arouse more experts' interest and positive participation.
- If you are qualified for this job requirement, please apply for this position by sending your resume (简历) to [1234567@bai123.com](mailto:1234567@bai123.com).

### II. 单句语法填空

- What if I showed you this drawing and asked your opinion about it?
- It is impossible for them to get there in such a short time.
- The problem has been studied (study) for five days.
- She is very tired. She has been typing (type) letters all day.
- At this time yesterday Jack was not watching TV. He was repairing (repair) his bike.

- By the end of last term, we had learned (learn) 3,000 new words.
- From 8 am to 10 am tomorrow morning, we will be taking (take) an English test.
- She has had (have) lunch, so she is not hungry now.
- I didn't hear what you said; I was looking (look) at the picture.
- Yesterday he told me that he hadn't eaten (not eat) anything since Tuesday.

### III. 阅读理解

When learning a foreign language, most people fall back on traditional methods: reading, writing, listening and repeating. But if you also gesture with your arms while studying, you can remember the vocabulary better, even months later. Linking a word to brain areas responsible for movement strengthens the memory of its meaning.

As neuroscientist Brian Mathias and his colleagues described in the *Journal of Neuroscience*, they had 22 German-speaking adults learn a total of 90 invented artificial words (such as “lamube” for “camera”, and “atesi” for “thought”) over four days. While the test subjects first heard the new vocabulary, they were simultaneously (同时地) shown a video of a person making a gesture that matched the meaning of the word. When the word was repeated, they were supposed to perform the gesture themselves. Five months later, they were asked to translate the vocabulary they had learned into German in a multiple-choice test.

At the same time, they had a device attached to their heads that sent weak pulses to their primary motor cortex (皮层)—the brain area that controls voluntary arm movements. When these interfering (干扰) signals were active, the subjects found it harder to recall the words accompanied by gestures. When the device sent no interfering signals (but still appeared to the subjects to be active), they found it easier to

remember the words. The researchers concluded that the motor cortex contributed to the translation of the vocabulary learned with gestures. This applied to concrete words, such as “camera”, as well as abstract ones, such as “thought”.

“Our results provide evidence for why learning techniques that involve the body’s motor system should be used more often,” says Mathias. “I think we underuse gesture in our classrooms. People use it spontaneously (自发地), if they’re good teachers and good listeners. But we don’t necessarily bring it into the class if we don’t think about it.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了当学习一门外语时,大多数人都采取了传统的方法:读、写、听和重复。但是,如果在学习的同时加上手势动作,那么这可以帮助你更好地记住词汇。

1. What were the subjects required to do in the test?

- A. Repeat what other subjects describe.
- B. Follow what the person in the video did.
- C. Match the vocabulary with relative pictures.
- D. Translate the vocabulary into a foreign language.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“While the test subjects first heard the new vocabulary, they were simultaneously (同时地) shown a video of a person making a gesture that matched the meaning of the word. When the word was repeated, they were supposed to perform the gesture themselves.”可知,测试对象被要求重复视频里的人所做的动作。故选 B。

2. Why were pulses sent to the subjects’ motor cortex?

- A. To control their body movements.
- B. To shelter other interfering signals.
- C. To identify the function of the motor cortex.
- D. To confirm the abstract thoughts in their mind.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“The researchers concluded that the motor cortex contributed to the translation of the vocabulary learned with gestures.”可推知,发送脉冲是为了确认运动皮层的功能。故选 C。

3. What is Brian Mathias’s expectation of the research?

- A. It will be carried out more frequently.
- B. It will involve more concrete objects.
- C. It will be applied to classroom teaching.
- D. It will motivate his colleagues to participate.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“I think we underuse gesture in our classrooms.”可推知, Brian Mathias 认为这一研究可以用于课堂教学。故选 C。

4. What is the best title for the text?

- A. Good Learning Techniques Matter More
- B. Repeating Strengthens Memory
- C. Body Language Better Communication
- D. Gestures Help Learn New Words

D 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“*But if you also gesture with your arms while studying, you can remember the vocabulary better, even months later. Linking a word to brain areas responsible for movement strengthens the memory of its meaning.*”可知,文章主要介绍了当学习一门外语时,大多数人都采取了传统的方法:读、写、听和重复。但是如果在学习的同时加上手势动作,可以帮助你更好地记住词汇。所以“*Gestures Help Learn New Words*”最适合作文章的标题。故选 D。

### 【微点写作】求职信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 感谢您的考虑。我盼望着收到您的来信。

Thank you for your consideration. I look forward to hearing from you.

2. 如果您能尽早在您方便时安排面试,我将非常感激。

I would be very grateful if you could arrange an interview at your earliest convenience.

3. 随函附上我的简历,供您考虑和参考。

Enclosed is my resume for your consideration and reference.

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 阅读课文，理解《未选择的路》这首诗的内涵以及课文中对该诗的解读，同时感知诗歌的节奏、韵律，了解诗歌的写作特点以及所运用的修辞手法，提高对诗歌的鉴赏能力和语言运用能力；
- 能够更全面理解“面向未来、确定目标、审慎选择、做出决断、成就自我”的重要性，并能够正确、全面地认识人生成功的意义。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

##### (一)核心词汇

- complex *adj.* 复杂的
- commercial *n.* (电视或电台的)商业广告
- symbolize *v.* 象征,代表
- alternative *n.* 可供选择的事物
- mixture *n.* 混合;混合体
- affection *n.* 喜爱,钟爱
- qualified *adj.* 合格的,胜任的
- fluency *n.* 熟练,流利
- sincerely *adv.* 由衷地,真诚地,真心实意地
- refreshments *n.* 茶点,点心和饮料
- arise *v.* (由……)引起
- circumstance *n.* 情况,情形
- yours sincerely 谨上,敬上,谨启(用于以某人名字开头的正式信件的末尾)
- on a daily basis 每天

- arise from 由……引起,起因于
- turn down 拒绝;调低;关小
- in fact 事实上
- as well as 也;又;还
- be set in 以……为背景
- be qualified for 能胜任……
- be familiar with 对……熟悉

##### (二)阅读词汇

- undergrowth *n.* (长在大树下或周边的)下层灌木丛
- thoughtful *adj.* 认真思考的,深思的
- shift *n.* (工厂、医院等轮班制中的)当班时间
- numerous *adj.* 许多的,很多的
- dilemma *n.* 进退两难的境地,困境
- diverge *v.* (两条路)岔开,分开
- come back 回来
- of all time 有史以来,一直,始终
- insight into 对……的洞察

#### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1	The poem <i>The Road Not Taken</i> .	There were two roads in a yellow wood. I took the one <b>1. less traveled by</b> which was <b>2. grassy</b> and wanted wear.
Part 2	The influences of the poem.	Lines from the poem are often <b>3. quoted</b> in speeches. It has been set to music and used in television <b>4. commercials</b> . It has become one of the most famous American poems.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3	Appreciation and interpretation of the poem.	Life throws many <b>5. alternatives</b> at us every day and we should make choices. Once a decision is made, there is no <b>6. going back</b> . So it's difficult to make choices and we don't know whether we made the right choice. On the other hand, decision-making can bring about new <b>7. adventures</b> and experiences. So we should face our future with energy and <b>8. optimism</b> .

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Why does the poem *The Road Not Taken* become one of the most famous American poems of all time?
  - Because the poem has been set to music by many artists.
  - Because the poem has been used in numerous television commercials.
  - Because the poem has its natural style and thoughtful insights into human nature.
  - Because the poem can remind readers of a peaceful wood within the countryside.
- What's the poem's figure of speech?
  - Simile (明喻).
  - Personification (拟人).
  - Alliteration (头韵).
  - Symbolism (象征).
- What's the purpose of writing the passage?
  - To enjoy a beautiful picture of the countryside.
  - To tell us it may be hard to make a right decision.
  - To warn us to think twice before making important choices.
  - To advise us to learn something about the American poem.

答案: 1~3 CDB

### II. 课文语法填空

The poem *The Road Not Taken* is one of the **1. most famous** (famous) American poems written by Robert Frost. It is **2. mainly** (main) about how the author chose one of the two roads before him in a yellow wood. From the poem, we know that life **3. throws** (throw) many alternatives at us on a daily basis and we are uncertain which choice results **4. in** doing the right thing. It is especially difficult for us **5. to choose** (choose) between two similar things. Once a decision **6. is made** (make), there is no going back. All we can do is look backwards "with a sigh" and imagine **7. what** could have been. The road through our lives is a **8. mixture** (mix) of choice and chance. **9. A** more unusual path can lead to new adventures and experiences. So we should face our future with energy and **10. optimism** (optimistic).

### III. 阅读升华

- Why did the writer sigh while looking backwards?  
Because he wondered whether he had made the right choice.
- What should you do when you make a choice about your future career?

略

## 课后素养评价(四)

### I. 单词拼写

- What he said was too complex (复杂的) for me to understand.
- They were much more realistic about its long

term commercial (商业的) prospects.

- If you are already considered a credit risk by a bank, a secured loan might be your only alternative (可供选择的事物).



- We sincerely (真诚地) welcome new and old customers home and abroad.
- The country's present difficulties arise (由……引起) from the reduced value of its money.
- More practice will make you speak with greater fluency (流利).
- The football and the heart symbolize (象征) a passion for football.
- With the development of Chinese rural tourism, some problems arise which will affect (影响) the sustainable development.
- A mixture (混合物) of skill and good luck decided the outcome of the game.
- There is a growing need for qualified (合格的) teachers of Business English.
- The whole family sat together and the whole table was full of refreshments (茶点) and fruit.

## II. 短语填空

range from... to...; turn down; be qualified for; under no circumstances; on a daily basis; for instance; arise from; have... in common; result in; make the most of

- I will absolutely make the most of every minute of each day!
- To my great surprise, he turned down my good proposal a moment ago.
- For lovers of the great outdoors, activities range from canoeing (划独木舟) to birdwatching.
- We have a lot in common, so we have become friends.
- Based on the above advantages, I think I am qualified for the job.
- I work out for thirty minutes on a daily basis.
- It was his bad habits that resulted in his serious illness.
- She can't be relied on. For instance, she arrived an hour late for an important meeting yesterday.
- Many diseases arise from what people really don't know about in their daily life.
- Under no circumstances shall we give in to pressures or threats imposed by foreign countries.

## III. 补全句子

- 真可惜,像他这样才能出众的人竟然被雇用来做这类琐事。(it 作形式主语)  
It is a pity that a man with great talent like him should be employed about such trifling matters.
- 我的一个朋友考虑在这个暑假期间参观颐和园。(one of+复数名词, consider doing sth.)  
One of my friends considers visiting the Summer Palace during this summer holiday.
- 我们学校中央矗立着一座高楼。(完全倒装)  
In the middle of our school stands a high building.
- 不仅周霞,而且她的父母也喜欢看足球比赛。(not only... but also...)  
Not only Zhou Xia but also her parents are fond of watching football matches.
- 我已经付了票钱,所以不管你喜不喜欢,我们都得看完它。(whether... or not)  
I've already paid for the tickets, so whether you like it or not, we're going to finish watching it.

## IV. 七选五

A grateful heart is a satisfied heart. A satisfied heart is a simple heart which leads to a simplified life. Gratitude opens the door to simplicity. But we live in a culture that addresses dissatisfaction. 1

Intentionally choose it. Gratitude will never be a result of your next purchase, success or accomplishment. 2 And you will never find it in life until you intentionally decide to choose it.

Count your blessings. A new day, a warm bed, a unique personality or a special talent. 3 Gratitude quickly sets in when we begin to spend a quiet moment each day remembering them. This practice alone has the potential to change your heart and life immeasurably.

4 Almost half the world live on less than \$2.50 a day. 1.1 billion people have inadequate access to clean water. Let those facts sink in for just a moment and slowly allow gratitude and a desire to become part of the solution to take their place.

Find gratitude in difficulty. 5 It can be more difficult during the trials of life; death, disease or failure. The truth is that no one is exempt (豁免的)

from the sufferings. However, good can be found even in the worst of times. Being grateful during those difficulties may get you through them.

In daily life we must see it is not happiness that makes us grateful, but gratefulness that makes us happy.

- A. Ignore what you don't have.
- B. We can learn how to be grateful.
- C. Open your eyes to those with less.
- D. Gratitude is available in your heart right now.
- E. You have wonderful things in your life already.
- F. It's easy to be grateful when things are going well.
- G. How can we find gratitude in a world that seeks to destroy it?

答案: 1~5 GDECF

### 【微点写作】求职信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 首先,我在中国生活多年,并且从小就学习英语,我精通英语和汉语。

First of all, having lived in China for years and learnt English since I was a child, I have a good command of both English and Chinese.

2. 因为我对中国画很熟悉,所以我可以让外国人和当地人对中国画有更多的了解。

Because of my familiarity with Chinese painting, I can get foreigners and the locals to know more about it.

3. 最后但同样重要的是,我相信,通过我的努力,我一定能够增进中英友谊。

Last but not least, through my efforts, I believe, I can certainly strengthen the friendship between China and the UK.

## Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 在理解课文的基础上,感悟诗歌主题,从而加深对单元主题意义的认识,学会在迷茫中不迷失方向,在前行中不踌躇不前,培养积极的人生态度,同时学会选择和决断,具备勇于担当、敢于面对挑战的优秀品质;
3. 掌握求职信包含的要素和相关表达,并能运用所学知识写一封求职信。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The coastal road **diverges** from the freeway just north of Santa Monica. (两条路)岔开,分开
2. The advantages of this system are too **numerous** to mention. 许多的,很多的
3. He was faced with the **dilemma** of whether or not to return to his country. 进退两难的境地,困境
4. Emotional or mental problems can **arise** from a physical cause. (由……)引起
5. I know I can trust her in any **circumstance**. 情况,情形
6. Have you been able to switch your **shift** with anyone? 当班时间

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>commercial</u> <i>n.</i> (电视或电台的)商业广告 <i>adj.</i> 商业的;由广告收入支付的	<u>commerce</u> <i>n.</i> 贸易;商业,商务
<u>thoughtful</u> <i>adj.</i> 认真思考的,深思的	<u>think</u> <i>v.</i> 想,认为,思考 <u>thought</u> <i>n.</i> 思考;思想;想法

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>symbolize</u> <i>v.</i> 象征, 代表	<u>symbol</u> <i>n.</i> 符号; 象征
<u>qualified</u> <i>adj.</i> 合格的, 胜任的	<u>qualify</u> <i>v.</i> (使) 合格; 取得资格, 有资格 <u>qualification</u> <i>n.</i> 资格; 条件
<u>fluency</u> <i>n.</i> 熟练, 流利	<u>fluent</u> <i>adj.</i> 流利的, 流畅的 <u>fluently</u> <i>adv.</i> 流利地

## III. 补全短语

1. range from... to ... 范围从……到……变动
2. arise from 由……引起, 起因于
3. have... in common 与……有共同点, 有相似之处
4. result in 导致, 结果是
5. turn down 拒绝; 调低; 关小
6. for instance 例如
7. make the most of 充分利用
8. on a daily basis 每天

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 介词短语置于句首引起的完全倒装  
Among Frost's best-known poems are *The Road Not Taken*, *Fire and Ice*, *Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening* and *Birches*.  
弗罗斯特最著名的诗歌有《未选择的路》《火与冰》《雪夜林边小驻》和《白桦树》。
2. 句型公式: not only... but also...; one of + 可数名词复数  
It has in fact become one of the most famous American poems of all time, not only because of its natural style, but also because of its thoughtful insights into human nature.  
事实上, 它已成为美国有史以来最著名的诗歌之一, 这不仅是因为其自然的风格, 还因为其对人性的深刻洞察。
3. 句型公式: consider doing sth.; It's unlikely that...  
Although the writer of the poem considers taking the other path another day, he knows it's unlikely that he will ever have the opportunity to do so.  
虽然这首诗的作者考虑改天再探索另一条路, 但是他知道, 他不可能有机会这样做。

## 任务型课堂

I. circumstance *n.* 情况, 情形

(教材原文) Once we make a decision, in most **circumstances**, there is no going back.

在大多数情况下, 一旦我们做出决定, 就没有回头路了。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

It's the best result that could be expected **under the circumstances**.

在这种情况下, 这可能是所能预料的最好的结果了。

**Under no circumstances** should you lend him any money.

你无论如何都不该把钱借给他。

I know I can trust her **in any circumstances**.

我知道在任何情况下我都能信任她。

**By no means** is she an inexperienced teacher.

她绝不是个毫无经验的教师。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) in/under _____ circumstances 在这种情况下; 既然如此 in/under _____ circumstances 决不, 无论如何都不(置于句首时, 句子用部分倒装) (2) in/under no circumstances 位于句首时, 句子用部分倒装, 用法类似的常用词组还有 in no case, at no time, _____ no means, in no way, on no account, on no condition.
探究结论	(1) the; no (2) by

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① In/Under the circumstances he felt unable to accept the job.

② In no way will you be given (give) a second chance.

③ Under no circumstances (circumstance) shall any vehicle be parked in the place where the bus stops.

(2) 完成句子

Under/In the circumstances, it seemed better not to tell him about the accident.

在这种情况下,不告诉他有关这次事故的情况似乎更好。

## 2. mixture n. 混合; 混合体

(教材原文) Ultimately, the road ahead—the road through our lives—is a **mixture** of choice and chance.

最终,前方的道路,也就是我们的人生之路,其实是由选择和机会交织而成的。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Don't **mix** business **with** pleasure.

不要把公事和娱乐掺和在一起。

Miss Xu made an error and **mixed up** my results with someone else's!

徐老师出了差错,把我的成绩和别人的成绩弄混了!

It's common to **mix him up with** his brother; they're twins.

把他同他的兄弟混淆是常有的事;他俩是双胞胎。

Oil paints are not **mixed with** water, as the colours have already been **mixed with** oil.

油画颜料与水混不到一起,因为颜色已经与油混合在一起了。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) a mixture of... ……的混合物 (2) mix <i>v.</i> 混合; 调配 mix A _____ B = mix A and B (together) 把 A 与 B 混合起来/融合在一起 mix _____ 弄乱, 弄错; 混合 mix with 和……混合; 与……交往/来往 mix... up with... 把……与……混淆了 (3) mixed <i>adj.</i> 混合的
探究结论	(2) with; up

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The boy mixed the paint with water.

② They are so alike that it's easy to mix them up.

③ Her face showed a mixture (mix) of fear and excitement.

④ To tell the truth, I had mixed (mix) feelings about seeing Laura again.

(2) 完成句子

I think you must be mixing me up with someone else.

我觉得你一定是把我错当成别人了。

## 3. qualified *adj.* 合格的, 胜任的

(教材原文) Match the headings to the sections and find out how **qualified** the applicant is for the job. 把标题和各部分匹配起来, 找出申请人有多适合这份工作。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Robert **is** ideally **qualified for** the job.

罗伯特最适合做这项工作。

I don't know much about it, so I don't **feel qualified to comment**.

关于此事,我所知不多,所以我觉得没资格评论。

This training course will **qualify** you **for** a better job.

本培训课程将使你能胜任更好的工作。

He left school with no formal **qualifications**.

他没有获得正式学历就离开了学校。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be qualified _____ 具有……的资格; 胜任 be/feel qualified to do sth. 有/觉得有资格做某事 (2) qualify <i>v.</i> (使)合格; 取得资格 qualify sb. _____ sth. 使某人具有……的资格; 使某人胜任…… (3) qualification <i>n.</i> 资格; 学历
探究结论	(1) for (2) for

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is an urgent need for qualified (qualify) teachers.② This man was not qualified to drive (drive) and was speeding.③ Previous teaching experience is a necessary qualification (qualify) for this job.④ Paying a fee doesn't automatically qualify you for membership.

(2) 完成句子

He recognised that he was not qualified for a teacher.

他认识到他没有资格担任教师。

**4. 介词短语置于句首引起的完全倒装**(教材原文) *Among Frost's best-known poems are The Road Not Taken, Fire and Ice, Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening and Birches.*

弗罗斯特最著名的诗歌有《未选择的路》《火与冰》《雪夜林边小驻》和《白桦树》。

[句式分析] 本句是一个简单句, 使用了完全倒装。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法**Among these people was** my friend Tom.

这些人中有我的朋友汤姆。

**In front of the restaurant stands** a tower.

在餐馆的前面矗立着一座塔。

**There lived** a man known by the name of Tom in the village.

这个村子里住着一个名叫汤姆的人。

The door opened, and **in came** Tom.

门开了, 汤姆走了进来。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	完全倒装的几种常见结构: (1) 由 _____ 作状语且前置到句首表示强调, 或保持句子平衡时。 (2) 当表示运动方向、方位的副词(如 in, down, off, over, round, away, up, out 等) 或表示地点、时间的副词(there, here, now, then) 放在句首, 谓语动词是表示移动或状态(存在)的不及物动词(come, go, follow, fall, lie, remain, stand 等), 且句子的主语为名词时。 (3) 为了保持句子平衡或使上下文紧密衔接而将表语位于句首时。
探究结论	(1) 表示方位的介词短语

**名师点拨**

在上述结构中, 若句子的主语是人称代词时, 则不需要倒装。

Here **he comes**. 他来了。**三评** 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand just now.

刚才窗户边坐着一个年轻人, 手里拿着一本杂志。

② Present at the meeting were Jack and many other guests yesterday.

昨天出席会议的有杰克和许多其他客人。

③ Down came the rain and up went the umbrellas at that time.

那时候, 下雨了, 伞都撑起来了。

④ There stands a temple on the top of the mountain.

山顶有座庙。

**写作探究****求职信****一、写作指导**

本单元的写作要求是根据提供的信息写一封求职信。求职信也叫自荐信, 是求职者根据岗位需要或自己的求职愿望通过介绍自己的情况向用人单位举荐自己的书信, 通常是针对招聘广告而写的。

1. 求职信的内容安排: 首先, 说明求职信息来源、想应聘的职位; 然后, 在正文中简明扼要地介绍自己, 重

点说明能胜任本岗位的各种能力等; 最后, 在信的结尾表示希望得到答复及面试的机会。

**2. 写求职信的注意事项:**

(1) 写求职信时要讲究遣词造句, 措辞要直接, 不拐弯抹角; 语言要礼貌, 但不要过分谦卑;

(2) 不要罗列不相关的信息, 比如生日、家人和亲戚的情况等。

## 二、典题示例

假设你是红星中学高三学生李华,你得知故宫正在招聘假期义务英文讲解员,请你给相关部门负责人写一封求职信,内容包括:

1. 介绍你的基本信息;
2. 说明你的优势;
3. 表示你希望被录用。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:故宫 the Palace Museum

Dear Sir or Madam,

Sincerely,  
Li Hua

## 三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 表明写作意图 2. 介绍基本信息和自身优势 3. 表示希望被录用

## 四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇

- ① be qualified for 胜任
- ② to begin with 首先
- ③ be expert at 擅长
- ④ have a good command of 精通

(二)完成句子

- ① I learn that English volunteer guides for the Palace Museum are wanted (故宫需要义务英文讲解员) in the winter vacation.
- ② I am writing to apply for this position (申请这个职位).
- ③ I have a good command of (精通) Chinese ancient history.
- ④ I am sure my knowledge will prove to be of great help (证明很有帮助) for me as a guide.

(三)句式升级

- ① 用现在分词短语合并(二)中句①和句②  
Learning that English volunteer guides for the Palace Museum are wanted in the winter vacation, I am writing to apply for this position.
- ② 用 so 连接(二)中句③和句④

I have a good command of Chinese ancient history, so I am sure my knowledge will prove to be of great help for me as a guide.

(四)连句成篇

Dear Sir or Madam,

Learning that English volunteer guides for the Palace Museum are wanted in the winter vacation, I am writing to apply for this position.

I'm a Senior Three student in Hongxing Middle School, and I believe I am qualified for the position. To begin with, I am expert at oral English. What's more, I have a good command of Chinese ancient history, so I am sure my knowledge will prove to be of great help for me as a guide.

I would be very grateful if you could offer me the opportunity.

Sincerely,  
Li Hua

## 五、学以致用

假设你是晨光中学的李津。某面向中学生的英文网站正在招聘英文网络编辑(English web editor),请你根据以下提示,用英语向外籍主编 Chris 申请这一职位。主要内容包括:

1. 自我介绍;
2. 个人兴趣及特长;
3. 相关工作经历。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

[参考范文]

Dear Chris,

I'm writing to apply to be an English web editor, which I saw advertised on the website.

I am confident that I am the right person that you are looking for. First, I have a good command of the English language. As the English monitor of my class, I participated in National Innovative English Competition and was awarded the first prize. Besides, my work experience gives me another advantage over others. I often create English wall newspapers for my class together with my classmates. With my English competence and work experience, I am sure I have the qualifications for the position.

I am looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,  
Li Jin

## 课后素养评价(五)

### I. 单句语法填空

- The reader should seek the services of a qualified (qualify) professional for such advice.
- It was so serious a matter that I had no alternative but to call (call) the police.
- Under no circumstances (circumstance) are you to go out.
- Please observe the mixture (mix) and write down what you have seen.
- After living in Hangzhou for five years, she has developed quite an affection (affect) for the city.
- You can't be too careful while driving. Accidents often arise from carelessness.
- With a lot of difficult problems to settle, the newly-elected manager is in a dilemma.
- He is a cautious person, so whatever he does, he is not only thoughtful (thought) but careful.
- An increase in cars has resulted in the decline of public transport.
- To tell the truth, I was astonished by the size and complexity (complex) of the problem.
- It's believed that the fluency (fluent) of a language largely depends on constant practice.
- My parents and I sincerely (sincere) expect you to come and have dinner with us.

### II. 完成句子

- I met a classmate while/when watching the basketball match.  
看篮球赛时我遇见了一位同班同学。
- It's likely that one of these players will be chosen to represent our country at the Olympics.  
很有可能这些运动员中的一个会被选中代表我们国家参加奥运会。
- I want to find out what he is interested in.  
我想弄清楚他对什么感兴趣。
- In the box are many cards, ranging from traffic signs to car logos.  
这个盒子里有很多卡片,从交通标志到汽车标志应有尽有。
- Not only you but also he is tired of one exam after another.  
不但你,而且他也讨厌一次又一次的考试。

- He is considering turning down her invitation, for he wants to make the most of the time left to prepare for the coming exam.

他正在考虑拒绝她的邀请,因为他想充分利用剩余的时间来准备即将到来的考试。

### III. 语法填空

A textbook exchange is a business that buys and sells college textbooks. Textbooks can represent **1.** a significant part of a student's education budget. By purchasing used textbooks or selling unneeded books to a textbook exchange, students can **2.** greatly (great) reduce their expenses.

Traditionally, university bookstores are the only sources for **3.** required (require) textbooks. The success of bookstores **4.** that/which buy and sell used books inspired some businesses **5.** to copy (copy) the process for textbooks. A textbook exchange will purchase textbooks from students who have completed courses and no longer need the materials. This means the business can resell the used books at a price much lower than their original cost. This is very **6.** beneficial (benefit) to students who are struggling to meet their school fees and living expenses.

Ever since it first appeared, the textbook exchange **7.** has increased (increase) the options for students. Now used textbooks **8.** are delivered/are being delivered (deliver) almost anywhere through any standard delivery service. This means students are not limited **9.** to the books available at their local university bookstores. They can compare **10.** prices (price) on a national or even international level and choose the most reasonably priced editions. This changes the supply-and-demand economic factors that create high prices for most textbooks.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,得知你校校报在高一新生中招聘英语小记者,于是你用英语写了一篇求职信,内容如下:

- 现年 16 岁,高一(1)班,任班长;
- 爱好英语阅读,订阅了各种英文报纸;
- 能与外宾自由交谈,曾在初中举办的英语口语比赛中获一等奖;

4. 自己能胜任这项工作,如被录用,一定努力工作。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头与结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇: 订阅 subscribe; 英语口语比赛 Oral English Competition

[参考范文]

Dear Editor,

Recently I have learnt that you need little reporters from the new students in Senior 1. I'd like to be one. Now I'd like to introduce myself to you.

My name is Li Hua, monitor of Class 1, Senior 1. I'm sixteen years old. I enjoy reading English articles, and have subscribed to all kinds of English newspapers. What's more, I can talk with foreign friends in English. I'm pleased to tell you that I have won first prize in the Oral English Competition held in my junior middle school. I'm sure I will be fit for the job. I'll do my best if I am accepted.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

### Tomorrow Represents Hope

Every day, on the way to and from school I passed by a children's hospital. One morning, as I was hurrying to school, I noticed a child staring out of a small window on the first floor. The next minute I accidentally tripped, leaving my feet in the air. As I slowly pulled myself up and dusted myself off, I looked up again and saw the child laughing. In spite of my situation, I was pleased to have made someone laugh. I bowed as though I were a performer. The child clapped and waved at me. As I stepped closer, I saw that the girl's head was bald (光秃的), a sign that she was a cancer patient. I quickly waved one last time to her before making my way to school.

The next morning and the next, I looked out for the little girl and waved to her, jigging (蹦跳) just to make her laugh. I thought about her and wondered what her life must be like. "Tomorrow, and tomorrow, and tomorrow, Creeps (爬行) in

this petty pace from day to day"—those lines from a Shakespearean poem I had learned in school came to my mind. Was that how the child lived from day to day?

I felt the urge to visit the child. I went to the hospital and looked for the room facing the road. I found the little girl. She was thin and pale. When she saw me, her eyes widened with recognition and she welcomed me with a shy smile. I talked to her a bit and learned her name, Suki. The nurse who saw me talking to her later told me that Suki was a leukemia patient. Her navy officer father was a single parent and was on duty outside the country. The nurse encouraged me to visit Suki so that she would not be so lonesome. As I was leaving, Suki called to me, "Tomorrow?" I understood and said, "Yes, tomorrow."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

After that, I dropped in on Suki after school every day. We chatted casually about our own hobbies, favourite food and even the plans for the future. We played card games and read together. Even though Suki was only ten, I found that I could get along with her very well. I was not visiting her out of pity. I really looked forward to her company. At the end of each visit, she always asked, "Tomorrow?" and my reply was always, "Yes, tomorrow."

Two months later, Suki told me good news. She was well enough to be discharged from the hospital. On my last visit, she gave me an envelope, and said it contained her email address. I promised to write. In her letter, Suki thanked me and told me how my answer to her question "Tomorrow?" had given her hope from day to day. She believed that she recovered because of this. At the end of the letter, she wrote "Tomorrow?" followed by her email address. I smiled and said to myself, "Yes, Suki, tomorrow."



## 读后续写技能养成 || 精彩结尾之以景结情

### 「技能概述」

1. 以景结情:指以描写景物来寄托感情的结尾方式。它可以使读者发挥想象,体会作者寓于情景之中的心情和用意。
2. 续写技巧:根据文中故事情节的发展方向,采用描述性语言来设计结尾。描写时,注意把人物的心情与景物描写结合起来,并且让所写景物能真正体现人物的心情。

### 「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考I卷续写范文)... He was approaching the finishing line when I saw the mud in his clothes. He must have gone through a lot all the way. Crossing the line, his usual big smile was there as that sunny day.

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

此处结尾是以景结情式结尾。它是把大卫坚持跑完比赛,越过终点线时的欣慰、高兴的心情融入到晴朗的天气里,以此来烘托大卫的喜悦之情。

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. sunshine *n.* 阳光
2. sunny *adj.* 晴朗的
3. fragrance *n.* 香气
4. embrace *v.* 拥抱
5. surround *v.* 包围
6. witness *v.* 见证
7. the setting sun 夕阳
8. the flying bird 飞鸟
9. a gentle breeze 微风
10. a broad smile 灿烂的笑容
11. bathe in 沐浴着
12. shine on 照在……上
13. leap out of 跃出
14. take a deep breath 深吸一口气
15. dance with 与……起舞

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. Bathed in the setting sun, I was deeply touched.  
沐浴在夕阳下,我被深深地打动了。
2. The light of the sun shone on us, witnessing the start of a new friendship.  
阳光照在我们身上,见证了一段新的友谊的开始。
3. Meanwhile, the lovely blue dolphin leapt out of the water with a cheerful cry.  
与此同时,可爱的蓝色海豚跃出水面,欢快地叫着。
4. The sun in May was shining brighter than ever like a fire ball.  
五月的太阳比以往任何时候都更明亮,像一个火球似的。
5. I held the flower up to my nose and took a deep breath, smelling the fragrance of it. Indeed, it was the most beautiful.  
我把花举到鼻子前,深吸一口气,闻着它的香味。的确,它是最美丽的。
6. The wind embraced the branches, while the little girl was haunted by loneliness, only the bird whistle hovering in her mind for company.  
风摇曳着树枝,而小女孩被孤独困扰着,只有萦绕在脑海的鸟鸣作伴。

### 「技能达标」

#### I. 完成句子

1. In the crying wind and pouring rain, I found myself hugging my mother, tighter than ever.  
在呼啸的狂风和倾盆的大雨中,我发现自己拥抱着母亲,比以前抱得更紧了。
2. Bathed in the gentle moonlight and surrounded by waves, I was sure good luck would come to Tom.  
沐浴在温柔的月光中,被海浪包围着,我相信好运 would 来到汤姆身边的。
3. Cold as the rain was, great warmth filled his heart like never before.  
虽然雨很冷,但他的心里充满了前所未有的温暖。

## II. 用以景结情的技巧完成语段

*In a short time, he started out on his new business. And much sooner than could be expected, he returned with an empty basket. Never had he earned so much money before in his life. When he found that it was all to be his, he was so delighted that he could hardly speak, but his bright smiling*

face spoke for him. Every day he had at least fifty cents to take home, and often more. One night, he went home with some food bought for his family. (设计一个以景结情式结尾) A gentle breeze wiping his face, the sudden happiness and warmth just hit him.

# 第一单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

## I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

### A

#### How to Help Your Community

A community feels more alive when people who live there love it enough to help improve it. Here are some ways to try:

Stop to help when and where you're needed. Do for others what you'd want them to do for you if you were in their situation.

- If you see a mother struggling to get her stroller (婴儿手推车) down a set of stairs, offer to help her carry it.

- Be the person who helps out in an emergency, instead of the one who assumes someone else will do it.

Support your local economy. You can help improve the health of your local economy in many different ways, from changing your shopping habits to starting a business of your own.

- Buy your food from local shops. Try to get most of your produce from the farmers' market, where members of your community go to sell food they've worked hard to grow.

- Consider starting your own business. You can serve your community by offering a great product and possibly even hiring employees.

Recycle and compost (把……制成堆肥). You can do your part to help improve the situation by

recycling and composting as much of your waste as possible.

- If you want to go above and beyond, you could also spread awareness about how to recycle, or start a recycling programme at your school or place of work.

- Composting is useful in more ways than one. Once you learn how to do it, show others how easy it can be.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章就如何帮助自己所在的社区提出了几种建议。

1. If you notice people looking lost, you should \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. accompany them till they find their place
- B. tell them that they are in the wrong place
- C. wait until someone else comes to help
- D. help them get where they're trying to go

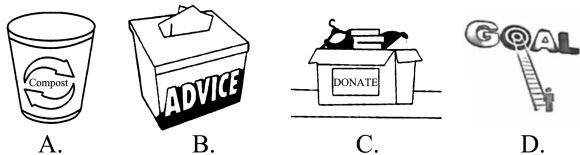
D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Do for others what you'd want them to do for you if you were in their situation.”及第四段的内容可知选D。

2. What can you do to support your community?

- A. Changing your thinking habits.
- B. Hiring the neighbours out of work.
- C. Requiring people to sort the waste.
- D. Putting the waste into a street's trash.

B 细节理解题。根据第七段的内容可知,雇用失业的邻居可以作为支持自己社区的一项举措。故选B。

3. Which picture shows the way mentioned in the passage to help your community?



A 细节理解题。根据第八段的内容可知,compost意为“把……制成堆肥”,为文章中提到的帮助社区的方法之一。故选A。

### B

Mozart was a genius, but he struggled like an average person during his early twenties. He had to work to make ends meet. Underpaid and unsatisfied by his average performances, he felt a burning desire to devote more time and energy to his art. So after a period of doubt and thinking, that's exactly what he did. He quit his job and began what turned out to be the most creative period of his life.

Even if you never hope to reach Mozart's level of mastery, you may relate to his need to break free from convention (传统). Maybe you've done everything right—stood out at school, and got a high-paying job—but you're tired of being just like everyone else. Maybe you long to achieve something that is unmistakably you.

What, then, is holding you back? Rich Karlgaard, the publisher of *Forbes* magazine and author of *Late Bloomers*, argues that our culture's obsession (痴迷) with early achievement discourages us from going after what we love. Instead of having varied interests, studying widely, and taking our time—essentials (要素) for self-discovery—we're encouraged to pass tests, become specialists right away, and pursue safe and secure careers. As a result, most of us end up choosing professional excellence over personal achievement, and often we lose ourselves in the process.

As you move forwards, there are a few things to keep in mind. First, it's never too late to “become” yourself. Aristotle, for example, didn't fully devote himself to writing and philosophy until he was nearly 50. There are also benefits to taking a

long, winding path to achievement. Remember that age usually brings wisdom, self-knowledge, and creativity. This is one reason the average age of founders of high-growth start-ups is 45.

If you ever get stuck, think of Joanne, a talented and creative woman who bounced from job to job throughout her twenties. She felt like a total failure. But she took that feeling of hopelessness and chose to do what she'd always wanted to do: write fantasy novels for children. As she would later recount, “I stopped pretending to myself that I was anything other than what I was.”

You've probably heard of her. Her pen name is J.K. Rowling.

Now get to work.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讲述了几位名人成功的曲折过程以及他们无论何时都坚持做自己的故事,以此来鼓励我们无论在什么年纪都要坚持走自己的路,做自己喜欢的事。

4. What does the example of Mozart in the first paragraph show?

- A. Genius is nothing but labour.
- B. Suffering makes a man wise.
- C. You should stick to what inspires you.
- D. You need to be different from others.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Underpaid and unsatisfied by his average performances, he felt a burning desire to devote more time and energy to his art. So after a period of doubt and thinking, that's exactly what he did. He quit his job and began what turned out to be the most creative period of his life.”可知,通过莫扎特的例子,第一段是在说明人应该坚持去做激励自己的事情。故选C。

5. In Rich Karlgaard's opinion, what prevents people from going after what they love?

- A. The desire for early achievement.
- B. Too wide a range of interests.
- C. A waste of time on self-discovery.
- D. A wrong choice in professions.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Rich

Karlgard, the publisher of *Forbes* magazine and author of *Late Bloomers*, argues that our culture's obsession (痴迷) with early achievement discourages us from going after what we love.”可知,渴望早日取得成就阻止了人们追求他们所爱的东西。故选 A。

6. What does the underlined sentence in the fourth paragraph imply?

- A. Age can be an advantage in one's life.
- B. Failure is of great value to success.
- C. 45 is the right age for one to start business.
- D. The path to achievement is full of difficulties.

D 句意理解题。根据画线句上文“First, it's never too late to 'become' yourself. Aristotle, for example, didn't fully devote himself to writing and philosophy until he was nearly 50.”以及下文“Remember that age usually brings wisdom, self-knowledge, and creativity.”可推知,画线句的意思是“走一条漫长曲折的道路取得成就也有好处”,暗示了通往成功的道路充满了困难。故选 D。

7. What's the main purpose of the passage?

- A. To share success stories of some famous people.
- B. To stress the importance of professional excellence.
- C. To analyse the reasons for failure to make early achievements.
- D. To encourage people to become themselves whatever their age.

D 写作意图题。文章主要讲述了几位名人成功的曲折过程以及他们无论何时都坚持做自己的故事。由此可知,作者写这篇文章的主要目的是鼓励人们在任何年纪都要做自己。故选 D。

### C

#### Learning, Fast and Deep

Over the past five years researchers in artificial intelligence have become the rock stars of the technology world. A branch of AI known as deep learning, which uses neural (神经的) networks to scan through large volumes of data looking for

patterns, has proven so useful that skilled practitioners can command high six-figure salaries to build software for some companies.

The standard route into these jobs has been a PhD in computer science from one of America's top universities. Earning one takes years and requires a personality suited to academia, which is rare among more normal folk.

That is changing.

Last month Fast.ai, a non-profit education organisation based in San Francisco, kicked off the third year of its course in deep learning. Since its foundation it has attracted more than 100,000 students around the globe from India to Nigeria. The course and others like it come with a simple idea: there is no need to spend years obtaining a PhD in order to practise deep learning. Creating software that learns can be taught as a craft, not as a high intellectual pursuit to be undertaken only in an ivory tower. Fast.ai's course can be completed in just seven weeks.

To make it accessible to anyone who wants to learn how to build AI software is the aim of Jeremy Howard, who founded Fast.ai with Rachel Thomas, a mathematician. He says school mathematics is sufficient. “No. Greek. Letters.” Mr Howard intones, pounding the table with his fist for punctuation.

Some experts worry that this will serve only to create a flood of unreliable AI systems which will be useless at best and dangerous at worst. In the earliest days of the Internet, only a select few nerds, namely computerholics(电脑迷) with specific skills, could build applications. Not many people used them. Then the invention of the World Wide Web led to an explosion of web pages, both good and bad. But it was only by opening up to all that the Internet gave birth to online shopping, instant global communications and search. If Mr Howard and others have their way, making the development of AI software easier will bring forth a new crop of fruit of a different kind.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。人工智能的深度学习被证明很有用, Howard 和数学家 Thomas 一起创办的非营利性教育机构 Fast.ai 致力于让深度学习变得简单。

8. What can we learn about deep learning?

- A. It replaces artificial intelligence.
- B. It attracts rock stars to practise.
- C. It scans patterns for large companies.
- D. It helps technicians to create software.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“A branch of AI known as deep learning, which uses neural (神经的) networks to scan through large volumes of data looking for patterns... build software for some companies.”可知,深度学习能帮助创建软件。故选 D。

9. Fast.ai is an organisation that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. ensures one to obtain a PhD
- B. teaches a craft in an ivory tower
- C. offers a course in deep learning
- D. requires weeks to apply

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Last month Fast.ai, a non-profit education organisation based in San Francisco, kicked off the third year of its course in deep learning.”可知, Fast.ai 是一个提供深度学习课程的组织。故选 C。

10. The underlined words “No. Greek. Letters” in Paragraph 5 mean that doing Fast.ai courses is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. easy
- B. difficult
- C. interesting
- D. boring

A 推理判断题。根据画线部分前的“To make it accessible to anyone who wants to learn... He says school mathematics is sufficient.”可知, Fast.ai 的课程很简单,仅需要中学数学知识。因此 Howard 是想说 Fast.ai 的深度学习课程很简单。故选 A。

11. It can be inferred from the last paragraph that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it is quite reliable for anyone to grasp artificial intelligence

B. the Internet has brought forth a flood of useless AI systems

C. opening up to all leads to instant global search and online shopping

D. simplifying software development may result in unexpected outcomes

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“If Mr Howard and others have their way, making the development of AI software easier will bring forth a new crop of fruit of a different kind.”可推知,简化软件开发可能会导致意料之外的结果。故选 D。

#### D

Surrounded by the sea off the coast of Helgeland in Mid-Norway, lies an island called Myken. This small island has about ten permanent residents, and for more than 50 years has been supplied with electricity via a 32-kilometre undersea cable (电缆). A break that appeared in the cable last autumn resulted in two months without power, so the island community started looking into a better way of sourcing their electricity.

“Myken is far out at sea, so as far as possible it should be taking care of things itself,” says Kyrre Sundseth, who is a hydrogen (氢) researcher in Norway and also the project manager for Myken’s energy project. “This is why we want Myken to become entirely self-sufficient in energy. It is also important to take the environment into consideration,” he says.

Much points to the idea that the solution may lie in a hydrogen plant, specifically tailored for small islands. The “raw materials” for hydrogen production come from nature itself in the form of the sun and wind. Researchers have calculated that energy costs will be lower by using hydrogen production than the undersea cable option. And it is possible to store energy in the form of hydrogen for longer periods. This means that supplies will not have to rely on a lot of expensive batteries or external energy sources, even during periods when the sun isn’t shining, or the wind isn’t blowing.

The Myken project has attracted several technology companies. They are currently working on a pilot project. The pilot involves experiments on the feasibility (可行性) of the hydrogen system in which electricity is generated from solar and wind sources. The electricity can be used immediately, but during periods when all the energy generated is not required, the spare energy can be used to split seawater into hydrogen and oxygen. The hydrogen can be stored in a tank and used later to generate electricity. The pilot will help researchers know more about how effectively the system will work in the hydrogen plant. Since the island has a distillery (酿酒厂), where the distillation (蒸馏) process relies on energy, a hydrogen plant on Myken offers an even greater environmental benefit. Spare heat from the hydrogen system can also be used for the heating part in the distillation process.

“In Norway alone there are about 300 islands inhabited all year round by small populations,” says Kyrre Sundseth. “All of these islands may be candidates for using this technology. In global terms we’re talking about 10,000 similar islands.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了一座岛屿利用自身地理条件,建立了氢气发电站,实现了自给自足型的环保式发电。

12. Why is a hydrogen plant suitable for Myken?

- A. It is perfect in size for small islands.
- B. It can send electricity to faraway places.
- C. It will restore the local natural environment.
- D. It provides green and sustainable energy.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容及第三段中的“The ‘raw materials’ for... and wind.”可知,氢气发电站能提供绿色可持续的能源。故选 D。

13. What is mainly talked about in Paragraph 4?

- A. The study on the energy storage.
- B. The test on the hydrogen system.
- C. The experiment on the raw materials.
- D. The research on the innovation of the pilot.

B 段落大意题。根据第四段第一、二句可知,Myken 的方案吸引了好几家科技公司,他们目前在进行试行计划。也就是说,方案现在处于试验阶段。故选 B。

14. According to the passage, a hydrogen plant will \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. produce purified seawater
- B. prove more technically reliable
- C. contribute in more than one way
- D. benefit from the distillation process

C 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,在试验阶段,研究者对氢气发电站的可行性进行了实验,发现氢气发电站除了发电还可以有其他用处。由此可知,氢气发电站在许多方面都能作出贡献。故选 C。

15. What does Kyrre Sundseth think of the project?

- A. Promising.
- B. Systematic.
- C. Irreplaceable.
- D. Time-saving.

A 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知,氢气发电站有很大的市场,即 Kyrre Sundseth 认为这一方案“有前途,有前景”。故选 A。

## II. 七选五 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 12.5 分)

The desire to be noticed by peers (同龄人) is a natural tendency. Your style—the way you dress up, the way you carry yourself, the trends you follow—plays a key role in helping you stand out from the others. 16 The following tips can help you.

### Be yourself.

Why be a second-rate version of anybody else when you can be the first-rate version of yourself? Nothing will help you stand out of the crowd more than your own features because there can be only one you. Everyone has their own belief, their own way of thinking, and their own experiences that shape their styles. However, self-doubt and fear of disapproval drive many to abandon their own ways and follow what everyone else is doing. 17

### Keep an open mind.

Open-mindedness helps you see things from a different perspective, understand others, find opportunities, and learn from others. 18 There are several styles that you should explore and determine which suits your own personality. Nobody knows what fashion you are enthusiastic about. But you should be

clearly aware of your own true feelings about it.

### Keep up with the recent trends.

Fashion is always changing. 19 As society changes, so does fashion. Changing trends reflect the changes in people's taste. Similarly, your sense of fashion changes as you gain more experiences in life. Keeping track of the latest fashion will help you redefine your style.

### Wear your confidence.

Your attitude towards dressing can make a significant difference to how you look. You can wear a very beautiful dress, but if you can't carry it with confidence, it will not look good on you. 20 Don't wear an uncomfortable dress just because everyone or your friend is wearing it. Remember, it's okay to have your own style as long as you are confident with it.

- A. Also, it tells a lot about your personality.
- B. What worked yesterday may not work today.
- C. Copying others will make you just another face in a crowd.
- D. Having an open mind can be very helpful in defining your style.
- E. On the other hand, even an average dress looks great on people who wear it confidently.
- F. It is not absolutely necessary to follow every new trend, and you can enjoy the ones you like.
- G. Simply following the fashion trends or wearing expensive clothes will not help you get a distinct style.

答案: 16~20 GCD BE

### III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

My most rewarding experience throughout the past two years was volunteering at the swimming competition for Special Olympics where a disabled friend of my community took part. This had special 21 for me because experiencing it helped improve my leadership skills, my character, and support my community.

First, my leadership skills developed when I 22 directed each swimmer where to line up at

the platform and 23 each player when they needed to swim. I had to make sure that the swimmers were 24 and ready to perform. This kept me on my feet at all times and 25 of each event's time and location. I learned each swimmer's name, since many of them swam in more than one event.

Secondly, my 26 was greatly improved. When I saw the swimmers get their awards for winning each swimming event, I was deeply moved. I was 27 that most swimmers could swim better than I. It astonished me by their positive attitudes, 28 they won or lost. This also expanded my horizons, offering me the opportunity to 29 people I would normally not come across. I went out of my 30 zone and did whatever was needed to be done. It was especially 31 when I saw the cheerful faces of the players.

Lastly, I was of service to my community by lending a hand to this organisation in need of help. To be a part of it gave me a chance to improve my community and become 32 with the people living in this area.

As Winston Churchill once said, "We make a living by what we do, but we make a life by what we give." The 33 should be done throughout our life. Fortunately, 34 the many opportunities my community has offered I was privileged to be 35 in this exciting and important event in these players' lives. I hope to be an assistant at this event in years to come.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者为社区残疾运动员提供志愿者服务的故事。作者在这一经历中提升了自己的领导才能,完善了自己的性格,为社区提供了支持并结识了許多人,从中受益颇多。

21. A. purpose                      B. meaning  
C. background                    D. regulation

B 根据下文的“because experiencing it helped improve my leadership skills, my character, and support my community”可知,作者在游泳比赛

中做志愿者,这对作者有着特殊的意义。故选 B。

22. A. equally                      B. amazingly  
C. strictly                        D. independently

D 根据上文的“my leadership skills developed”可知,作者在比赛中独立地指导运动员在哪儿比赛。故选 D。

23. A. taught                        B. informed  
C. awarded                       D. compared

B 根据下文的“each player when they needed to swim”可知,是通知选手们何时开始游泳比赛。故选 B。

24. A. positioned                 B. preserved  
C. valued                         D. evaluated

A 根据下文的“ready to perform”可知,是确保运动员的位置。故选 A。

25. A. proud                        B. certain  
C. aware                         D. capable

C 根据上文的“my leadership skills developed when I 22 directed each swimmer”可知,作者需要清楚每个比赛项目的时间和地点以便提供服务。故选 C。

26. A. figure                        B. ability  
C. character                      D. technique

C 根据上文的“because experiencing it helped improve my leadership skills, my character, and support my community”可知,下文是围绕领导能力、性格和对社区的支持三个方面展开讲述的。故选 C。

27. A. blamed                      B. impressed  
C. reminded                      D. concerned

B 根据下文的“that most swimmers could swim better than I”可知,参赛的这些残疾人游泳比作为正常人的作者要好,这给作者留下了深刻的印象。故选 B。

28. A. after                         B. as  
C. until                          D. whether

D 根据上文的“It astonished me by their positive attitudes”可知,无论输赢,他们都抱有积极的态度。whether... or... 意为“无论……还是……”,是固定短语。故选 D。

29. A. meet                         B. gather

- C. introduce                    D. recommend

A 根据下文的“I would normally not come across”可知,作者通过这次机会,遇到了很多平时不会遇到的人。故选 A。

30. A. imagination                B. availability  
C. comfort                        D. development

C 根据下文的“did whatever was needed to be done”可知,作者走出了舒适区。故选 C。

31. A. rewarding                 B. embarrassing  
C. outstanding                 D. relaxing

A 根据第一段中的“My most rewarding experience throughout the past two years was volunteering at the swimming competition for Special Olympics”和第三段中的“when I saw the cheerful faces of the players”可知,当作者看到运动员们脸上洋溢的笑容,他是有成就感的并感觉做这些是值得的。故选 A。

32. A. acquainted                 B. combined  
C. surrounded                 D. faced

A 根据上文“To be a part of it gave me a chance to improve my community”和下文“with the people living in this area”可知,这次活动给了作者帮助改善社区的机会,以及熟悉住在该地区的人们的机会。故选 A。

33. A. travelling                 B. consulting  
C. volunteering                 D. cooperating

C 根据第一段中的“volunteering at the swimming competition for Special Olympics”和上文的“We make a living by what we do, but we make a life by what we give”可知,此处说的是志愿者活动应该贯穿我们的一生。故选 C。

34. A. by                          B. despite  
C. except                         D. through

D 根据下文的“the many opportunities my community has offered”可知,通过社区提供的很多机会,作者很荣幸能够参与到这些人的生活中。其中 by 表示通过某种方式,后接动名词作宾语,与文章不符。故选 D。

35. A. desired                      B. educated  
C. involved                      D. influenced

C 根据上文的讲述和下文的“in this exciting



and important event in these players' lives"可知,作者很荣幸能够参与到这些运动员的生活中。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Until recently, almost everyone thought that development and progress would make the world a **36. better** (good) place. They believed that something new was always better than something old. So countries have spent billions of dollars **37. on** science to develop new ways of **38. making** (make) things and doing work. However, this new technique is the main cause of the world's problems. One such problem has come from the **39. appearance** (appear) of the car.

In some **40. crowded** (crowd) cities, the car has polluted the air **41. so** badly that people get sick just because of breathing it. Waste from factories is another example of how new technology is hurting the earth. When some waste chemicals **42. are put** (put) into the sea, they can hurt or kill animals in the sea.

It's time that we did something when there is a **43. possibility** (possible). When the problems get worse, they will not affect just a few **44. countries** (country). They will be world problems **45. that/ which** affect us all.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假设你是新华中学的学生李华,得知你校英文报招聘兼职记者,你有意应聘,请按下列要点给报社写一封 80 词左右的申请信。内容包括:

1. 表达兴趣;
2. 表明个人优势;
3. 希望被录用。

##### [参考范文]

Dear sir or madam,

Learning that part-time journalists are in demand for our school English newspaper, I am quite interested and eagerly writing to apply for the position.

I have the necessary qualifications and

experience needed for the post. To begin with, I am good at English and proficient in writing. Besides, I am skilled at communicating with others. Last but not least, I have relevant experience working as a reporter.

I would appreciate it if you could take my application into account. Looking forward to your favourable reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Eight-year-old Amanda heard Mum and Dad talking about her little brother, Hyman, who was very sick, and learnt that only a very costly surgery could save him. Being in heavy debt, Dad said to Mum in desperation, "Only a miracle can save him now."

Amanda went to her bedroom and pulled a glass jar in the closet. She poured all the change out and counted it carefully. Three times. No chance here for mistakes. Carefully placing the coins back in the jar, she slipped out the back door and made her way six blocks to the pharmacy (药店).

On arriving at the pharmacy, she poured her jar on the counter. The pharmacist got annoyed as she was talking to her brother, Dr Bethune, a neurosurgery (神经外科) surgeon, who happened to be on a visit. Asked what she wanted, Amanda answered back, "My brother's really, really sick and I want to buy a miracle." She explained her brother had something bad growing inside his head and needed an operation, and her dad said only a miracle could save him. The pharmacist shook her head and said softly, "We don't sell miracles here, little girl. I'm sorry but I can't help you."

Hearing this, Amanda couldn't help wailing, tears rolling down like a broken string of beads. Witnessing this, Dr Bethune leaned down and asked her, "How much do you have?" "One dollar and

eleven cents,” Amanda responded proudly. “Well, what a coincidence,” smiled Dr Bethune. “A dollar and eleven cents—the exact price of a miracle for your little brother.” Overjoyed, Amanda twirled and jumped.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*Dr Bethune held her hand and said kindly, “Take me to see your brother.”* Amanda nodded with gratitude. Six blocks seemed to be shortened to one metre, and just a blink, they arrived at Amanda’s shabby house, where her brother stayed alone and told them that Dad was working outside and Mum went out to borrow money. After carefully checking Hyman, Dr Bethune realised the emergency of his condition. After leaving a message to their parents, he brought Hyman to his hospital immediately. Without hesitation, he operated on him for free. Miraculously, the operation was

completed successfully. On hearing the good news, Dad and Mum rushed to the hospital. They contentedly cuddled up to each other in the ward and reflected on the ins and outs of what had happened.

*“That surgery,” her mum whispered to Amanda, “was a real miracle. I wonder how much it would have cost.”* Winking at her mum, Amanda responded mysteriously and proudly, “One dollar and eleven cents, my one dollar and eleven cents.” Then she showed her empty jar. Her parents both couldn’t believe their ears and were eager to know the truth. Then following their daughter’s steps, they knew who “sold” the miracle. Bowing low to Dr Bethune, they thanked a thousand times for his extending a helping hand, eyes glistening with held-back tears. There actually exist no miracles in the world. It is the kind heart of the surgeon and the faith of the little girl that forge the miracle.

## Unit 2

## Lessons in life

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，获取课文的主要内容，初步了解《相约星期二》一书的主旨大意；
3. 对“人生智慧”这一主题进行积极深入的思考；
4. 通过讨论人生还能被比喻成什么，初步思考人生的不同意义。

## 自主式预习

## 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

## (一) 核心词汇

1. weaken *v.* (使)虚弱
2. possession *n.* 财产, 财物
3. abnormal *adj.* 不正常的, 反常的
4. recognition *n.* 承认, 认可
5. anticipate *v.* 预期, 预料
6. widespread *adj.* 广泛流传的
7. lose touch with 与……失去联系
8. a series of 一系列
9. be made up of 由……组成/构成
10. far from 远非, 远不

11. tend to 倾向于

12. look out for 当心, 留意; 考虑……的利益, 关照

13. such as 例如

14. as though/if 仿佛, 好像

15. get through 通过; 做完; 度过; 接通电话; 让……了解

## (二) 阅读词汇

1. pessimistic *adj.* 悲观的, 悲观主义的
2. be reunited with 与……重聚
3. get distracted by 被……分散注意力
4. live life to the full 充实地生活
5. point of view 角度
6. a pleasant surprise 惊喜

## 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1	A brief introduction to <i>Tuesdays with Morrie</i> .	Mitch Albom, a sports journalist, visits Morrie Schwartz, Albom's favourite college professor, on Tuesdays. Their weekly conversations result in a series of lessons on the 1. <u>meaning</u> of life and how best to live it.
Part 2	Arthur K's comments on the book and the lessons from the book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The book is filled with 2. <u>joy</u> and hope.</li> <li>• We should 3. <u>appreciate</u> what we have and make the most of each day.</li> </ul>

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3	Amy Wang's comments on the book and the lessons from the book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The book should be on all school <b>4. <u>reading lists</u></b>.</li> <li>She has been given a deeper <b>5. <u>insight</u></b> into the world and can see things from a different point of view. We should find out what is important in our lives and establish our own <b>6. <u>values</u></b>.</li> </ul>
Part 4	Marty's comments on the book and the lessons from the book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The book is worth reading because something in it is a bit <b>7. <u>different</u></b>.</li> <li>The book made him think about how much he is influenced by <b>8. <u>popular culture</u></b> and the importance of creating his own values.</li> </ul>
Part 5	Vivian's comments on the book and the lessons from the book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The book made her cry because Morrie's reflections on <b>9. <u>love and friendship</u></b> made her think about her life and good friends.</li> <li>People should <b>10. <u>keep in touch with</u></b> good people and live their life to the full.</li> </ul>

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the book *Tuesdays with Morrie* mainly about?
  - A love story between a student and his teacher.
  - Some lessons on the meaning of life and how best to live it.
  - An adventure about a sports journalist.
  - An introduction to a severe illness.
- What does Arthur K think of the book?
  - Pessimistic.
  - Confusing.
  - Thoughtful.
  - Hopeful and thankful.
- According to Amy Wang, people should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - gather as many material possessions as possible
  - let our society determine what they value
  - find out what is important in their lives by themselves
  - put the book on their shelf at home
- What can be inferred from the comments of Vivian?
  - Things should be seen from a different point of view.

- The book is just a collection of over-emotional thoughts and messages.
- Friendship should be valued in our daily life.
- The book can make you burst into tears because of sorrow.

- What topic is not mentioned in the passage?
  - Joy and hope.
  - Friendship.
  - Values.
  - Art.

答案: 1~5 BDCCD

### II. 课文语法填空

The book *Tuesdays with Morrie* teaches us a series of **1. lessons** (lesson) on the meaning of life and how best to live it. **2. In** Arthur K's opinion, the book is about dying, but it isn't pessimistic. Indeed, it was **3. a** pleasant surprise to find that the book is filled with joy and hope. According to Amy Wang, the book should be on all school reading lists. After reading the book, she **4. has been given** (give) a deeper insight into the world and can see things from a different point of view. She thinks it's important for young people to know that **5. making** (make) a lot of money won't always make them happy, and it's up to us **6. to determine** (determine) what is important in our lives and establish our own values.

In Marty's view, his first **7. impression** (impress) of the book was just a collection of over-emotional

thoughts and messages, **8.** but he still recommended that people read it. As for Vivian, she was **9.** deeply (deep) moved by Morrie's reflections on love and friendship, **10.** which made her think about her own life and good friends she had lost touch with.

### III. 阅读升华

1. What does Vivian want to convey by saying "A box of tissues will be needed to get through this book!"?

She means that readers will be greatly touched by what is written in the book.

2. If you had a chance to read the book, what lessons would you learn from it?

I would understand the true meaning of life, treasure what I have now and make the most of each day.(回答合理即可)

## 课后素养评价(六)

### I. 阅读理解

I was involved in unhealthy eating and exercise behaviour on and off for five years. For the majority of these five years, I appeared "normal" to the untrained eye. But I was suffering an eating disorder (进食障碍). And I was struggling.

Recovery felt too hard. In the early stages of my recovery, I had to actively distance myself from triggering (诱发) material. But it didn't work for me. At last I decided not to struggle alone. I needed to admit to everyone else that I was struggling.

I made time for people who inspired me. One of those people was my best friend, Scarlett. She, without doubt, has helped save my life. I say this because she has inspired me to not only accept my body but embrace (拥抱) it. She has also shown me that being strong and smart is beautiful. She never escapes from delicious food, which has encouraged me to do the same.

We challenged the society's view on beauty together. We debated everything from body shaping to the fitness industry. We broke down social media and Photoshop. We discussed medication and panic attacks. Nothing was taboo. And that was exactly what I needed.

I needed someone who didn't just listen but understood. Having a mentor who guided me through the recovery process has, without doubt, been the key to my recovery. Having someone in my life who actively debunks (揭穿) the idea that losing weight is the answer is invaluable. I'm so glad I have such a friend in my life.

Observing the way Scarlett treats herself continues to inspire me and encourage me to pursue full recovery. My relationship with my body, food and exercise has changed and much of that I contribute to her influence and example.

I will keep moving forward. I will keep eating often and well. I will allow my body to be at whatever weight it wants to be at. I will do this not just for me but to be an example to others who may need that little bit of inspiration, just like I did all those months ago.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者因患有进食障碍而苦不堪言,后来在一位好朋友的影响下得以改变,并对未来充满希望。

1. What was the author's problem?

- A. Suffering various diseases.
- B. Having no time for exercise.
- C. Not looking normal to others.
- D. Having an unbalanced diet.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "But I was suffering an eating disorder (进食障碍)." 可知,作者患有进食障碍。故选 D。

2. What does the underlined sentence "Nothing was taboo." in Paragraph 4 mean?

- A. They talked about topics carefully.
- B. They could talk about everything.
- C. Nothing was sad to the author.
- D. Nothing was interesting.

B 句意理解题。根据第四段中列举的例子,以及画线句子后面的 "And that was exactly what I needed." 可知,作者可以跟那位朋友无所不谈。故选 B。

3. What did the author most probably learn from Scarlett?

- A. She should be careful about her diet.
- B. She should have a nice-looking body.
- C. She should learn to really like her body.
- D. She should try really hard to lose weight.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“I say this because she has inspired me to not only accept my body but embrace (拥抱) it.”以及最后一段中的“I will allow my body to be at whatever weight it wants to be at.”可知,作者从那位朋友那里知道她应该学会爱自己的身体。故选C。

4. What is the best title for the text?

- A. An Eating Disorder Is a Disease
- B. The Great Pain I Have Suffered
- C. My Friendship with My Best Friend
- D. My Best Friend Helped Change My Life

D 标题归纳题。根据全文内容可知,本文主要讲述了作者最好的朋友帮助她克服了进食障碍,改变了她的生活。故选D。

## II. 七选五

### Our Amazing Hands

The hand is where the mind meets the world. We use our hands to build fires, to fly airplanes, and to write. The human brain, with its open-ended creativity, may be the thing that makes the human race unique. But without hands, all the ideas we think up would come to nothing.

1 Study it carefully, and you will find something interesting. The thumb (拇指) alone is controlled by nine separate muscles. The wrist is a group of bones and muscles connected with nerves (神经). The nerves send branches into each fingertip, which makes the fingers extremely flexible. 2

Early hands seemed more unusual and interesting than any hand today. Some animals had seven fingers. Others had eight. But by the time vertebrates (脊椎动物) appeared about 400 million years ago, the hand had developed to only five fingers. 3

Nevertheless, there are still many different types of hands in living animals. After years of research, scientists are beginning to understand the

molecular (分子的) changes in hands. 4 This makes the hands of different animals very similar. There is a network of many genes (基因) that builds a hand, and all hands are built on that network.

The discovery has given scientists a deeper understanding of the development of hands. A bird's wing and a lion's paw (爪) may appear to have nothing in common. 5 It may just be a little more of one protein (蛋白) here, a little less of another there. In the past, scientists could recognise only the outward signs that hands had developed from a common ancestor. Today scientists are uncovering the inward signs as well.

- A. Hands can often be used for a number of different purposes.
- B. They also see that all hands start out in much the same way.
- C. It has kept that number for reasons scientists don't yet know.
- D. No one would doubt that the five fingers are different with each other.
- E. But the difference between them may come down to a tiny change in form.
- F. The reason we can use our hands for so many things is their special structure.
- G. So you can see a skilled watchmaker use his hands to set springs in place under a microscope.

答案:1~5 FGCB E

### 【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 艺术在很多方面都对孩子有益,尤其是创造力。

Art is beneficial for children in many ways, especially creativity.

2. 使用计算机可能是解决此问题的一种方法。

It is possible that using computers may be a way to solve this problem.

3. 掌握如何在自己的空间里利用颜色是营造你喜欢居住的房间的首要步骤之一。

A grasp of how to manage colour in your space is one of the first steps to creating rooms you'll love to live in.

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

### Language points

#### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，感知课文的语篇结构及语言特点，学习和掌握课文中与话题相关的表达方式，并能运用所学表达方式进行交流；
3. 对如何写书评、如何给文学作品写简介等方面有一个初步的了解。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The plan received **widespread** support throughout the country. 广泛的
2. This book is an **inspirational** one for young readers. 鼓舞人心的
3. Your clothes are often a **reflection** of your personality. 反映
4. Early buildings were made of wood and have **perished**. 毁灭
5. Were you **aware** that something was wrong? 意识到

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>weaken</u> <i>v.</i> (使)虚弱	weak <i>adj.</i> 虚弱的, 无力的
<u>pessimistic</u> <i>adj.</i> 悲观的, 悲观主义的	pessimism <i>n.</i> 悲观主义
	pessimist <i>n.</i> 悲观主义者 (反义词) <u>optimistic</u> <i>adj.</i> 乐观的
<u>possession</u> <i>n.</i> 财产, 财物	possess <i>v.</i> 拥有, 具备
<u>abnormal</u> <i>adj.</i> 不正常的, 反常的	(反义词) <u>normal</u> <i>adj.</i> 正常的
<u>recognition</u> <i>n.</i> 承认, 认可	recognise <i>v.</i> 认出, 辨认出; 承认; 接受
<u>anticipate</u> <i>v.</i> 预期, 预料	anticipation <i>n.</i> 预期, 预料; 期望

#### III. 补全短语

1. a series of 一系列
2. lose touch with 与……失去联系
3. be made up of 由……组成/构成
4. be filled with 充满, 装满
5. far from 远非, 远不
6. as though 仿佛, 好像
7. after all 毕竟, 终究
8. get through 通过; 做完; 度过; 接通电话; 让……了解

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: on doing sth.  
On discovering that Morrie is being weakened by a severe illness, Mitch starts visiting him at his house on Tuesdays.  
 当发现莫里因重病而变得虚弱时, 米奇开始每星期二到他家里探望他。
2. 句型公式: It + be (+ a/an) + n. + to do sth.  
 Indeed, it was a pleasant surprise to find that this book is filled with joy and hope.  
 事实上, 发现这本书中充满了喜悦和希望, 真是令人惊喜。
3. 句型公式: as 引导定语从句  
As Morrie says, "Once you learn how to die, you learn how to live."  
 正如莫里所说: "懂得了怎样死亡, 也就学会了怎样生活。"
4. 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句  
 Reading this book made me feel as if I'd been woken up from a long sleep and finally opened my eyes to the world!

读这本书让我感觉好像我从长眠中被唤醒了,让我终于开始睁眼看世界!

5. 句型公式: It's up to sb. to do sth.

It's up to us to find out what is important in our

lives and establish our own values.

我们应该自己去弄清楚生活中什么是重要的,并树立我们自己的价值观。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. anticipate v. 预期, 预料

(教材原文) As Morrie **anticipates** his own death, he observes everything as though through new eyes—the things around him seem more beautiful than ever before and hold new meanings.

当莫里预见到自己的死亡时,他开始用新的眼光看待一切——周围的事物都显得更加美好,也拥有了新的意义。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

We **anticipated that** we would meet a certain amount of resistance to our plan.

我们预料到我们的计划会遭到一些人的反对。

**It's anticipated that** the research will have many different practical applications.

预计这项研究将有许多不同的实际应用。

He bought extra food **in anticipation of** more people coming than he'd invited.

他预料来的客人会比邀请的多,就多买了食物。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) anticipate doing sth. 预期做某事; 期待做某事 anticipate that... 预期……; 期待……; 预计…… It's anticipated that... 预期……; 期待……; 预计…… (2) anticipation n. 预期, 预料; 期望 _____ anticipation of 预计……发生; 期待……发生
探究结论	(2) in

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① We anticipate that there are certainly some people who are against our plan.

② Taylor was excited and full of anticipation (anticipate) at the prospect of the trip.

③ She has decorated the spare room in anticipation of your visit.

(2) 完成句子

He has been anticipating meeting his favourite singer in person.

他一直期待着能亲自见到他最喜欢的歌手。

### 2. possession n. 财产, 财物

(教材原文) While we are living, we tend to get distracted by unimportant things, such as gathering material **possessions**.

在我们活着的时候,我们往往会因一些不重要的事情分心,比如积累物质财富。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

He lost all his **possessions** in the fire.

他在火灾中失去了所有的财产。

They **are in possession of** a big orchard.

他们拥有一个大果园。

I'm afraid he doesn't **possess** a sense of humour.

恐怕他没有什么幽默感。

She is a charming lady, **possessed of** good health and clever intelligence.

她是一位有魅力的女士,拥有健康的体魄和聪明的才智。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be _____ possession of 拥有…… (主语为人) be in the possession of (sb.) = be in one's possession (某物)被(某人)所拥有 come into one's possession 为某人所拥有 take possession of 占有, 拥有 (2) possess v. 拥有, 具备 (3) possessed adj. 着了魔的; 拥有的 be possessed _____ 具有某种品质 (或特征)
探究结论	(1) in (3) of



续表

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① She was possessed (possess) of exceptional powers of concentration.② The company used to be in the possession of my uncle.③ The rich man took possession (possess) of the land last year.

(2) 一句多译

据说这个公司归一个年轻的外国人所有。

① It is said that the company is in the possession of a young foreigner.② It is said that a young foreigner is in possession of the company.**3. recognition n. 承认, 认可**

(教材原文) Despite its widespread **recognition**, my first impression was that *Tuesdays with Morrie* is just made up of a collection of over-emotional thoughts and messages, many of which are repeated.

尽管《相约星期二》这本书被广泛认可, 但我的第一印象是, 它只是由一系列过度情绪化的思想和信息构成的, 其中许多还是重复的。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

I haven't seen Sarah since she was a little girl, and she has changed **beyond recognition**.

从萨拉还是个小女孩的时候我就没见过她了, 她已经变得认不出来了。

Smoking **is recognised as** a leading cause of lung cancer.

吸烟被认为是导致肺癌的主要原因。

We **recognised that** Kurt wasn't just trying to make a sale.

我们认识到库尔特不仅仅是在试着做销售。

**It's recognised that** Yuan Longping is a great scientist.

袁隆平是一位伟大的科学家, 这是大家公认的。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ recognition 认不出来
	(2) recognise v. 认出, 辨认出; 承认; 接受
	recognise... as... 承认……是……
	be recognised as/to be... 被承认是……, 被公认为……
	recognise that... 认识到/承认……
	It is (generally) recognised that... 人们公认……

探究结论	(1) beyond
------	------------

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The book is now recognised as a classic.② The village had changed so much that it was beyond recognition (recognise).③ (2023·新高考 I 卷改编) Shanghai may be the recognised (recognise) home of the soup dumplings.④ It is recognised that he is a famous musician.

(2) 一句多译

简是公认的我们当中最聪明的女孩。

① It is recognised that Jane is the most intelligent girl among us.② Jane is recognised as/to be the most intelligent girl among us.**4. as if 引导表语从句**

(教材原文) Reading this book made me feel **as if I'd been woken up** from a long sleep and finally opened my eyes to the world!

读这本书让我感觉好像我从长眠中被唤醒了, 让我终于开始睁眼看世界!

[句式分析] as if/as though 意为“好像, 似乎”, 在句中, as if 引导表语从句。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

After the accident, he behaved **as if nothing had happened**.

事故发生后, 他表现得若无其事。

It seemed **as if the meeting would never end**.

这会议好像开不完似的。

It looks **as though it isn't clean enough to swim here**.

看起来这里的水好像不够干净, 不宜游泳。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>as if/as though 可引导表语从句和状语从句。其用法如下:</p> <p>(1) 如果 as if/as though 引导的从句所表示的内容与事实相符, 则使用陈述语气。</p> <p>(2) 如果 as if/as though 引导的从句所表示的内容与事实相反, 应使用虚拟语气:</p> <p>与过去的事实相反, 从句谓语动词用“_____ + 过去分词”;</p> <p>与现在的事实相反, 从句谓语动词用动词过去式 (be 动词用 were);</p> <p>与将来的事实相反, 从句谓语动词用“_____ + 动词原形”。</p> <p>(3) as if/as though 引导的从句可用省略形式, 后面直接跟名词、不定式、形容词、介词短语或分词。</p>
------	--

续表

探究结论	(2) had; would/should/could/might
------	-----------------------------------

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He opened his mouth as if to say (say) something.

② The girl is wearing a white dress and it looks as if she were (be) a snow girl.

③ He talked about Hong Kong as if he had been (be) there before.

(2) 完成句子

① He talks as if he knew everything.

他说话好像他什么都知道似的。

② The girl listened as if she had been turned into a stone.

那个女孩倾听着, 好像已经被变成了一块石头。

## 课后素养评价(七)

### I. 单词拼写

1. He seems to be a very pessimistic (悲观的) person, but actually he's an ambitious guy.
2. It is impossible for us to anticipate (预测) when it will happen.
3. As far as I'm concerned, it is abnormal (不正常的) for a man to eat so much at a meal.
4. Only after you have had that recognition (认可) can you say that you are truly an inventor.
5. Having been cheated by that company, our manager lost all his possessions (财产).
6. I don't think people are really aware (意识到的) of just how much it costs.
7. The plan received widespread (广泛的) support throughout the country.
8. I'm sorry to hear that Julia was weakened (使虚弱) by her long illness.

### II. 短语填空

such as; be made up of; get through; look out for; lose touch with; tend to; after all; a series of

1. The writing process is made up of four stages, and each stage involves certain activities.
2. He tends to use a lot of slang expressions that I've never heard before.
3. WHO is an organisation which looks out for the public health security of the world.
4. A series of robberies have shaken up residents of the neighbourhood.
5. You shouldn't have blamed him at all. He is a child after all.
6. Do write to me as often as you can. I don't want to lose touch with you.
7. We have different pies, such as apple, banana, and pear pies.
8. It took Tom a month to get through the novel borrowed from the library.

### III. 完成句子

1. As the teacher says, your handwriting is far from satisfactory and beyond recognition.  
正如老师所说, 你的书写一点都不令人满意, 而且无法辨认。

2. It is up to you to be optimistic or pessimistic about the matter.

对这件事保持乐观还是悲观取决于你自己。

3. From this point of view, many people can't live life to the full because they get distracted by computer games.

从这一角度来看,很多人不能充实地生活是因为他们被电脑游戏分了心。

4. It's a pleasant surprise to find that she loves the boy as if she were his mother.

看到她爱这个男孩,就好像她是他的母亲一样,真是令人惊喜。

5. It's reported that there are some children injured in the accident.

据报道,此次事故中有一些孩子受伤。

#### IV. 完形填空

These days, teenagers are often addicted to their cellphones or other electronic devices. They are often so 1 with what's happening on social media that they often 2 what's going on around them.

But you 3 can't say that about this 17-year-old boy. Seeing how the teen helped an elderly woman who was 4 at the Dollar General just restored my 5 in our 6!

17-year-old Senquavious Driver joined his 7, Connie, for a trip to the Dollar General. They'd finished shopping and were starting to pull out when Senquavious noticed a woman in her eighties struggling to get out of her 8. She succeeded but was having trouble walking. Senquavious wasted no time coming to the 9!

The teen jumped out of his aunt's car without hesitation. He helped the elderly woman to the sidewalk and 10 walking her to the store. She was there to get soda, but could hardly walk. The woman explained that she'd 11, hurting her back and face. So, Senquavious stayed with her, helped her get her shopping done, and then saw her back to her car.

His aunt watched him help the woman, 12 by her nephew's compassion. She took some photos. "I was in 13 taking pictures because he didn't hesitate to help her, and that made me delighted," she said.

Connie proudly 14 the photos of her nephew's act of 15 on social media, saying, "I hope he continues to do great things in his life."

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了17岁的少年 Senquavious 帮助一位走路吃力的老妇人的故事。

1. A. concerned                      B. associated  
C. content                              D. abundant

A 根据下文的“with what's happening on social media that they often 2 what's going on around them”可知,他们非常关注社交媒体上发生的事情。be concerned with 表示“关心”。故选 A。

2. A. remind                              B. review  
C. ignore                                D. notice

C 根据下文的“what's going on around them”以及上文提到他们的注意力都在社交媒体上可知,此处指他们常常忽视身边正在发生的事情。故选 C。

3. A. temporarily                        B. actually  
C. basically                              D. certainly

D 下文提到 Senquavious 帮助老妇人的情节,由此可知,此处是指你肯定不会这么说这个17岁的男孩。故选 D。

4. A. moving                              B. complaining  
C. struggling                            D. driving

C 根据下文的“Senquavious noticed a woman in her eighties struggling to get out of her 8”可知,这个老妇人在挣扎着从车里出来。故选 C。

5. A. prejudice                            B. faith  
C. respect                                D. budget

B 根据上文内容可知,这个男孩的行为和大多数青少年的行为不一样,由此可推知,此处表示这位少年的行为让作者对年轻人恢复了信心。faith 意为“信心”,符合语境。故选 B。

6. A. age                                    B. youth  
C. childhood                            D. experience

B 上文提到了当今青少年的行为以及这位名叫 Senquavious 的少年的表现,由此可知,此处表示作者恢复了对年轻人的信心。youth 意为“年轻人”,符合语境。故选 B。

7. A. aunt                                 B. mother  
C. teacher                                D. grandma

A 根据下文中的“The teen jumped out of his aunt's car”可知,他是和自己的阿姨 Connie 一起去购物的。故选 A。

8. A. car                                    B. store  
C. home                                  D. sidewalk

A 根据上文的“They'd finished shopping and

were starting to pull out”以及下文的“saw her back to her car”可推知,他们是结束购物,正准备开车离开时看到这个老妇人正挣扎着从车(car)里出来。故选 A。

9. A. conclusion            B. rescue  
C. end                      D. point

B 根据上文的“having trouble walking”可知,老人走路有困难,由此可推知,Senquavious 是去帮忙。come to the/one's rescue 意为“救助某人”,rescue 符合语境。故选 B。

10. A. considered          B. stopped  
C. continued            D. began

C 根据下文的“walking her to the store”可知,把老妇人扶到人行道上后他并没有马上离开,而是继续把她送进商店。故选 C。

11. A. driven                B. walked  
C. grasped                D. fallen

D 根据本空后的“hurting her back and face”可知,这个老妇人最近摔倒过一次。故选 D。

12. A. amazed              B. inspired  
C. attracted               D. touched

D 根据下文的“her nephew's compassion”可推知,他的阿姨应是深受感动。touched 意为“受感动的”,符合语境。故选 D。

13. A. sweat                B. tears  
C. relief                    D. silence

B 上文说 Senquavious 的行为让 Connie 深受感动,由此可推知,此处指 Connie 被感动得泪流满面。tears 意为“眼泪”,符合语境。故选 B。

14. A. chose                B. remembered  
C. shared                  D. described

C 根据本空后的“the photos of her nephew's

act of 15 on social media”可知,Connie 在社交媒体上分享了 Senquavious 做善事的照片。故选 C。

15. A. bravery              B. kindness  
C. sympathy              D. gratitude

B 根据上文对 Senquavious 热心助人的事件的描述和下文的“I hope he continues to do great things in his life”可推知,她的外甥做了一件善事。kindness 意为“善良”,符合语境。故选 B。

### 【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 许多大学鼓励学生们利用学习小组来获得更好的成绩,在小组学习中学生不仅可以获得最好的学术资源,还可以激励彼此更加努力地学习。

Many universities encourage students to take advantage of study groups for better grades, where students can not only get the best academic resources but motivate each other to work harder.

2. 如今,电子设备使我们享受适合我们心情的任何音乐成为可能。

Nowadays, electronic devices make it possible for us to enjoy any music suiting our mood.

3. 其次,你的肢体语言也具有影响力,因此确保你说的话与手势和动作一致。

Secondly, your body language also carries weight, so make sure what you say is in line with gestures and movements.

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务及目标

- 在具体语境中复习巩固、灵活运用动词的被动语态,学会在写作中恰当使用被动语态;
- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 学习并运用生活中常见的谚语,理解这些谚语的意义和使用场景;
- 学习“活到老,学到老”的故事,体会终身学习的意义,培养乐观向上的人生观和价值观。

### 自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. These rules tell us how a sentence is broken down into **phrases**.  
短语

2. Does the bank charge a **fee** for setting up the account?  
服务费

3. Be careful not to **omit** anyone's name from the list. 遗漏
4. Now that the problem has been identified, **appropriate** action can be taken. 恰当的
5. Since then, it has become a **proverb** in the English language. 成语, 习语
6. Forty hours is a fairly **average** working week for most people. 平均的
7. They intended to **invest** hugely in new technology. 投资
8. Some may think of the personality as a genetic **trait**. 个性特征

## II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>cooperate</u> <i>v.</i> 合作, 协作	cooperation <i>n.</i> 合作, 协作
<u>analyst</u> <i>n.</i> 分析师, 分析员	analyse <i>v.</i> 分析
	analysis <i>n.</i> 分析
<u>summarise</u> <i>v.</i> 总结, 概括	summary <i>n.</i> 总结, 摘要
<u>illustrate</u> <i>v.</i> 解释, 说明	illustration <i>n.</i> 图解, 图示
<u>recipient</u> <i>n.</i> 接受者	receive <i>v.</i> 接收, 收到
	reception <i>n.</i> 欢迎(会), 接待(会); 接待处
<u>wisdom</u> <i>n.</i> 智慧, 才智	wise <i>adj.</i> 英明的, 明智的

## III. 补全短语

1. at the end of 在……末尾
2. pass on 传递; 转移
3. stick to 坚持; 遵守
4. give up 放弃
5. at the age of 在……岁时
6. graduate from 毕业于
7. put one's efforts into doing sth. 投入精力做某事
8. at first 起初
9. come true 实现
10. rather than 而不是

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词作结果状语

In China, a man from Jiangsu Province graduated from university at the age of 88, making him the oldest university graduate in the country.

在中国, 江苏一名男子 88 岁时从大学毕业, 成为这个国家中年龄最大的大学毕业生。

2. 句型公式: 现在进行时的被动语态

On discovering that Morrie is being weakened by a severe illness ...

当发现莫里因重病而变得虚弱时……

3. 句型公式: 一般将来时的被动语态

A box of tissues will be needed to get through this book!

要读完这本书你将需要一盒纸巾!

4. 句型公式: a way to do sth.

Since ancient times, storytelling has been a way to share and pass on wisdom.

自古以来, 讲故事一直是分享和传递智慧的一种方式。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. cooperate *v.* 合作, 协作

(教材原文) it is easier to achieve something if you **cooperate** with someone else

如果你和别人合作, 就更容易达成目标

#### 一感 / 读句子感悟用法

We expect them to **cooperate with** this country on the project.

我们希望他们就该工程与这个国家进行合作。

It was reported that the two countries **cooperated to design** the satellite.

据报道, 这两个国家合作设计了这颗人造卫星。

We worked **in cooperation with** students from other countries in making robots in the youth science summer camp, gaining not only knowledge but also friendship.

在青年科学夏令营中, 我们和其他国家的学生合作制作机器人, 不仅获得了知识, 还收获了友谊。

**Cooperative** activity is essential to effective community work.

要把社区工作做好, 协作活动是必不可少的。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) cooperate _____ ... (in/on sth.) (在……方面)与……合作 cooperate (with...) to do sth. (与……)合作做某事 (2) cooperation <i>n.</i> 合作, 协作 _____ cooperation with 与……合作/协作 (3) cooperative <i>adj.</i> 合作的, 协作的
探究结论	(1) with (2) in

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Employees will generally be more cooperative (cooperate) if their views are taken seriously.

② The film is produced in cooperation with our company.

(2) 完成句子

① The children cooperated with their teachers in keeping the classroom clean.

孩子们和老师们一起保持教室整洁。

② Both sides agreed to cooperate to prevent illegal fishing in the area.

双方同意携手防范该地区的非法捕鱼活动。

### 2. 现在分词作结果状语

(教材原文) In China, a man from Jiangsu Province graduated from university at the age of 88, **making him the oldest university graduate in the country**.

在中国, 江苏一名男子 88 岁时从大学毕业, 成为

这个国家中年龄最大的大学毕业生。

[句式分析] 本句是一个简单句。句中的现在分词 making him the oldest university graduate in the country 作结果状语。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

Eventually someone spoke, **breaking the silence**.

最后有人开口打破了沉默。

The big fire lasted nearly two days, **leaving nothing valuable**.

大火持续了将近两天, 几乎没剩下什么值钱的东西。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	现在分词作结果状语时一般放在句末, 与主语之间是_____关系。
探究结论	主动

## 名师点拨

现在分词作结果状语通常表示一种自然的结果; 不定式作结果状语通常表示出乎意料的结果。

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It has rained for three days, causing (cause) the river to rise.

② He hurried to the station only to find (find) the train had left.

(2) 完成句子

He cut off the electricity quickly, preventing an accident from happening.

他快速切断了电源, 阻止了一场事故的发生。

# 语法探究

## 复习被动语态

### 「语法感知」

① On discovering that Morrie **is being weakened** by a severe illness, Mitch starts visiting him at his house on Tuesdays.

② A box of tissues **will be needed** to get through this book!

③ The job **was well done** by a skilled worker.

④ That place **has been turned into** a swimming pool.

⑤ It **is said** that he has translated this book into several languages.

1. 观察以上例句, 我们会发现, 句子中的谓语动词部分都是“be+过去分词”结构, 其人称和时态的变化都由助动词 be 的时态变化来体现, 过去分词一定是及物动词的过去分词。

2. 例句①③(填序号)中, 为了突出和强调行为或动作的承受者而使用被动语态。

3. 例句②④中,因为不知道或没必要指出行为、动作的执行者,所以使用被动语态。
4. 例句⑤中,由于主语太长,故使用形式主语和被动语态,将主语后置。

## 「语法精讲」

语态是动词的一种形式,它表示主语和谓语动词之间的关系。语态有两种:主动语态和被动语态。如果主语是动作的执行者,或者说动作是由主语完成的,要用主动语态;如果主语是动作的承受者,或者说动作不是由主语而是由其他人完成的,则用被动语态。

被动语态的构成:be+过去分词。

### 一、各种时态的被动语态

#### (一)各种时态的主动、被动语态的构成

时态	主动语态	被动语态
一般现在时	do/does	am/is/are + 过去分词
一般将来时	will/shall/be going to + 动词原形	will/shall/be going to be + 过去分词
现在进行时	am/is/are + 现在分词	am/is/are being + 过去分词
现在完成时	have/has + 过去分词	have/has been + 过去分词
一般过去时	did	was/were + 过去分词
过去进行时	was/were + 现在分词	was/were being + 过去分词
过去完成时	had + 过去分词	had been + 过去分词

#### (二)注意事项

1. “be+过去分词”并非都是被动语态,系动词 be, feel, seem, look 等词后面的过去分词通常已转化为形容词,作表语用,构成系表结构,表示某种状态。

I'm **interested** in mathematics.

我对数学感兴趣。

He **seems unsatisfied** with his work.

他似乎对自己的工作不满意。

2. 含有情态动词的及物动词变成的被动语态,由“情态动词+be+过去分词”或“情态动词+have been+过去分词”构成。

This letter **need not be typed**.

这封信不需要打印。

It **couldn't have been done** by a little boy.

这不可能是一个小男孩做的。

3. 英语中有一些短语常以被动形式呈现,但表示主动意义。

She **is** usually **dressed** in white.

她通常穿白色衣服。

The boy **was seated** by the window.

小男孩坐在窗户旁。

4. “get+过去分词”表示被动,也是一种被动语态。

We **got separated** when we entered the hall.

我们进入大厅时被挤散了。

5. 某些情况用主动语态来表示被动含义。

(1)read, write, act, iron, burn, cut, draw, drive, sell, wash, clean, wear, open, cook, lock, shut, dry, eat, drink 等动词,用来说明主语的性质特征而不强调被执行者的动作时,用主动形式表示被动意义,且常与 hardly, well, easily, badly, nicely 等副词连用。

The door doesn't **open easily**.

门不容易打开。

Bikes of that kind **sell well**.

那种自行车好卖。

(2)某些表示“发生”的动词(短语),如 happen, take place, occur, break out, burst out 等没有被动语态,但其意义中包含被动概念。

The war **broke out** in 1937.

战争爆发于1937年。

Heavy rains **occurred** during a summer monsoon.

暴雨出现在夏季季风期。

6. 不能用于被动语态的及物动词或动词短语: fit, have, wish, cost, agree with, arrive at/in, shake hands with, succeed in, suffer from, take part in, walk into, belong to 等。

This key just **fits** the lock.

这把钥匙只配这把锁。

Your story **agrees with** what has already been heard.

你的故事与听说的相符合。

### 二、不定式的被动形式

不定式具有动词的特点,可以有自己的宾语和状语,还有时态和语态特征。当不定式的逻辑主语是其动作的承受者时,不定式一般要用被动形式。

(一)不定式的被动形式的构成及意义

形式	构成	意义
一般式	to be + 过去分词	动作和谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生或在谓语动词所表示的动作之后发生
完成式	to have been + 过去分词	动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前

(二)不定式的被动形式的用法

1. 作主语

It's a pity **to be kept** in the house in such fine weather.

在这样的好天气里被关在家里真是遗憾。

2. 作宾语

The boy asked **to be given** an opportunity to try again.

那个男孩要求再给他一次尝试的机会。

3. 作宾语补足语或主语补足语

The captain ordered the flag **to be raised**.

船长命令升旗。

The book is said **to have been translated into** French.

据说这本书已被译成了法语。

4. 作定语

There were plans **to be made** at once.

要立即制订计划。

He was the last one **to be asked** to speak at the meeting.

他是最后一个被邀请在会议上发言的人。

5. 作状语

His mother left the small village, never **to be seen** again.

他的母亲离开了那个小村庄,再也没有人见过她。

They reached the company out of breath only **to be told** that they were fired.

他们上气不接下气地赶到公司,结果却被告知他们被开除了。

(三)不定式的主动形式表示被动的用法

1. 不定式在名词后面作定语时,不定式和名词之间有动宾关系,同时又和句中另一名词或代词构成主谓关系,这时要用不定式的主动形式表示被动含义。

He has a family **to support**. (to support 与 family 之间是动宾关系,与 He 之间是主谓关系。)

他要养活一个家庭。

名师点拨

若句子的主语不是不定式的逻辑主语,不定式要用被动形式。

I'll go to the post office. Do you have a letter **to be posted**? (不定式的被动语态作定语, you 不是 post 动作的执行者。)

我要去邮局,你有信要寄吗?

2. 在某些“形容词+不定式”作表语或宾语补足语的结构中,句子的主语或宾语是不定式的逻辑宾语时,常用不定式的主动形式表达被动意义。这些形容词有 nice, easy, fit, hard, difficult, important, impossible, pleasant, interesting 等。

That question is **difficult to answer**.

那个问题不容易回答。

3. 在 there be... 句型中,当不定式修饰名词作定语时,不定式用主动形式作定语,重点在人;不定式用被动形式作定语,重点在物。

There is no time **to lose/to be lost**.

没有可以失去的时间了。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- They are going to be sent (send) to work in Xizang for two years.
- Do you have any problems if you are offered (offer) this job?  
—Well, I'm thinking about the salary.
- Though we don't know what is being discussed, yet we can feel the topic has been changed (change).
- Much progress is being made/has been made (make) in China with the help of the people's hard work.
- Nowadays, more new technologies are being applied (apply) in the field of IT.
- I have to go to work by taxi because my car is being repaired (repair) at the garage.
- The flowers were so lovely that they were sold (sell) out in no time.
- George returned after the war, only to be told (tell) that his wife had left him.
- We've had a good start, but next, more work needs to be done (do) to achieve the final success.
- Take your time! There is a lot of time for you to get dressed (dress).



## II. 把下列句子变为被动语态

1. People use a great deal of water in this city.  
→ A great deal of water is used (by people) in this city.
2. Can I answer this question in simple English?  
→ Can this question be answered in simple English?

3. I saw him come this morning.  
→ He was seen to come (by me) this morning.
4. The manager has not signed the papers.  
→ The papers have not been signed by the manager.
5. The police are looking into the matter.  
→ The matter is being looked into by the police.

## 课后素养评价(八)

## I. 词语填空

phrase; pass on; cooperate with; fee; graduate from; rather than; come true; at the end of; stick to; give up

1. What they had hoped at last came true.
2. They have come to pass on their valuable experience to us.
3. Don't worry about the grammar; just learn this as a set phrase.
4. Parents need to cooperate with the school and teachers in educating children.
5. The accountant charged a big fee for his services.
6. Reporters should stick to investigating the facts and reveal them to the public.
7. When things aren't going well, he encourages me, telling me not to give up.
8. Don't forget to sign your own name at the end of the email.
9. I graduated from this college and my major was business management.
10. She had started to devote her energies to teaching rather than performing.

## II. 单句语法填空

1. All the film tickets had been sold (sell) out when I got to the cinema.
2. When to have the meeting is being discussed (discuss) now.
3. You shall be punished (punish) if you break the traffic rules.
4. Having cooperated (cooperate) with him for many years, we get along well with each other.
5. The careless driver was fined (fine) by the police, which made him realise the importance of obeying the traffic rules.
6. Till now, three films have been shown (show) in

that small village this month.

7. If one is able to put all his efforts into achieving (achieve) his goal, he will succeed one day.
8. At the age of five, he showed exceptional talent as a musician.

## III. 阅读理解

Have you ever wondered why other people don't see things in the same way you do? Isn't it confusing that you don't necessarily share the same viewpoints even when you come from the same family? Why can't they just see it my way? The scientific explanation comes from cognitive (认知的) psychology; it's a mental process known as information processing.

From a psychological perspective, you have your own internal set of core values, memories, and quality of emotion. With every external event you experience, the information comes in and is filtered (过滤) through your emotions, memories, and values. How you "see" yourself, others, and the world you live in will be flavoured by what you've experienced or believe to be true. In other words, you don't see things as they are—you see things as you are.

You have a process for filtering information and it may strike you as being odd, to say the least, when others don't subscribe to the same beliefs, thoughts, and opinions. What if you considered, even for just a moment, that what you are perceiving is only one possibility—and that there are several other ways to interpret a situation?

In every walk of life, you find yourself defending your beliefs, arguing for how you remember something that happened, and positioning yourself to influence others to see things your way.

But what if you're missing the important point that your differences are what make life colourful? Those differences are what stimulate your mind and emotions. Without differences, life would be dull. There would be no "aha" moments if you knew everything. There would be no inspiration in the form of art, music, poetry, style, or communication.

There will be times in your life when boundaries may need to be enforced with others and, at the end of the day, you want to feel understood and appreciated. Learning to honour your viewpoints while others have their own is vital for coexisting in a world where every individual is perfectly unique.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章讨论了为什么每个人看待事情的方式不同,并指出正是由于人与人之间的不同,生活才会丰富多彩。

1. How does the author introduce the topic of the passage?

A. By raising questions.

B. By listing opinions.

C. By quoting sayings.

D. By making a comparison.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Have you ever wondered why other people don't see things in the same way you do? Isn't it confusing that you don't necessarily share the same viewpoints even when you come from the same family? Why can't they just see it my way?”可知,文章开头通过提出一系列问题来引出文章主题——为什么别人的想法不同。故选 A。

2. What plays the vital role in information processing?

A. Current situations.

B. External opinions.

C. Personal experience.

D. Physical condition.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“With every external event you experience, the information comes in and is filtered (过滤) through your emotions, memories, and values. How you 'see' yourself, others, and the world you live in will be flavoured by what you've experienced or believe to be true.”可知,在信息加工的过程中,个人经验起重要作用。故选 C。

3. Which statement will the author probably agree with?

A. Learning to accept differences.

B. Pursuing perfection in daily life.

C. Following others unconditionally.

D. Arguing for your own viewpoint.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*But what if you're missing the important point that your differences are what make life colourful? Those differences are what stimulate your mind and emotions. Without differences, life would be dull. There would be no 'aha' moments if you knew everything. There would be no inspiration in the form of art, music, poetry, style, or communication.*”可知,作者认为差异使生活丰富多彩,没有差异,生活会很枯燥,因此作者可能会同意 A 项观点“学会接受差异”。故选 A。

4. Which is the most suitable title for the text?

A. Why Nobody Understands You?

B. How Come You Are So Unique?

C. Who Is to Blame for Disagreement?

D. What Makes You Think You're Right?

D 标题归纳题。根据文章内容,结合第二段中的“*How you 'see' yourself, others, and the world you live in will be flavoured by what you've experienced or believe to be true. In other words, you don't see things as they are—you see things as you are.*”可知,文章通过提出一系列问题来引出主题——为什么别人的想法不同,接着对此作出解释——因为我们看待事情的方式受到个人经验的影响,最后指出正是由于人与人之间的差异,生活才会丰富多彩,故 D 项“是什么让你认为自己是正确的”适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

**【微点写作】概要写作**

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 无论你在寻找什么,色彩是让房间有你想要的感觉的关键。

Whatever you're looking for, colour is the key to making a room feel the way you want it to feel.

2. 伴随着对音乐的兴趣而来的是对文化更清晰的认识。

Along with interest in music comes a greater awareness of culture.

3. 第三,视频聊天极大地阻止了我们以自然的方式移动,这降低了我们的认知能力。

Thirdly, video chats greatly prevent us from moving in a natural way, which reduces our cognitive performance.

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，理解《青鸟》这部戏剧的剧本节选部分的人物、背景、情节和主旨；
3. 学习、理解、逐步掌握戏剧刻画人物和发展剧情的方法以及象征、夸张、拟人等修辞手法。

## 自主式预习

### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一) 核心词汇

1. pure *adj.* 纯净的, 洁净的
2. despair *n.* 绝望
3. luxury *n.* 奢华, 奢侈
4. Madame *n.* 夫人, 太太, 女士
5. absurd *adj.* 荒唐的, 愚蠢的
6. lean *v.* 倚, 靠
7. stroke *v.* 轻抚, 抚摸
8. burst out laughing 突然大笑起来
9. no more... than 不比……更……, 和……一样不……
10. be composed of 由……组成
11. refer to 参考
12. set off 出发, 动身

13. in the end 最后; 终于
14. search for 寻找
15. go away 离开
16. look for 寻找
17. later on 后来, 过后
18. all the time 一直, 始终
19. in search of 为了寻求, 寻找

#### (二) 阅读词汇

1. transparent *adj.* 透明的
2. instinctively *adv.* 本能地
3. outstretched *adj.* 张开的, 伸开的
4. vexed *adj.* 恼火的
5. rush into 跑进, 冲进
6. go up to 走上前去
7. be crammed with 挤满
8. straight away 立刻, 马上
9. to the point 切题, 切中要害

### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
ACT IV SCENE II.	What happens between Tytlyl and the Happinesses at the Palace of Happiness.	At the Palace of Happiness, Tytlyl meets <b>1. a troop of</b> Happinesses. Tytlyl says he doesn't know any of them and there aren't Happinesses in his home. But the <b>2. chief</b> of the Happinesses says they are always <b>3. around</b> him. So Tytlyl's home is <b>4. crammed with</b> Happinesses.
ACT VI SCENE II.	Tytlyl's bird has <b>5. cured</b> his neighbour's daughter.	The daughter of Tytlyl's neighbour is sick and has wanted Tytlyl's <b>6. pet bird</b> for a long time. Tytlyl gives it to his neighbour and later it is a <b>7. miracle</b> that the daughter can run, dance and fly! The neighbour pushes the little girl into Tytlyl's arms to thank Tytlyl. Unfortunately, the bird <b>8. escapes</b> and flies away.

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Who is the most important Happiness in the passage?
  - The Happiness of Pure Air.
  - The Happiness of the Forest.
  - The Happiness of Being Well.
  - The Happiness of Loving One's Parents.
- How was the neighbour's little girl?
  - She was being treated in the hospital.
  - Tytyl's bird was taken to her and she recovered by herself.
  - She pulled through her serious illness.
  - She suffered a lot and passed away before long.
- What happened to Tytyl's bird at last?
  - He flew away.
  - He was dead.
  - He was fed by the little girl.
  - He was still kept and looked after by his owner.
- What does the Blue Bird mean in the play?
  - Dream.
  - Friendship.
  - Fortune.
  - Happiness.

答案:1~4 CBAD

### II. 课文语法填空

Tytyl and Mytyl **1. have been searching** (search) for the Blue Bird. At the Palace of Happiness they meet a group of Happinesses. Tytyl says he doesn't know **2. them** (they), but the chief of the Happinesses **3. tells** (tell) Tytyl that they are always around him and his home is crammed **4. with** Happinesses. **5. Unable** (able) to find the Blue Bird anywhere, the children return home. Tytyl's neighbour comes to his home **6. and** tells him that her sick daughter has wanted Tytyl's pet bird for a long time. The neighbour says Tytyl's pet bird would cure her daughter. **7. Hearing** (hear) this, Tytyl allows the neighbour to take his bird to her daughter. **8. Later** (late), the neighbour with her daughter gives thanks **9. to** Tytyl. Tytyl is about to take his bird from the little girl **10. when** it escapes and flies away.

### III. 阅读升华

- Where does Tytyl find the Blue Bird?  
At his own home.
- What can you learn from the passage?  
Happiness exists in our life and is always around us, so we should treasure what we have and have a grateful heart.(回答合理即可)

## 课后素养评价(九)

### I. 单词拼写

- The noise from the neighbours used to drive him to despair (绝望).
- He crammed (塞满) six people into his car and drove away.
- The horse was almost pure (纯净的) white in colour.
- These birds stood on the rock, wings outstretched (张开的).
- The water is so transparent (透明的) that we can see the fishes swimming.
- It is absurd (荒唐的) to believe that the number is unlucky.
- He often leans (倚靠) on the back of the sofa to watch TV.

- I found myself smiling back instinctively (本能地) when our eyes met.
- The government has imposed strict controls over the import of luxury (奢侈) goods.
- Madame (夫人) Curie was a woman scientist who won two Nobel Prizes in the world.

### II. 短语填空

in search of; set off; later on; burst out; in the end; refer to; be composed of; all the time

- Yesterday afternoon, she did her homework all the time without going out for fun.
- The villagers went out in search of the lost child in the mountain.

3. I hate to rush you but I have another appointment later on.
4. Children set off firecrackers on New Year's Eve.
5. As is known to all, water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.
6. Hearing the funny story, she burst out laughing.
7. Do you know which novel of Dickens' he is referring to?
8. He tried various jobs and in the end became an accountant.

### III. 完成句子

1. The man went away with a book under his arm quickly.  
那名男子腋下夹着一本书快速离开了。
2. Here stood a desk against the wall at that time.  
那时这边靠墙放着一张书桌。
3. Every time she travels by bus, it is delayed by at least one hour.  
每次她乘公共汽车出行,至少耽误一个小时。
4. Yesterday morning, I got up so late as to be late for school.  
昨天早晨我起得太晚了,上学都迟到了。
5. He is no more intelligent than you, only harder than you!  
他不比你聪明,只是比你努力!

### IV. 七选五

#### How to Succeed in Science

To succeed in science, you need a lot more than luck. In my view, you have to combine intelligence with a willingness not to follow conventions when they block your forward path. Thus, these have come to be my rules for success.

#### 1

That might sound proud, but the fact is that you must always turn to people who are brighter than you. It's like playing any game. Even as a child, I never wanted to play games with anyone who was as bad as I was. If you win, it gives you no pleasure. And in the game of science or life, the highest goal isn't simply to win; it's to win at something really difficult. 2

#### Take risks.

To make a huge success, a scientist has to be prepared to get into deep trouble. If you are going to make a huge jump in science, you will very likely be unqualified to succeed by definition. 3 This can

be more than personally upsetting.

#### Never do anything that bores you.

My experience in science is that someone is always telling you to do things, and then leaves you alone. I'm not good enough to do well in something I dislike. 4

It's very hard to succeed if you don't want to be with other scientists, because you have to go to key meetings where you spot key facts that would have escaped you. And you have to chat with your competitors, even if you find them objectionable.

#### So my final rule is: 5

- A. Meet challenges with great courage.
- B. If you can't stand being with your real peers, get out of science.
- C. Put another way, it's to go somewhere beyond your ability and come out on top.
- D. Be sure you always have someone to save you from a deep mess.
- E. Avoid foolish people.
- F. In fact, I find it hard to do well in something I like.
- G. Besides, you even have to be prepared to disbelieve your scientific heroes.

答案:1~5 ECGFB

#### 【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 虽然艺术教育的好处被一些专家否定,但不可否认的是,它是给孩子的最珍贵的礼物之一,不能被剥夺。

Although the benefit of art education is denied by some experts, it is undeniable that it is one of the most precious gifts for children, which cannot be deprived from them.

2. 至于睡眠,它不仅对你的记忆力有好处,还可以帮助集中注意力和提高学习效率。

As for sleep, not only is it good for your memory but it can help pay attention and increase learning efficiency.

3. 看起来好像在乎自己的面试者更有可能在乎自己的工作。

Interviewees who look as if they care about themselves are more likely to care about their jobs.

# Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

## 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 在理解剧情的基础上,感悟戏剧主题,加深对单元主题意义的认识,并体会幸福的真谛,逐步形成在困境中不迷失方向,在奋斗中不畏手畏脚且积极的人生态度,同时学会坚守和拼搏,逐步培养敢于挑战自我、乐于助人的优秀品质;
3. 观察语篇,了解剧情概要的基本内容、文体特征和写作方法,并能运用所学知识写一篇剧情概要。

## 自主式预习

### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The moment he saw her, he ran towards her with **outstretched** arms. 张开的
2. The library was **crammed** with readers. 挤满
3. He was **vexed** at his missing the train. 恼火的
4. It is an **absurd** theory and no one will believe it. 荒唐的
5. She walked slowly, **leaning** on her son's arm. 倚,靠
6. He **stroked** her hair affectionately. 抚摸
7. What would you like to drink, **Madame**? 夫人,太太,女士

### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>pure</u> <i>adj.</i> 纯净的, 洁净的	<u>purely</u> <i>adv.</i> 纯粹地; 仅仅, 只不过 <u>purify</u> <i>v.</i> 净化, 使纯净
<u>transparent</u> <i>adj.</i> 透明的	<u>transparently</u> <i>adv.</i> 显然地; 易察觉地
<u>instinctively</u> <i>adv.</i> 本能地	<u>instinct</u> <i>n.</i> 天性, 本能 <u>instinctive</u> <i>adj.</i> 本能的, 天性的
<u>luxury</u> <i>n.</i> 奢华, 奢侈	<u>luxurious</u> <i>adj.</i> 奢侈的, 豪华的
<u>despair</u> <i>n.</i> 绝望	<u>despairing</u> <i>adj.</i> 绝望的 <u>despairingly</u> <i>adv.</i> 绝望地

### III. 补全短语

1. in the end 最后; 终于
2. burst out laughing 突然大笑起来
3. be crammed with 挤满
4. no more... than 不比……更……, 和……一样不……
5. set off 出发, 动身
6. in search of/search for/look for 寻找
7. later on 后来, 过后
8. refer to 参考
9. be composed of 由……组成
10. all the time 一直, 始终

### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: here 位于句首引起的完全倒装; 名词性短语引导时间状语从句  
Here are the Happiness of the Blue Sky, who, of course, is dressed in blue, and the Happiness of the Forest; you will see him every time you go to the window ...  
这个是蓝天幸福, 当然, 他身穿蓝衣; 这个是森林幸福; 每次你走到窗前都会见到他……
2. 句型公式: so+adj. + as to do sth.  
If any of you should find him, would you be so very kind as to give him back to us?  
如果你们中的任何一个人找到了他, 请把他还给我们好吗?

## 任务型课堂

## 1. burst out laughing 突然大笑起来

(教材原文) All the other HAPPINESSES **burst out laughing**.

所有其他幸福都突然大笑起来。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

He **burst into tears**, while she **burst out laughing**.

他突然哭了起来,而她突然大笑起来。

A man **burst into** the room waving a gun.

一名男子挥动着一把枪闯入房间。

The police **burst in** through the side door.

警察从侧门冲了进来。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	burst out 突然发生;突然……起来
	burst _____ laughter = burst out laughing 突然大笑起来
	burst into _____ = burst out crying 突然大哭起来
	burst into 突然闯入
探究 结论	burst _____ 闯入,破门而入;插嘴
	burst with anger/joy 勃然大怒/乐不可支
into; tears; in	

## 名师点拨

burst into 和 burst out 都含有“突然……起来”的意思, burst into 后面多接名词, burst out 后面多接动词-ing 形式。

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① She burst out crying (cry) when she heard the news.

② He burst into the room.

③ His words made all the people present burst into laughter (laugh).

(2) 一句多译

那两个男人互相看了一眼,放声大笑起来。

① The two men looked at each other and burst out laughing. (burst out)

② The two men looked at each other and burst into laughter. (burst into)

## 2. never mind 没关系,不要紧;不用担心

(教材原文) **Never mind**. Don't cry.

没关系。不要哭。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

—Did you fall over and hurt your knee?

——你摔倒了并且伤了膝盖吗?

—**Never mind**. I'll put a bandage on it.

——不要紧。我会用绷带缠上它。

**Mind your own business**, or you'll burn your fingers.

少管闲事,要不然你会吃苦头的。

**Keep in mind that** where there is a will, there is a way.

记住,有志者,事竟成。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	mind one's own _____ 少管闲事
	keep/bear _____ mind that... 记住……
	make up one's mind to do sth. 下决心/决定做某事
探究 结论	change one's mind 改变主意
	business; in

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I had a lot of difficulties in persuading her to change her (she) mind.

② Bear in mind that hard work leads to success.

③ Have they made up their minds where to go for their holidays?

(2) 完成句子

It took me a long time to make up my mind to give up the present job.

我花了很长时间才决定放弃目前的工作。

## 3. 名词性短语引导时间状语从句

(教材原文) ... you will see him **every time** you go to the window...

……每次你走到窗前都会见到他……

[句式分析] every time 是名词性短语,作连词,引导时间状语从句,意为“每当,每次”。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

**Every time** the girl stands on the stage, she is very nervous.

每次这个女孩站在台上,她都非常紧张。

I was attracted **the first time** I read the book.

我第一次读这本书时就被吸引了。

**Next time** you come to China, bring your wife and children.

下次你来中国,带上你的妻子和孩子。

**The moment** the player got out of the airport, he was surrounded by his fans.

这位运动员一出机场,就被他的粉丝围住了。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	each time, any time, _____ first time, the last time, next time, immediately, directly, instantly, the _____, the minute, the instant 的用法和 every time 一样,作连词,引导时间状语从句。
探究结论	the; moment

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The moment she heard the news, she felt like crying.

② I fell in love with this city the first (one) time I saw it.

③ Every time he comes (come) to Beijing, he will visit the Great Wall.

④ Next time you come, do remember to bring (bring) your son here.

(2) 完成句子

Every time I go there, I will buy him something nice.

每次去那里,我都给他买好东西。

# 写作探究

## 概要写作

### 一、写作指导

概要是对一篇文章的主题思想的简单陈述,旨在用最简洁的语言概括原文的主题。概要写作主要包括三个步骤:

#### 第一步:阅读

认真阅读给定的原文材料。如果一遍不能理解,就多读两遍。阅读次数越多,你对原文的理解就越深刻。

#### 第二步:写作

概要应全部用自己的话完成,不要引用原文语句,必须全面、清晰地表达原文信息。

#### 第三步:修改成文

草稿拟好以后,对其进行修改。首先,将概要与原文进行比较,查看是否把所有重要的观点都囊括了,且概要中的观点是否与原文完全一致。其次,如果概要中出现了不必要的词汇、短语或长句子,将其删除。再次,检查拼写、语法和标点符号等文字类错误。最后,确保语言简单明了,条理清晰。

### 二、典题示例

阅读下面的短文,据此写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

It's the first day of school and you have to find the perfect clothes to make a good impression. Lucky for me, I don't have this problem: my private school requires that I wear a uniform. Some

may think this is not a good idea, but I think it is very positive.

In school, one of the most important things is your style. The more you have, the more popular you will probably be. With uniforms, there's no discrimination (歧视) arising from what you're wearing. Everyone is united under the same style. Clothing often reflects who you are. In most schools, there are groups of students who dress alike. You may even avoid a particular person because of what they are wearing. Uniforms require students to get to know each other by finding out who they really are.

There are many styles of clothes, some appropriate (合适的) for school and others not. Peers and the media pressure us to dress and look in a certain way. Some clothing contains logos (标志) promoting drugs, alcohol or even violence. Since some students want to fit in and be cool, they tend to wear this type of clothing. In most school systems, however, it is not allowed. Uniforms help remove these problems. All students look similar. They all fit in. There are no distractions. Uniforms allow students to concentrate on learning instead of what they are wearing.



Money also plays a big part in the clothing we wear. Not all styles are affordable. Some students may even feel pressured to steal to get the right clothing. Although uniforms are initially expensive, they can be worn for years, making them cost less than regular clothes. I believe uniforms help unite us in a common goal: to do well in school. They are a symbol of our unity. They make it clear to everyone that we are more than just our clothes; we are all individuals.

### 三、审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	要点 1:主旨句(穿校服有好处) 要点 2:主旨句(穿校服有助于消除歧视,认识自己) 要点 3:主旨句(穿校服能让学生关注自己的学习而不是穿着) 要点 4:主旨句(穿校服经济实惠,还能让学生牢记学习目标)

### 四、遣词造句

#### (一)核心词汇

- ① as far as I'm concerned 就我而言  
② be beneficial to/be of benefit to 对……有好处  
③ contribute to 有助于  
④ get rid of discrimination 消除歧视  
⑤ reveal the true nature 展示本性

#### (二)完成句子

- ① As far as I'm concerned, wearing school uniforms is of great benefit (大有好处).  
② Wearing school uniforms can not only contribute to getting rid of discrimination (穿校服不仅能有助于消除歧视), but it can also reveal the true nature of students.

#### (三)句式升级

- ① 用“be of+名词”结构升级(二)中句①  
As far as I'm concerned, wearing school uniforms is of great benefit.  
② 用 not only... but also... 的倒装句式升级(二)中句②

Not only can wearing school uniforms contribute to getting rid of discrimination, but it can also reveal the true nature of students.

#### (四)连句成篇

As far as I'm concerned, wearing school uniforms is of great benefit. (要点 1) Firstly, not only can wearing school uniforms contribute to getting rid of discrimination, but it can also reveal the true nature of students. (要点 2) Secondly, uniforms benefit students by avoiding some inappropriate clothing styles, and help them focus on learning instead of fashion. (要点 3) Lastly, wearing uniforms saves students quite a large sum of money and also reminds them of their common goal in school. (要点 4)

### 五、学以致用

阅读下面的短文,据此写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

People have a complicated relationship with failure. While the basic idea of learning from failure is supported by evidence, most people fear it for their kids. No parent wants to see their children fail. Failure hurts. It is hard to see your daughter pour her heart into studying for a maths test, only to get a C. You want your children to succeed, but most of all you don't want to see them suffer.

The world often sees children as a reflection of their parents. The common belief is that when your teen fails, it reflects poorly on you. No one wants to be judged. As a result, parents slowly take over the responsibility of “managing” academics, athletics and relationships to prevent failure and pain.

But failure is a part of growing. Even though you have the best intentions, you have to let your kids fail. Teaching your children about failure changes your relationship from a “responsible for” mindset (心态) to the one of “responsible to”. Rather than feeling responsible for your daughter and her actions, you feel responsible to teach and let her deal with the situation.

Feeling “responsible for” children's actions can lead to parents overcompensating (过度补偿) for real or potential weaknesses. Skills like conflict solutions, problem-solving and dealing with authority figures are

important development markers for teenagers. When parents overcompensate for children's weaknesses, they rob teens of opportunities to improve developmental skills.

Feeling “responsible to” teach and guide children allows parents to create space for failure and challenges. Teenagers can then use this space to perfect these important developmental skills. Over time, the weaknesses become strengths. When your children fail, you don't have to lower your standards for your kids, but you may have to change expectations. Remember, when you feel responsible to give your children more freedom, it changes how

you deal with failure. Failure becomes a stepping stone to success rather than something to be avoided.

[参考范文]

Although failure is important to children's growth, many parents are unwilling to see their children fail because they either want to protect their children from pain or hate to be judged by others.(要点 1 和要点 2) These parents tend to feel responsible for their children's failure and heavily intervene, thus preventing them from acquiring fundamental skills.(要点 3 和要点 4) However, the correct way is to allow children to fail and help them progress.(要点 5)

## 课后素养评价(十)

### I. 单句语法填空

- But the insides aren't quite as luxurious (luxury) as their names suggest.
- As far as I'm concerned, education shouldn't be measured purely (pure) by examination results.
- Her moods were very changeable, now laughing loudly, and now sunk in despair.
- It refers to anything that is acquired or learnt, rather than instinctive or natural.
- Around 15% of our diet is composed of protein.
- Seeing the funny picture, the whole class burst into laughter.
- Her vision (视力) problems were so serious that she became blind in the end.
- The streets are always crammed with people when the festival comes.
- She moved to London in search of fame and fortune.
- It was raining hard when we set off.

### II. 完成句子

- Never mind. I'll do better next time.  
没关系。我下次会做得更好。
- Here is the advice to you from the doctors.  
这是医生给你的建议。
- Every time I see her, she wears a broad smile.  
我每次见到她,她都面带灿烂的笑容。
- Later on, I found that it seemed/appeared that they didn't want to cooperate with us.  
后来,我发现他们似乎不想与我们合作。

- She is no better than you for she is so nervous as to shake all the time when giving the speech.

她并不比你好,因为她太紧张了,以至于发表演讲时一直在发抖。

### III. 语法填空

Do you really want to be happy? Everyone says yes, but do you know the approach **1.** to happiness is giving to others? Some of us may feel that if we give too much, our generosity will **2.** be taken (take) advantage of by others. However, people who see your good intentions as weakness are in the **3.** minority (minor).

Danny Thomas said, “Success in life has **4.** nothing to do with what you gain in life or accomplish for yourself. It's what you do for others.” So why not start with you and me right now?

You can donate anything without **5.** seeking (seek) rewards. This is good for you and those **6.** who receive your acts of **7.** kindness (kind). Every time you give, you will receive—even if you are not looking for a reward. You will find your donations won't make you poor. As a result of this, you will see most people, naturally, pay you back.

You should also take the time to be polite to all of the people **8.** performing (perform) services for you. Once you do, you will be surprised at how many of them will go out of their way to give you good service. If you establish sincerity and trust **9.** wherever you go, you will be loved by your fellow

man. As is often said, “A person’s true wealth is the good he or she **10. does** (do) in the world.”

#### IV. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

请写一篇英语短文,向校报英文版投稿,内容包括:

1. 过去的一年你主要经历了什么;
2. 这段经历带给你的启示;
3. 你对新年的期望。

注意:词数 80 左右。

##### [参考范文]

Thinking of the passing year, memories flooded over me.

The most unforgettable experience is the coming-of-age ceremony, which was held to raise our awareness of entering adulthood and becoming responsible members of the society. For me, it also means having freedom and independence I dreamed of.

In the coming year, I’ll participate in more social activities to lead a meaningful life and spare no effort to make contributions to the society.

##### 第二节 概要写作

阅读下面的短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

These days our society develops rapidly and forces people to rush. It appears that people have got used to being in a hurry. However, it’s better for people to take their time and live their life at a slower pace than to hurry to get things done.

The main reason that convinces us to be against doing work in a hurry is the possibility of doing wrong in a rush. When people do their jobs or take action in a hurry, they can’t make a sound decision and probably regret later. As the saying goes, “Haste makes waste.” We should think carefully before making a decision and do our work less quickly. We should not make mistakes by doing work hurriedly.

Slowing down the pace of life helps people enjoy their life better. For example, taking a train to some place certainly will take more time than taking a plane. However, taking a train makes people have enough time to get to know a lot of new friends. Besides, it allows people to fully enjoy the beautiful scenery along the way. On the contrary, being in a hurry will make us lose chances of enjoying our lives.

Finally, slower life pace provides better health conditions for us. As is known to all, taking action in a hurry bothers people and raises their stress. People think if they are not in a hurry, they will become a loser and that annoys them. But being in a hurry can hurt people both physically and mentally. According to some studies, people who have a slower pace suffer fewer diseases, tend to be happier and live much longer than those whose life is tense, even if the former finish jobs more slowly than the latter.

In short, working quickly will bring about more material benefits to make our society more advanced. Yet, much stress can’t bring enjoyment, friends and health, which are much more important than money and other material advantages. Therefore, take your time and live your life at a slower pace.

##### [参考范文]

Despite being accustomed to the fast pace in modern society, people are recommended to lead a slower life. (要点 1) Slowing down lowers the possibility of committing errors made by hasty decisions. (要点 2) It can also provide us with more opportunities to enjoy life. (要点 3) Besides, a slower life is supposed to bring better health conditions physically and mentally. (要点 4) Therefore, a slower life is strongly suggested. (要点 5)

## 读后续写技能养成

## 精彩结尾之哲理升华

### 「技能概述」

1. 哲理升华:指以感悟、评论或对某事的重新认知等

富含哲理的句子结尾的方式。它可使读者直观地理解作者的真实用意。

2. 续写技巧:针对文中故事的具体内容,用切合主题

的简短议论句、名言警句和符合公序良俗的成语、谚语等概括出结尾句。

### 「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考 I 卷 续写范文)... David finally finished the running, gasping for breath. Despite the last one to reach the finishing line, he still earned himself admiration and thunderous applause. Everyone is like a flower, some having fragrance, but some not. As long as you bloom, there will be bees and butterflies.

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

此处结尾是哲理升华式结尾。结尾处的“人人都像一朵花,有的有香味,有的没有。只要你盛开,自有蜂蝶来。”是说,虽然大卫是最后一个抵达终点的,但只要坚持完成了目标,他就像花朵盛放一样,值得众人钦佩和喝彩。这种哲理句形象地表明了人生只要坚持不放弃,就会有一定收获的道理。

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. realise *v.* 意识到
2. saying *n.* 谚语;格言
3. pride *n.* 骄傲
4. lesson *n.* 教训
5. random *adj.* 随意的
6. failure *n.* 失败
7. attitude *n.* 态度
8. honesty *n.* 诚实
9. kindness *n.* 善良
10. devotion/dedication *n.* 奉献
11. effort *n.* 努力
12. matter/count *v.* 重要
13. depend on 依靠
14. make a big difference 产生很大影响
15. remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. I know better the saying "Pride goes before a fall" through my own experience.  
因为亲身经历过,我对“骄者必败”这句格言深有体会。
2. That day, Joyce learnt the biggest lesson of his life: it is always better to work as a team rather than working alone.

那一天,乔伊斯学到了他人生中最重要的一个教训:团队合作总比单干好。

3. A random act of kindness may make the world a warmer place.  
一个随意的善举可能会让世界变得更温暖。
4. Actually, sometimes our attitude towards changes makes a big difference to our life.  
事实上,有时候我们对待变化的态度会让我们的生活大不相同。
5. Never before in my life had I so firmly believed honesty is the best policy.  
在我的人生中,我从未如此坚定地相信过诚实为上策。

### 「技能达标」

#### I. 完成句子

1. Kindness and dedication will pay off one day.  
善良和奉献总有一天会得到回报。
2. Looking at his happy son, the father thought that money can't buy everything.  
看着快乐的儿子,父亲想,钱不能买到一切。
3. What Mum did reminded me of a famous saying: Roses given, fragrance in hand.  
妈妈的举动让我想起了一句格言:赠人玫瑰,手有余香。
4. She succeeded in telling everyone it was the efforts in the process rather than the results that mattered.  
她成功地告诉大家,重要的是过程中的努力,而不是结果。

#### II. 用哲理升华的技巧完成语段

(前文故事梗概:作者在一次海啸中意外发现有人遇到危险,于是和邻居一起前往救助。作者当时或多或少地想给每个人留下深刻印象。)

That night, news came from the hospital that the two children were in good condition. Picturing what the merry scene would be, relief lay in my heart and happiness appeared on my face. The next morning, all the people I met smiled at me and could not stop praising me. It seemed like a good opportunity to show myself off, but I didn't mean to. In fact, I was ashamed I had thought about it. (设计一个哲理升华式结尾) It occurred to me that helping others was priceless.

## 第二单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

### I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

#### A

#### Most Impressive Ways to Get from Place to Place

##### Horse Caravan (马车)

Go a bit old-school with a horse caravan in Ireland. While riding a horse may not offer much in the way of impressiveness, how about getting a horse to a carriage that includes cooking and sleeping areas? That sounds a bit more remarkable. Plus, the horse-drawn carriages allow a fresh perspective on the countryside and beaches.

##### Terra Bus

Made in Calgary, only roughly 20 of these Terra Bus Ice Explorer all-terrain vehicles exist and they almost all serve the Icefields Parkway and the Athabasca Glacier in Jasper, Canada. Designed specifically for glacier travel, the six-wheel, 49-foot-long vehicle looks like the most robust (强大的) tour bus on the planet. And it is. The Terra Bus Ice Explorer can handle 56 passengers and nearly any sort of ice, mud, sand, snow and rock the Canadian Rocky Mountains have to offer.

##### The Central-Mid-Levels Escalator (自动扶梯)

If this Hong Kong escalator system didn't exist, you'd have all sorts of stairs to deal with to climb between the western and central Hong Kong districts. This system of 20 escalators, built in 1993, combines to become the longest outdoor covered escalator in the world, running a total length of 2,624 feet and rising 442 feet in the process. From end to end it's a ride lasting 20 minutes.

##### Symphony of the Seas

At 1,181 feet in length and a gross tonnage of 228,000, the Royal Caribbean Symphony of the Seas is one of the largest cruise ships in the world.

The steel ship features seven distinct on-board neighbourhoods, surfing, ziplining, ice-skating, 3D movies and pools. Symphony is powered by solar energy.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四种最令人印象深刻的旅行方式。

#### 1. What can you do on Horse Caravan?

- A. Cook meals.
- B. Watch movies.
- C. Take an escalator.
- D. Admire great mountains.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Horse Caravan (马车)** 部分中的“While riding a horse may not offer much in the way of impressiveness, how about getting a horse to a carriage that includes cooking and sleeping areas?”可知,可以在马车上做饭。故选 A。

#### 2. What is Terra Bus intended for?

- A. Beach views.
- B. In-city transportation.
- C. On-board entertainments.
- D. Complex road conditions.

D 推理判断题。根据 **Terra Bus** 部分中的“Designed specifically for glacier travel, ... any sort of ice, mud, sand, snow and rock the Canadian Rocky Mountains have to offer.”可知, Terra Bus 的目的是适用于复杂的路况。故选 D。

#### 3. Which of the following is in Hong Kong?

- A. Horse Caravan.
- B. Terra Bus.
- C. The Central-Mid-Levels Escalator.
- D. Symphony of the Seas.

C 细节理解题。根据 **The Central-Mid-Levels Escalator(自动扶梯)** 部分中的“If this Hong Kong escalator system didn't exist, you'd have all sorts

of stairs to deal with to climb between the western and central Hong Kong districts.”可知, The Central-Mid-Levels Escalator 在香港。故选 C。

**B**

We all have them in our lives—Ms Late and Mr Early. They live among us just to try our patience. They can't seem to get out of their own way and arrive on time. It's a problem, and they know it, but that's how they roll.

I've ever been in the room with my bestie Tinkerbelle and said, "It's time to go." She agreed. Then, she turned around and ordered a T-shirt she had seen online, checked her email, folded her laundry and searched for her purse while I was waiting by the door.

But as exasperating as it is to have Ms Late in your life, it's equally painful to have Mr Early.

My husband Hubby is in this category. He will time things to the minute. "The movie is at four. We have five stops to make before that, so estimating 15 to 20 minutes per stop, not counting traffic or unforeseen circumstances like a flat tire, we should leave after breakfast."

Being too early or too late is suffering, but it never seems to bother the person himself. It only affects the poor ones in their company who just do their best to show up when they're supposed to.

I'd like to know how early in life this behaviour came into being. How does our internal clock leave one person unconcerned about time passing, and the other constantly aware of it? Look at my kids. My son is very laid back, and he didn't arrive until nine days after his due date. My daughter, a spitfire (烈性子), arrived before her New Year due date, so maybe it's nature from the very beginning.

The one thing that does happen is that this behaviour has become part of the charm of the person you love. You can't imagine Mr Early ever being late or Ms Late ever showing up early—as long as they show up.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。作者在文章中主要介绍了我们生活中的两类人:办事拖延的人和办事提早的人。

4. Why does the author mention Tinkerbelle and Hubby?

- A. To make comparisons.
- B. To provide examples.
- C. To explain a concept.
- D. To introduce the topic.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“*We all have them in our lives—Ms Late and Mr Early. They live among us just to try our patience.*”可知,作者在文章中主要介绍了“晚女士”和“早先生”,两者代表了生活中的两类人:办事拖延的人和办事提早的人;根据第二段中的“*Then, she turned around and ordered a T-shirt she had seen online, checked her email, folded her laundry and searched for her purse while I was waiting by the door.*”可知,Tinkerbelle 是作者列举的“晚女士”的例子;根据第四段中的“*My husband Hubby is in this category. He will time things to the minute.*”可知,Hubby 是作者列举的“早先生”的例子,由此可知,作者在文中提到 Tinkerbelle 和 Hubby 是为了提供例子。故选 B。

5. What can we infer about the author from this text?

- A. She hates Mr Early and Ms Late.
- B. She desires to change Mr Early and Ms Late.
- C. She shows understanding to Mr Early and Ms Late.
- D. She speaks highly of Hubby's ability to time things accurately.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,在作者看来,“早先生”和“晚女士”的行为已经成为你所爱的人的魅力的一部分,无论是晚出现还是早出现,只要出现就好,由此可知,从本文中我们能推断出,作者对“早先生”和“晚女士”表示理解。故选 C。

6. What does the underlined word “exasperating” in Paragraph 3 mean?

- A. Annoying.
- B. Boring.
- C. Confusing.
- D. Worrying.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句中的“*it's*

equally painful to have Mr Early”可知,和“早先生”在一起是痛苦的,结合“painful”可知,画线词所在部分指的是在你的生活中有“晚女士”同样是令人生气的;annoying意为“使生气的”,能够代替画线词在句中所要表达的意思。故选A。

7. What's the author's purpose in writing this text?

- A. To explain the importance of being on time.
- B. To teach people how to stick to the schedule.
- C. To share her views on Mr Early and Ms Late.
- D. To discuss the origin of Mr Early and Ms Late.

C 写作意图题。通读全文,结合第一段的关键句“We all have them in our lives—Ms Late and Mr Early. They live among us just to try our patience.”和最后一段中的“The one thing that does happen is that this behaviour has become part of the charm of the person you love.”可知,作者在文章中主要介绍了我们生活中的两类人:办事拖延的人和办事提早的人,并分享了自己对这两类人的看法。由此可知,作者写这篇文章的目的是分享对“早先生”和“晚女士”的看法。故选C。

### C

Bees aren't the only insects pollinating (给……授粉) red clover. Moths (飞蛾) do about a third of the flower visits after dark, new research suggests. The discovery stresses what researchers may be missing in researching into the night shift of plant pollination, including a previously unknown benefit of the moth pollination to the clover—a boost in seed production.

This work may help deepen scientists' understanding of the pollination services provided by nighttime moths. For about a century, the general understanding of clover pollination has been that bees—and bees alone—are the key insect players. “Clover is a valuable agricultural plant and has received a lot of studies,” says Jamie Alison, a pollinator ecologist at Aarhus University in Denmark. “Yet, none of those studies have said anything about the possibility of moth pollination.”

Alison and his colleagues discovered moths' pollination role while studying how plants and their insect pollinators would respond to climate change by moving uphill. To record the exact pollinators

that would go to grassland plants, the team set up 15 time-lapse (延时) cameras in the Swiss Alps. The method allowed Alison and his colleagues to investigate nighttime visitors. In all, the team collected more than 164,000 photos of red clover flowers, with 44 of these images capturing visits by insect pollinators.

Most of these flower honey seekers—some 61%—were bumblebees. But a substantial proportion (比例)—34%—were moths, mostly large yellow underwings, visiting in the early morning hours. Butterflies and either a wasp or another bee species finished the other 5 percent of the visits.

“Moths are well-known as regular pollinators of many other plants, but their role in clover pollination seems to have been overlooked,” Alison says. He and his colleagues also investigated how many seeds the clover flowers produced, and they had a happy surprise.

“It's clear that the role of nighttime moths as pollinators of crops has largely been ignored,” Funamoto, a pollination biologist at the University of Tokyo, says. “I think future studies will reveal many plant species that are thought to be dependent on pollination by daytime insects are actually pollinated by nighttime moths, to some extent.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人们一直以为蜜蜂是唯一给三叶草花授粉的昆虫,但新的研究发现飞蛾在夜间给三叶草花授粉。

8. What was deeply rooted in scientists' minds about clover pollination?

- A. It posed risks to other plants.
- B. It merely depended on bees.
- C. It ruined the production of clover seeds.
- D. It failed to be carried out at night.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“For about a century, the general understanding of clover pollination has been that bees—and bees alone—are the key insect players.”可知,大约一个世纪以来,人们普遍认为只有蜜蜂是三叶草花授粉的主要参与者。故选B。

9. Why did the researchers use the 15 time-lapse cameras?

- A. To record pollinators visiting grassland plants.
- B. To study the effect of climate change on insect pollinators.
- C. To record the changeable conditions in the Swiss Alps.
- D. To capture more images of different insects.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“To record the exact pollinators that would go to grassland plants, the team set up 15 time-lapse (延时) cameras in the Swiss Alps.”可知,研究人员使用15台延时相机是为了记录访问草原植物的传粉者。故选A。

10. What did the researchers think of their research result?

- A. They felt astonished at that.
- B. They thought it was disappointing.
- C. They believed it needed further confirmation.
- D. They thought it was influenced by many factors.

A 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可知,飞蛾给三叶草花授粉的作用被长期忽视,而研究人员经过调查后得到了惊喜。由此可推知,研究人员对于他们的研究结果感到惊讶。故选A。

11. What would be the best title for the text?

- A. Moths Draw the Attention of Researchers
- B. Scientists Are Looking for Night Pollinators
- C. Scientists Find a Way to Help Clover Flowers
- D. Moths Are Found to Pollinate Clover Flowers at Night

D 标题归纳题。根据文章大意以及第一段的内容可知,文章的主要大意是新的研究发现飞蛾在夜间给三叶草花授粉。因此,文章最好的标题是“飞蛾被发现在夜间为三叶草花授粉”。故选D。

#### D

Music is part of every culture around the world. In fact, the ability to appreciate music is built into our brains. Music makes us feel good. Many music studies look at the long-term benefits of being a music listener or participating in a music programme

as a child. But can listening to music help us connect and empathise (产生共鸣) with someone right at the moment? A new study aims to find it out.

In this study, 60 university students were asked to watch several 15-second videos in which a person describes an autobiographical (自传体的) experience. In some cases, people in the video talk about a relatively ordinary event, like moving into a new apartment, while other stories contain strong emotional content, like recalling a terrible accident or a loved one's death.

While students watched these videos, the researchers randomly played either “emotionally neutral (中立的)” music or very sad music in the background. After watching each video, the students expressed how much sympathy they had for the person in the video, and how much they wanted to help that person. They were also tested on their social reasoning skills—how well they understood the person's thinking method in the video. All of these could be signs of empathic connection (同感沟通).

Results showed that people watching the sad videos felt more sadness themselves and more sympathy for the other person than those watching the neutral videos—not a big surprise. But these empathic feelings were strengthened by listening to sad music. The music had no effect, however, on whether or not the students could reason out the other person's experience and understand what they might be thinking or feeling.

While music is not the only way (other art forms, like fiction and dancing, have also been shown to increase empathy, for example), music could be a powerful tool. “It'd be very interesting to extend our finding further, to see if listening to music in a social context can improve our real-world ability to empathise with and feel sympathy for others in the long term,” says the lead researcher Brennan McDonald.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。音乐是全世界文化的一部分,那么听音乐能否帮助我们在此刻与某个人



共情呢？一项新的研究试图去弄清楚这一点。

12. What does the new study want to find out?

- A. Whether music can benefit us.
- B. Whether music can arouse genuine emotions.
- C. Whether music can help build empathy.
- D. Whether music programmes can increase our confidence.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*But can listening to music help us connect and empathise (产生共鸣) with someone right at the moment? A new study aims to find it out.*”可知,新的研究是想弄清楚音乐是否能帮助建立共鸣。故选 C。

13. What were the participants required to do during the study?

- A. To film a short autobiographical video.
- B. To share one of their miserable experiences.
- C. To think up ways to help the person in need.
- D. To watch videos while listening to different background music.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*While students watched these videos, the researchers randomly played either ‘emotionally neutral (中立的)’ music or very sad music in the background.*”可知,参与者在研究过程中被要求边听不同的背景音乐边看视频。故选 D。

14. Which of the following belongs to the opinion of the researchers?

- A. We can increase our sympathy by using some music.
- B. Music helps us understand others' thinking processes.
- C. Most adults are much more emotional than children.
- D. Music can influence us both emotionally and intellectually.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*While music is not the only way (other art forms, like fiction and dancing, have also been shown to increase empathy, for example), music could be a powerful tool.*”可推知,我们可以使用某些音乐来增加我们的共情能力。故选 A。

15. What will the researcher Brennan probably do next?

- A. Study different types of music.
- B. Test the long-term effect of music on people.
- C. Find more ways to make people more caring.
- D. Compare the effect of music with that of other art forms.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*‘It'd be very interesting to extend our finding further, to see if listening to music in a social context can improve our real-world ability to empathise with and feel sympathy for others in the long term,’ says the lead researcher Brennan McDonald.*”可知,研究人员 Brennan 接下来可能会测试音乐对人的长期影响。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

There's no doubt that when it comes to friendship, you want positive people in your life and not negatives ones. 16

Support when you need it. With positive friends, you don't need to beg for help when you need it because they will be there for you without asking. 17

Health benefits of being positive. The more positive friends you have, the better you will be at remaining optimistic yourself. 18 For example, it helps people to deal with stress and illness better. Health benefits may include lower rates of depression, a greater ability to throw off colds, and a reduced risk of developing disease.

Bring out the best in you. 19 This means trying new things, achieving goals, and having the kind of life you dreamed of for yourself. With positive people in your life, you'll feel more comfortable sharing your goals because your friends will give you the emotional push you need to go after what you want in life.

Attract more positive friends. You naturally attract the kinds of friends who are most like you. So if you're a downer, you'll probably find that negative people flock to you. 20 The more you are able to maintain a positive attitude, the more like-minded people you'll attract in return.

A. Here are some benefits of spending time with positive friends.

- B. That's why you'd better surround yourself with positive friends.
- C. In most cases, they will go out of their way to help you when you're in trouble.
- D. The same is true for being positive.
- E. As we all know, there are many benefits of being optimistic.
- F. Your positive friends will inspire you to be the best you can be.
- G. Most of the time, you have to ask them to help you when in trouble.

答案:16~20 ACEFD

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

When my daughter Adrienne was twelve years old, she took a 21 class. She informed me that real 22 uses black-and-white film. I agreed. We bought the film and she decided to take pictures 23 the St. Louis Gateway Arch (拱门).

The day was cloudy. I recommended we wait for sunshine, 24 she thought the light best for the photograph she expected. The minute we got to the 25, Adrienne walked up to one of the massive triangular-shaped legs, arched (弯) her entire body backwards against it, arms stretched overhead, and pointed her 26 straight up the side of the arch.

I said in my most caring, motherly voice, "Honey, you need to 27 and get the entire arch in the picture."

28 who has ever seen a photo of arch knows what I mean. "It won't make 29 if you can't see the entire thing," I said.

"No, I want to do it this way," she insisted. I thought, okay, we'll waste a little money on film and 30, but she'll learn her lesson.

It 31 I learned the lesson. Seven years later, Adrienne won a scholarship from the San Francisco Art Institute, became an intern at Ansel Adams Center for Creative Photography, and had a(n) 32 at the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art. People 33 her photographs because she has a unique vision. A vision that inspired her at 34 to photograph the Gateway Arch from an angle I thought would never 35.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的女儿靠自己独特的摄影视角在摄影上取得成功的故事。

21. A. architecture      B. photography  
C. direction      D. introduction  
B 根据下文的 "We bought the film and she decided to take pictures" 可知, 女儿上的是摄影课。故选 B。
22. A. photographers      B. architects  
C. journalists      D. directors  
A 根据下文的 "uses black-and-white film" 可知, 此处指的是摄影师。故选 A。
23. A. in      B. of  
C. for      D. from  
B 根据下文的 "the St. Louis Gateway Arch (拱门)" 可知, 此处是指拍圣路易斯拱门的照片。take pictures of 意为 "拍……的照片"。故选 B。
24. A. and      B. or  
C. but      D. though  
C 空前提到 "I recommended we wait for sunshine", 再结合上文的 "The day was cloudy." 和下文的 "she thought the light best" 可知, 该空前形成转折关系。故选 C。
25. A. stop      B. scenery  
C. sight      D. arch  
D 根据下文的 "straight up the side of the arch" 可知, 此处是信息词 arch 的词汇复现。故选 D。
26. A. arms      B. hands  
C. camera      D. head  
C 根据上文的 "she decided to take pictures 23 the St. Louis Gateway Arch (拱门)" 可知, 此处表示用相机拍照。故选 C。
27. A. look forward      B. back up  
C. bend down      D. come up  
B 根据下文的 "get the entire arch in the picture" 可知, 要想把整个拱门放进画框里, 需要往后退。故选 B。
28. A. Anyone      B. Everyone  
C. Nobody      D. Somebody  
A 作者认为任何一个见过拱门照片的人都会赞成作者的建议。故选 A。
29. A. sure      B. difference  
C. sense      D. profit

C make sense 为固定短语,意为“有道理,有意义”。故选 C。

30. A. developing            B. improving  
C. printing                D. displaying

A 根据上文的“‘It won't make 29 if you can't see the entire thing,' I said.”可知,作者认为女儿不听自己的建议拍照,只是在胶卷和冲洗上浪费钱。develop 意为“冲洗(照片)”。故选 A。

31. A. put out                B. figured out  
C. resulted out            D. turned out

D 根据下文的“Seven years later, Adrienne won a scholarship from the San Francisco Art Institute, became an intern at Ansel Adams Center for Creative Photography”可知,结果是女儿在摄影上取得了一定的成就,作者吸取了教训。turn out 表示“结果是……”,为固定短语。故选 D。

32. A. collection            B. show  
C. practice                D. internship

B 根据下文的“at the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art”可知,在博物馆举行的应该是展览。故选 B。

33. A. praise                B. assess  
C. support                D. deny

A 根据下文的“because she has a unique vision”可知,女儿拍摄的照片因为其独特的视角获得了人们的赞美。故选 A。

34. A. seven                B. twenty  
C. twelve                 D. nineteen

C 根据上文的“‘When my daughter Adrienne was twelve years old’”可知,女儿当时是 12 岁。故选 C。

35. A. make                B. do  
C. fit                      D. work

D 根据上文的“‘It won't make 29 if you can't see the entire thing,' I said.”可知,作者在女儿当初拍摄时认为这样的视角是不会起作用的。故选 D。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Drinking two or more cups of black tea a day

36. is (be) associated with a lower risk of death from all causes, according to a new study 37. published (publish) in *Annals of Internal Medicine*.

The study looked at nearly 500,000 men and

women aged 40 to 69 years old who participated 38. in the UK Biobank, which houses in-depth genetic and health information, between 2006 and 2010. The database included information participants reported about 39. their (they) own tea drinking habits, such as 40. frequency (frequent) and what they added to their cup.

Some participants didn't drink black tea at all, but since the data came from the United Kingdom, there were plenty of people who drank it 41. regularly (regular) and some who drank up to 10 cups a day, said lead study author Maki Inoue-Choi.

The Biobank followed up about 10 years after the 42. original (origin) survey, and researchers found that people who drank two or more cups of tea daily in the interim (其间) were less likely 43. to die (die) from causes such as heart disease.

The research is 44. an exciting look into tea drinking habits, but there is still more work 45. that/which needs to be done before recommending dietary changes, said Howard Sesso, an associate professor of medicine at Harvard Medical School, who was involved in the study.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你是李华,你收到朋友 Tim 抱怨他与父母关系紧张的来信,请你写一封 80 词左右的回信,提供几点建议,帮助 Tim 处理他与父母的关系。内容提示:

1. 与父母有不同意见是很正常的,应多与他们交谈沟通;
2. 放学回到家应该主动帮忙做一些家务;
3. 对父母为你做的事及时表达感谢,多想想你能为父母做些什么。

[参考范文]

Dear Tim,

I am sorry to know that you are not getting on well with your parents. Here I am writing to give some advice on how to deal with it.

First, it's quite normal for you to have different

opinions with your parents, and you should have more talks with them to exchange ideas. Second, you can be more active to help with housework after school. Third, you can show immediate thanks to your parents when they do things for you, and also you can think about what you can do for them.

In my opinion, think more for your parents and I think you will get on well with them soon.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 概要写作(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

Most children are taught the virtue of honesty from fairy tales and other stories. The story of Pinocchio, who begins life as a puppet, teaches the importance of telling the truth. In the United States, young children learn the tale of young George Washington, who finally admits to his father that he cuts down a cherry tree. This kind of story shows children that “honesty is the best policy”. Still, if this is the case, then why so many people lie? The fact is that human beings lie for many reasons.

One reason for lying has to do with minimising a mistake. While it is true that everyone makes a careless mistake from time to time, some people don't have the courage to admit their errors because they fear blame. For example, students might lie to their teachers about unfinished homework. They might say that they left the work at home when, in

fact, they didn't do the work at all. These students do not want to seem irresponsible, so they make up an excuse—a lie to save face.

If a company decides to have a weekend meeting, one of the managers might not feel like attending. She may call her boss and give this excuse: “I've been fighting off a cold all week, and I truly can't risk getting the others sick. I'll be sure to get all of the notes on Monday.” When individuals do not want to admit the truth and then face the consequences, they use lies to avoid difficulties.

A somewhat different reason for lying has to do with self-protection. Parents, particularly those with small children, may teach their children to use this type of “protective” lie in certain circumstances. What should children do if a stranger calls while the parents are out? Many parents teach their children to explain that Mum and Dad are too busy to come to the phone at that time. In this situation, protective lying can prevent harm or disaster.

### [参考范文]

Though people are taught to be honest from childhood, many people still tell lies for various reasons.(要点 1) In some situations, people make up an excuse to minimise a mistake to avoid embarrassment.(要点 2) Sometimes people like to get out of situations that they do not want to be in or can't manage.(要点 3) However, in other circumstances, people lie to protect themselves or others from being harmed by other people.(要点 4)

## Unit 3

## The world meets China

## Section I Starting out &amp; Understanding ideas

## Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文获取主要信息，能够总结出丝绸之路之敦煌的地位与作用、莫高窟的概况与主要看点、丝绸之路如何重获新生；
3. 观看视频，了解丝绸之路的历史、现状和在中外文化交流方面的作用；
4. 通过对图片的观察、体悟、思考和讨论，学会用欣赏、学习、包容的心态去“遇见”不同的文化，对“文化冲击”现象进行初步思考，同时理解文化的丰富性与多样性及“中国走向世界”这一主题，培养多元视角，增强文化自信。

## 自主式预习

## 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

## (一) 核心词汇

1. strengthen *v.* 加强
2. coverage *n.* 覆盖范围
3. statue *n.* 雕像；塑像
4. peak *n.* 高峰，顶点
5. such as 例如
6. date from 追溯到
7. more than 多于；超过；不仅仅；非常
8. vary from... to... 从……到……变化
9. be unique to ……所特有的
10. bring... to life 使……恢复生机
11. take a look at 看一看

## (二) 阅读词汇

1. grotto *n.* 小洞穴
2. immortal *n.* 神
3. religious *adj.* 宗教的

4. heavenly *adj.* 天国的
5. glorious *adj.* 辉煌的
6. expo *n.* 展览会，博览会
7. gateway *n.* 通向……的门户
8. boast *v.* (地方、机构等) 自豪地拥有(好的事物)
9. crossroads *n.* 活动中心，汇集地
10. oasis *n.* (沙漠中的) 绿洲
11. testimony *n.* 证据；证明
12. mural *n.* 壁画
13. Apsaras *n.* 飞天
14. scroll *n.* 纸卷，卷轴
15. ceramics *n.* 陶瓷制品
16. Taoist priest 道士
17. be testimony to ……的证明
18. seal up 密封
19. fade from 从……逐渐消失
20. look around 环视；参观
21. to name just a few 仅举几例
22. pass through 穿过

## 「课文速览」

### 表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1	A brief introduction to Dunhuang.	It was the <b>1. gateway</b> to and from Ancient China, a place where East met West, and a green <b>2. island</b> in the middle of the desert.
Part 2	Information about the Mogao Grottoes.	They were carved out of the rock over a period of 1,000 years. The statues include <b>3. elements</b> from Ancient Greece, India and Iran. The murals, the subjects of which vary from religious stories to <b>4. scenes</b> of everyday life, cover an astonishing area of <b>5. 45,000 square metres</b> . One type of mural is called the Apsaras, which represent these <b>6. heavenly</b> musicians, singers and dancers. The Apsaras painted during the Tang Dynasty are a reflection of the <b>7. confidence</b> and optimism of people from that time.
Part 3	The Library Cave.	Thousands of manuscripts, paintings and scrolls, as well as silk embroideries were hidden inside. The hidden <b>8. treasures</b> give us a picture of Dunhuang when it was at the very centre of the Silk Road trade.
Part 4	The decline of Dunhuang.	In the Ming Dynasty, trade routes changed and Dunhuang was not as prosperous as it used to be. Gradually, it <b>9. faded</b> from memory.
Part 5	Dunhuang came to life.	The Silk Road has been brought to life through the Belt and Road Initiative. Dunhuang has once again become a <b>10. global crossroads</b> since it hosted the Silk Road International Cultural Expo in 2017.

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What can be learned from Paragraph 2?
  - The statues in the caves include only Chinese elements.
  - The caves cover an area of 45,000 square metres.
  - The ancient caves were carved over a period of 700 years.
  - Dunhuang played an important role in cultural and commercial exchange.
- Which type of mural is unique to Dunhuang?
  - Murals painted in bright colours.
  - Flying Immortals.
  - Murals with various subjects.
  - Murals with a mixture of different countries.

- When did the Apsaras reach a peak?
  - During the Tang Dynasty.
  - During the Ming Dynasty.
  - In 1900.
  - In 405 AD.
- What made the Silk Road come to life again?
  - The change of trade routes.
  - It was once a great city.
  - The Belt and Road Initiative.
  - The hidden treasures.

答案: 1~4 DBAC

### II. 课文语法填空

Dunhuang is located on the old Silk Road and it was the gateway to and from Ancient China, a place

1. where East met West, and an oasis in the middle of the desert.

Dunhuang has a long and glorious history as a centre of cultural and commercial exchange. Today, Dunhuang is a world-class tourist destination 2. boasting (boast) sites with UNESCO-protected heritage status.

The Mogao Grottoes 3. were carved (carve) out of the rock. There are many statues, which include elements from other countries. The murals cover 4. an astonishing area of 45,000 square metres. 5. Their (they) subjects vary from religious stories 6. to scenes of everyday life. The Apsaras, or “Flying Immortals”, are unique to Dunhuang. The painting of Apsaras reached a peak during the Tang Dynasty.

In 1900, the Library Cave was found by a Taoist

priest, which was one of the most important 7. finds (find) of the 20th century.

In the Ming Dynasty, Dunhuang was not as prosperous as it used 8. to be (be) because trade routes changed. 9. Gradually (gradual), it faded from memory.

Because of the Belt and Road Initiative, Dunhuang has come to life once again. It has once again become a 10. global (globe) crossroads.

### III. 阅读升华

1. What does the passage mainly talk about?

It mainly tells us the splendid history and the present situation of Dunhuang.

2. If you had a chance to visit Dunhuang, what would you like to see? Why?

略

## 课后素养评价(十一)

### I. 阅读理解

This famous site features one of the largest and most representative collections of Buddhist architecture and art in China. It was rated as a 5A-class tourist attraction in 2010.

The Lingshan Grand Buddha is an 88-metre-high open-air bronze statue of Sakyamuni. It is 17 metres higher than the Grand Buddha at Leshan Mountain. It is part of the pattern of Five Buddhas in five directions together with the Big Buddha at Lantau Island in Hong Kong to the south, the Grand Buddha at Leshan Mountain to the west, the Grand Buddha in Yungang Caves to the north and the Grand Buddha at the Longmen Caves in the central area. At the feet of the Grand Buddha, you can feel the loftiness (雄伟) and dignity of Buddhism.

#### Tips

**Location:** Lingshan Road, Mashan town, Binhu district, Wuxi

**Tickets:** Through ticket is 210 yuan (about \$30), with free tickets for the performance of *Ode to Auspiciousness* for individual visitors

**Opening hours for Lingshan Mountain:** 7:00—17:00

**Opening hours for Brahma Palace:** 9:00—18:00

### Recommendations

#### The Nine-Dragon Fountain

The Nine-Dragon Fountain in front of the giant Buddha will start to play music and the song, *The Birth of Buddha*, at 10 am every day. A huge lotus (莲花) slowly blooms with six petals, and a 7-metre golden statue of Prince Buddha rises from the lotus, with one hand pointing to the sky and the other at the earth, symbolising Buddha's light shining on all things.

#### The Brahma Palace

The whole palace shows the mixture of traditional cultural elements with Western architectural features. Many cultural heritage items and artworks can be found there. Its splendid design surprises every visitor.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了著名的旅游景点——灵山大佛的地理位置、门票及开放时间等。

1. What is the Lingshan Grand Buddha famous for?

A. Its long history.

B. Its special material.

C. Its geographical location.

D. Its typical collections of architecture and art.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*This famous site features one of the largest and most*

representative collections of Buddhist architecture and art in China.”可知,灵山大佛以具有代表性的佛教建筑和艺术收藏出名。故选 D。

2. What do we know about the performance of *Ode to Auspiciousness*?

- A. It's free if you get a through ticket.
- B. It costs 210 *yuan* at least.
- C. It's available only for group visitors.
- D. It lasts 10 hours for visitors.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Tips** 部分中的“**Tickets:** Through ticket is 210 *yuan* (about \$30), with free tickets for the performance of *Ode to Auspiciousness* for individual visitors”可知,买到通票后这个演出是免费的。故选 A。

3. Why does the writer recommend the Brahma Palace to us?

- A. It's in front of the giant Buddha.
- B. Visitors can enjoy a huge lotus there.
- C. Its design and collections are amazing.
- D. Many traditional cultural items are on sale.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,梵宫体现了传统文化元素与西方建筑特色的融合,还拥有许多文化遗产项目和艺术作品。所以作者推荐梵宫是因为它的设计和收藏令人惊叹。故选 C。

## II. 七选五

Things work out best for those who make the best of how things work out.

—John Wooden

Things aren't always going to work out as you planned. 1 During these times, it can be easy to give up and drown yourself in self-pity.

2 When it happens, you really have two choices. One is to blame your circumstances on other people. The other is to figure out how to use your situation to your advantage.

Say you just got laid off. One reaction is to curse the economy and sink into a depression. 3

Let's say you've done what you could and after a year, you still haven't landed anything. In this case, what would you do?

This isn't to say that trying to make the best out of how things turn out will always result in the best outcome but at least you'll have some control over your situation. 4 Most people who are living their dream life got there by doing things to improve their situation. 5 However, the more you try, the higher the chances you'll get the outcome you are aiming for.

- A. The important thing is to get started.
- B. The fact is that bad times fall on all of us.
- C. You could also start looking for another job.
- D. Some things worked and many things didn't.
- E. The other would be to fill your days with meaningless tasks.
- F. Very few people who have the life they want got it by sitting around.
- G. You'll have periods when it seems like things are constantly going wrong.

答案:1~5 GBCFD

### 【微点写作】介绍文化遗迹

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 知道你对中国文化感兴趣,我想向你推荐我最喜欢的城市——苏州。

Knowing that you are interested in Chinese culture, I'd like to recommend my favourite city, Suzhou, to you.

2. 我相信在那里旅行你永远不会感到厌倦。

I'm sure you will never get bored with travelling there.

3. 希望我的建议对你有所帮助,祝你旅途愉快。

Hope my recommendation will be helpful to you and wish you a great journey.



## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

### Language points

#### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 站在导游的角度，感知课文的语言特点，学习如何与游客交流，如何吸引游客的注意力，如何把握住事物的主要特征，如何展开具体描述；
3. 基于课文内容，了解敦煌的发展与兴衰、莫高窟的独特位置与历史价值以及敦煌如何增进文化交流和理解，加深对跨文化沟通与合作的认识，增强民族自豪感。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They turned through the **gateway** on the left.  
出入口
2. An **oasis** is a small area in the desert where water and plants are found.  
绿洲
3. The hotel also **boasts** two swimming pools and a golf course.  
自豪地拥有
4. This increase in exports bears **testimony** to the success of industry.  
证明
5. The **statue** was carved out of a single piece of stone.  
雕像
6. **Mural** paintings may well be the earliest paintings in the human history.  
壁画
7. Traffic reaches its **peak** between 8 and 9 in the morning.  
高峰
8. As I opened the **scroll**, the scene of the Yellow River unfolded.  
卷轴

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>glorious</u> <i>adj.</i> 辉煌的	<u>glory</u> <i>n.</i> 荣誉, 光荣
<u>religious</u> <i>adj.</i> 宗教的	<u>religion</u> <i>n.</i> 宗教
<u>immortal</u> <i>n.</i> 神 <i>adj.</i> 长生的, 永世的	<u>mortal</u> <i>adj.</i> 不能永生的 <i>n.</i> 凡人
<u>heavenly</u> <i>adj.</i> 天国的	<u>heaven</u> <i>n.</i> 天堂, 天国
<u>strengthen</u> <i>v.</i> 加强	<u>strong</u> <i>adj.</i> 强壮的
	<u>strength</u> <i>n.</i> 力气, 体力

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>coverage</u> <i>n.</i> 覆盖范围	<u>cover</u> <i>v.</i> 覆盖, 涉及

#### III. 补全短语

1. in detail 详细地
2. date from 追溯到
3. thanks to 多亏, 由于
4. vary from... to ... 从……到……变化
5. even though 尽管
6. ahead of 提前
7. look up 抬头看; 查找
8. be unique to 是……特有的

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: so... that...

The scrolls are so detailed that they describe the vast range of goods that were imported and exported from Dunhuang...

这些卷轴内容如此详细, 它们描述了进出敦煌的各种商品……

2. 句型公式: 过去分词作状语

Known as the Mogao Grottoes, these ancient caves were carved out of the rock over a period of 1,000 years.

这些古老的洞窟被称为莫高窟, 是 1 000 多年前从岩石中开凿出来的。

3. 句型公式: so that 引导目的状语从句

Come a little bit closer so that you can get a better view.

请靠近一点, 以便你能看得更清楚。

4. 句型公式:现在分词作状语

... these images are full of life, reflecting the confidence and optimism of people from that

time.

……这些图案充满生机,反映了那个时代人们的自信和乐观。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. vary v. 相异,不同;变化,改变

(教材原文) The subjects of the Dunhuang murals **vary** from religious stories to scenes of everyday life. 敦煌壁画的主题多样,从宗教故事到日常生活场景,各不相同。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Prices **vary from** one shop **to** another.

各家商店价格不同。

There is a **wide variety of** patterns to choose from.

有种类繁多的图案供选择。

Tents come in **various** shapes and sizes.

帐篷有各种各样的形状和大小。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) vary from... _____ ... 从……到……变化 (2) variety <i>n.</i> 变化;多种多样 a variety of = varieties of 各种各样的 (3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的
探究结论	(1) to (3) various

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① This tool can be used in a variety of ways.  
② She took the job for various (vary) reasons.

(2) 完成句子

The heights of the plants vary from 8 cm to 20 cm.

这些植物的高度从8厘米到20厘米不等。

### 2. reflect v. 反映;反射;思考

(教材原文) ... these images are full of life, **reflecting** the confidence and optimism of people from that time.

……这些图案充满生机,反映了那个时代人们的自信和乐观。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

His face was **reflected** in the mirror.

他的脸映照在镜子里。

The windows **reflected** the bright afternoon sunlight.

窗户反射着午后明媚的阳光。

I hope in years to come he will **reflect on** his decision.

我希望未来的几年里他会反思自己的决定。

He admired his **reflection** in the mirror.

他欣赏着自己在镜中的影像。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) reflect _____ 思考,反思 (2) _____ <i>n.</i> 映像;反映;反射;沉思
探究结论	(1) on (2) reflection

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The start of a new year is a good time to reflect on the many achievements of the past.  
② With the white walls reflecting (reflect) the light, the room looks bright.  
③ Your clothes are often a reflection (reflect) of your personality.

(2) 完成句子

It is important to reflect on the reasons for this phenomenon.

反思这种现象产生的原因很重要。

### 3. strengthen v. 加强

(教材原文) Given that the theme of the Expo was to promote cultural exchange and **strengthen** mutual cooperation between the countries along the Silk Road, Dunhuang was the ideal place.

鉴于本次博览会的主题是促进文化交流,加强丝绸之路沿线国家的相互合作,敦煌正是一个理想的会址。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

The exercises are designed to **strengthen** your stomach muscles.

这些训练的目的在于增强你的腹肌。

Repairs are necessary to **strengthen** the bridge.

这座桥需要加固。

Take into account your own **strengths and weaknesses**.

考虑一下你自己的优点和缺点。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ <i>n.</i> 力气, 体力; 优点, 长处 _____ and weaknesses 优点和缺点 (2) strong <i>adj.</i> 强壮的
探究结论	(1) strength; strengths

**【易混辨析】 strength, power, energy, force**

易混词汇	区别
strength	通常指体力或人、事物等拥有的实力。
power	普通用词, 泛指一切力量、能力等, 尤指权力。
energy	物理学中指能量、能源, 用于人时则指精力。
force	通常指发挥出来的力量、暴力、强制力、效力。

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

Yoga can be used to strengthen (strength) the immune system.

(2) 选词填空 (strength, power, energy, force)

- The work took me a lot of energy.
- The man has a strong desire for power.
- These two boys are equal in strength.
- The old man pulled the wagon with great force.

**4. so... that... 如此……以至于……**

(教材原文) The scrolls are **so** detailed **that** they describe the vast range of goods that were imported and exported from Dunhuang...

这些卷轴内容如此详细, 它们描述了进出敦煌的各种商品……

[句式分析] 本句中 so... that... 引导的是结果状语从句。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

It is **so cold that** you can't go outside unless fully covered in thick clothes.

天太冷了, 你不能外出, 除非穿上厚厚的衣服。

It was **so fine a day that** we went out for a walk. 那是一个如此晴朗的日子, 我们出去散步了。

There was **so much noise outside that** we couldn't concentrate on our study.

外面噪声如此大, 以至于我们不能专注于自己的学习。

It is **such a little dog that** it can't run fast.

这只狗如此小, 以至于它跑不快。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) so + <i>adj./adv.</i> + that so + <i>adj.</i> + a/an + _____ + that so + many/few + 可数名词复数 + that so + much/little + 不可数名词 + that (2) such + a/an + <i>adj.</i> + 可数名词单数 + that such + <i>adj.</i> + 可数名词复数/不可数名词 + that
探究结论	(1) 可数名词单数

**名师点拨**

so... that... 结构中的“so + 形容词(副词)”可以提至句首, 以加强语气, 但要注意用部分倒装语序。

**So bright** was the moon **that** the flowers were bright as by day.

在如此明亮的月光下, 花儿就像白天一样鲜艳。

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- It was such fine weather that they all went hiking.
- They are such delicious dishes that we would like to eat them.
- My garden was covered with so many butterflies that I could hardly see the flowers.

(2) 句型转换

- This is such an interesting film that we all enjoy watching it.  
→ This is so interesting a film that we all enjoy watching it.
- The boy studied so hard that he got through the exam easily.  
→ So hard did the boy study that he got through the exam easily. (部分倒装)

## 课后素养评价(十二)

### I. 单词拼写

- Approaching the city centre, we saw a stone statue (雕像) of about 10 metres in height.
- To strengthen (加强) our friendship, we'd better keep in touch with each other and communicate with each other frequently.
- As far as I know, his sister is at the peak (高峰) of her career at present.
- As a volunteer of the Expo (博览会), Li Ming's English is as good as his Chinese.
- The online course offers good coverage (覆盖范围) of all the subjects in the College Entrance Examination.
- Such attitudes are valueless unless they reflect (反映) inner cognition and certainty.

### II. 短语填空

look around; bring... to life; date from; be unique to; thanks to; even though; in detail; vary from... to...

- This kind of friendly and harmonious atmosphere is unique to our class, and you can't experience it in any other place.
- The anxious girl looked around and found that she got lost.
- Paper cutting, one of the most popular Chinese folk arts, may date from the sixth century.
- The brave firefighter risked his own life to save five children that varied from 5 to 15 trapped in the fire.
- Thanks to his timely help, the drowning boy was saved.
- Thankfully, after I explained my plan to them in detail, they said yes.
- He was brought to life again by Dr Miller who was an expert in this field.
- I'm really tired of driving at night even though the traffic seems fine.

### III. 完成句子

- She practised so frequently that her spoken English as well as her writing skills was strengthened greatly. 她练习得如此频繁,以至于她的写作技能和英语口语都得到了极大巩固。
- The reason why the classmates don't want to make friends with him is that he is always

boasting himself.

同学们不愿意与他交朋友的原因是他总是鼓吹自己。

- Given that the statue is old, the government has asked several designers to design a new one. 考虑到这个雕塑已经很破旧了,政府让几位设计师再设计一个新的。
- In front of the building is a beautiful garden. 楼前是一个漂亮的花园。

### IV. 完形填空

We've all been there before: You're driving down the road when suddenly a pothole (凹坑) seems to appear out of nowhere and sends the 1 jumping. Most people think potholes are 2, but artist Jim Bachor sees them as a canvas (画布) for his artwork.

Bachor uses the 3 art form of mosaic to create eye-catching, colourful images of famous artists like Aretha Franklin or simple everyday 4 like food. He even makes less-appealing visuals of insects.

Bachor was a graphic designer for 20 years before he began his 5 in mosaic. He regards an incidental trip to Europe as his motivation to change careers. While 6 in Italy, Bachor fell in love with Pompeii, the preserved ancient Roman city. A tour guide pointed out a mosaic, mainly made of glass and marble, and told Bachor, "Glass and marble don't 7. So, this looks essentially the way the artist intended." Bachor says, "That kind of staying power just 8 me so much."

A year later Bachor returned to attend a mosaic class in Ravenna, Italy, to learn the proper way to 9 the ancient technique. Years after that, he mastered the technique. He 10 that mosaics can be just as significant today as the art form over 1,000 years ago. "I just saw that there was a(n) 11 to bring it into the new age as a contemporary subject," he says.

So, Bachor decided to make a special piece of 12 for that pothole. He has 13 mosaic pothole art around Chicago, Detroit, New York City and even in Finland.

While he may not be getting 14 from drivers or passengers, Bachor's art is 15 a pleasant surprise to discover.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。坑坑洼洼的路面会给汽车和行人带来很多不便,艺术家 Bachor 突发奇想,在路面上的浅坑里进行镶嵌艺术创作,不仅能给路过的人欣赏,还能起到提醒作用。

- A. body                      B. rock  
C. car                         D. sand  
C 根据上文的“You're driving down the road”可推断,凹坑让车颠簸起来。故选 C。
- A. challenging          B. interesting  
C. discouraging         D. annoying  
D 根据下文的“but artist Jim Bachor sees them as a canvas (画布) for his artwork”可知,上下文存在转折关系,艺术家 Bachor 把凹坑看作他的画布,而大多数人认为凹坑是烦人的。故选 D。
- A. modern                 B. ancient  
C. brief                      D. mysterious  
B 根据下文的“the ancient technique”可知,这是一种古老的艺术形式。故选 B。
- A. objects                 B. ideas  
C. routines                 D. projects  
A 根据下文的“like food”和上文的“everyday”可推断,此处指简单的日常物品。故选 A。
- A. duty                     B. career  
C. belief                    D. instruction  
B 根据下文的“He regards an incidental trip to Europe as his motivation to change careers.”可知,此处指的是事业。故选 B。
- A. travelling             B. living  
C. working                D. studying  
A 根据下文的“A tour guide”可知,Bachor 是去意大利旅行。故选 A。
- A. last                      B. connect  
C. fade                      D. resolve  
C 根据下文的“That kind of staying power”可知,玻璃和大理石有能长期保存的特性,不会褪色。故选 C。
- A. reminded              B. confused  
C. troubled                D. impressed  
D 根据下文的“to learn the proper way to 9 the ancient technique”可知,这种持久力让 Bachor 印象深刻。故选 D。
- A. introduce              B. perform  
C. promote                D. describe  
B 根据下文的“Years after that, he mastered the technique.”可推断,Bachor 参加课程学习这种古老的技艺。故选 B。
- A. argued                 B. imagined  
C. remembered         D. realised

D 根据下文的“to bring it into the new age as a contemporary subject”可知,Bachor 意识到在今天镶嵌工艺也是重要的。故选 D。

- A. link                      B. time  
C. opportunity         D. voice  
C 根据下文的“So, Bachor decided to make a special piece of 12 for that pothole.”可知,Bachor 看到了使用这种工艺的机会。故选 C。
- A. artwork                B. machinery-work  
C. code                     D. literature  
A 根据下文的“He has 13 mosaic pothole art around Chicago, Detroit, New York City and even in Finland.”可知,Bachor 为那个凹坑制作了一件特殊的艺术品。故选 A。
- A. discovered            B. created  
C. improved              D. taught  
B 根据下文的“mosaic pothole art”并结合语境可知,Bachor 在多地都进行了艺术创作。故选 B。
- A. help                     B. invitation  
C. money                  D. praise  
D 根据下文的“a pleasant surprise to discover”可推断,此处指尽管 Bachor 没有得到来自司机和乘客的表扬。故选 D。
- A. nearly                  B. merely  
C. certainly               D. personally  
C 根据下文的“a pleasant surprise to discover”可知,尽管没有得到表扬,但是 Bachor 的艺术无疑是一个令人惊喜的发现。故选 C。

### 【微点写作】介绍文化遗产

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 古典园林被联合国教科文组织列为世界文化遗产,是这座城市的象征,在这里您可以更好地了解中国。  
Listed by UNESCO as a world cultural heritage, the Classical Gardens are the symbol of the city, where you can get a better knowledge of China.
- 西安是陕西省的省会,有很多旅游景点,其中大雁塔是最突出的。  
Xi'an, the capital city of Shaanxi Province, has a lot of tourist attractions, among which Big Wild Goose Pagoda stands out.
- 鉴于其悠久的历史 and 独特的文化,这座城市值得你参观也就不足为奇了。  
Given its long history and distinct culture, it comes as no surprise that this city is worth your visit.

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务及目标

1. 复习几种状语从句的用法及区别, 并在真实语境中加以运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 掌握并能正确使用与文化交流相关的词汇或表达, 并尽量想出更多不同的相关表达;
4. 了解从古至今的中外文化交流历程, 理解文化交流与文化发展相互促进的关系, 拓展文化视野, 坚定文化自信, 对中国文化如何更好地走向世界进行初步思考。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. The library attracts thousands of **scholars** and researchers. **学者**
2. This is one of the busiest times of the year for the **department**. **(大学的)系, 部**
3. There is a middle school attached to the **institute**. **学院**
4. Learning a musical **instrument** can introduce a child to an understanding of music. **乐器**
5. We shouldn't sacrifice environmental protection to **promote** economic growth. **促进**
6. She gave the police a full **account** of the incident. **描述**

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>musical</u> <i>adj.</i> 音乐的	music <i>n.</i> 音乐
<u>fondness</u> <i>n.</i> 喜爱, 爱好	fond <i>adj.</i> 喜欢, 喜爱
<u>comparative</u> <i>adj.</i> 比较的, 相对的	compare <i>v.</i> 比较, 对比
	comparison <i>n.</i> 比较, 相比
<u>accessible</u> <i>adj.</i> 可到达的, 可接近的; 可使用的; 容易理解的	access <i>n.</i> 通道, 通路; 机会, 权利
<u>educational</u> <i>adj.</i> 教育的, 有教育意义的	educate <i>v.</i> 教育; 教导, 教养
	education <i>n.</i> 教育, 培养
	educator <i>n.</i> 教育者, 教育家

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>artistic</u> <i>adj.</i> 艺术的; 有艺术天赋的	art <i>n.</i> 艺术
	artist <i>n.</i> 艺术家

#### III. 补全短语

1. be mixed with 与……混合
2. as a whole 总体上
3. have... in common 有……共同之处
4. find out 查明, 弄清楚
5. pay attention to 注意
6. what's more 此外, 而且
7. to sum up 总而言之, 总之
8. in short 简言之
9. at the end of 在……末尾
10. be accessible to 被……易理解

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: when 引导时间状语从句  
You can only imagine how travellers felt when they saw the oasis of Dunhuang ahead of them.  
你只可以想象出, 当旅行者看到敦煌绿洲就在眼前时, 他们的感受会是怎样的。
2. 句型公式: the + 序数词 (+ 名词) + to do sth.  
Gan Ying, a military envoy, explored the Persian Gulf and became the first Chinese to get information on Europe.  
军事使者甘英探索了波斯湾, 成为第一个获得欧洲信息的中国人。
3. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语  
The Confucius Institute is a non-profit

educational organisation run by the Chinese Ministry of Education, aiming to promote Chinese language and culture abroad and to encourage cultural exchange.

孔子学院是由中国教育部主办的非营利性教育组织,旨在向海外推广中国语言和文化,鼓励文化交流。

#### 4. 句型公式:if 引导条件状语从句

If you look up, you can see the paintings and other artworks...

如果你抬头观看,你会看到壁画和其他的艺术作品……

#### 5. 句型公式:as+adj.+as+从句

... Dunhuang was not as prosperous as it used to be.

……敦煌不再像以前那样繁华。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. accessible adj. 可到达的,可接近的;可使用的;容易理解的

(教材原文)One of Qian's great achievements was to produce comparative studies of classical Chinese texts, which made these works more **accessible** to Western readers.

钱钟书的伟大成就之一是对中国古典文本进行比较研究,这使这些作品更容易为西方读者所理解。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The remote desert area is **accessible** only by helicopter.

只有乘直升机才能进入那遥远的荒漠地区。

It is a programme making science more **accessible** to young people.

这是一项使科学更容易为年轻人所了解的计划。

People **have better access to** health care than they used to, and they're living longer as a result.

相比过去,人们现在可以更好地获取医疗服务,因此寿命更长了。

With a simple search, you can **gain access to** knowledge about almost any subject.

简单一搜,你就能得到几乎有关任何话题的知识。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1)be accessible _____ 易达到……; 易被……理解/得到</p> <p>(2)access n. 通道,通路;机会,权利</p> <p>have access _____ 有……的机会;可以接近/进入/使用</p> <p>gain/get access to 获得到达(某地)或使用(某物)的机会</p>
------	--

续表

探究结论	(1)to (2)to
------	-------------

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①These documents are not accessible to the public.

②The legal aid system should be accessible (access) to more people.

③(2023·新高考Ⅱ卷)Walking is the best way to gain access to nature.

(2)完成句子

This means that across the country, all students have access to computers daily in their classrooms.

这意味着在全国,所有学生每天都能够在他们的教室中接触电脑。

### 2. the first/second... (+n.) + to do sth. 第一/二个……做某事(的……)

(教材原文)Gan Ying, a military envoy, explored the Persian Gulf and became **the first Chinese to get information on Europe**.

军事使者甘英探索了波斯湾,成为第一个获得欧洲信息的中国人。

[句式分析]本句是一个简单句。句中的不定式短语 to get information on Europe 作定语,修饰 the first Chinese。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Yuri Gagarin became **the first person** in the world **to go into** space.

尤里·加加林成为世界上第一个进入太空的人。

He would be **the last to agree** to the plan.

他决不会同意这项计划。

Do you know which is **the best route to take**?

你知道哪一条是最佳路线吗?

He has **no friend to depend on**.

他没有可以依靠的朋友。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	序数词、最高级或 no, all, any 等限定词的中心词常用 _____ 作后置定语。
探究结论	不定式

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① She was the first woman to win (win) the gold medal in the Olympic Games.

② Where is the best place to meet (meet)?

(2) 完成句子

In my family, my mother is always the first to get up.

在我家, 我的妈妈总是第一个起床。

## 语法探究

### 复习状语从句

#### 「语法感知」

① You can only imagine how travellers felt **when they saw the oasis of Dunhuang ahead of them**.

② **If you look up**, you can see the paintings and other artworks that are testimony to how the Silk Road brought East and West together.

③ In the Ming Dynasty, trade routes changed and Dunhuang was not as prosperous **as it used to be**.

④ **Given that the theme of the Expo was to promote cultural exchange...**, Dunhuang was the ideal place.

⑤ The teacher raised his voice on purpose **so that the students in the back could hear more clearly**.

⑥ **Although he is young**, he can do these by himself.

⑦ When in Rome, do **as the Romans do**.

以上例句中, 黑体部分都为状语从句, 并且从句的位置比较灵活, 可置于句首、句中或句尾。

#### 「语法精讲」

状语从句有时间状语从句、地点状语从句、原因状语从句、目的状语从句、结果状语从句、条件状语从句、方式状语从句、比较状语从句和让步状语从句, 共 9 种。

#### 一、时间状语从句

时间状语从句用来说明主句谓语动词发生的时间。常用的引导时间状语从句的从属连词有 when, while, as, as soon as, before, after, since, till, until 等。

#### 1. when/while/as

连词	含义及用法
when	“当……的时候”, 可与延续性动词或短暂性动词连用; 从句动作可以发生在主句动作之前、之后或与主句动作同时发生。
while	“当……的时候”, 一般与延续性动词连用; 从句动作与主句动作同时发生。
as	“当……的时候”, 常与延续性动词连用; 从句动作与主句动作同时或几乎同时发生。

**When they heard the news**, they were very excited.  
当听到这个消息时, 他们非常激动。

**While/When she was reading her parents' letter**, she was very moved.

当读她父母的信时, 她非常感动。

**As she grew older**, she gained in confidence.

随着年龄增长, 她的信心增强了。

#### 名师点拨 ■■■■

(1) when 还可作并列连词, 表示“在这时, 在那时”。

I was doing my homework **when** someone knocked at the door.

我正在做我的家庭作业, 这时突然有人敲门。

when 常用于以下结构:

① be about to do... when 正要做……这时

② be doing... when 正在做……这时



③ had done... when 刚做完……就

(2) while 还可引导让步状语从句,意为“尽管”。另外,while 还可用作并列连词,表示对比,翻译为“然而”。

**While/Although/Though** he is young, he has become a professor of this university.

虽然他很年轻,但他已成为这所大学的一名教授。

## 2. before/since

连词	含义及用法
before	表示“在……之前;直到……才……,过了……就……”,常用于“It will be/was+时间段+before 从句”结构。
since	表示“自从……以来”,常用于“It is/has been+时间段+since 从句”结构。

People believe that it won't be long **before** Dunhuang becomes a global crossroads again.

人们相信过不了多久敦煌会再次成为世界的活动中心。

As is reported, it is over 100 years **since** Tsinghua University was founded.

据报道,清华大学已经建校 100 多年了。

3. not... until...表示“直到……才……”,主句谓语动词通常是非延续性动词。

As far as I know, his mother **won't** go to bed **until** he returns home every evening.

据我所知,他的母亲每晚直到他回家才会上床睡觉。

4. 表示“一……就……”的连词

(1) hardly/scarcely... when..., no sooner... than...

**Hardly** had we got into the village **when** it began to rain.

我们刚到这个村庄,天就下起雨来。

(2) directly, immediately, instantly

He made for the door **directly** he heard the knock. 他一听到敲门声,就朝门口走去。

(3) the moment/minute/instant

**The moment** he saw his mother, he burst into tears.

一看到他的母亲,他就大哭起来。

## 二、原因状语从句

常用的引导原因状语从句的从属连词有 because,

since, as, now that, considering that (考虑到,鉴于)等。

连词	含义及用法
because	语气最强,表示必然的因果关系,常用来回答 why 的提问。
since	语气稍弱,表示对方已经知晓的原因或事实,意为“既然,因为,由于”。
as	语气最弱,往往不是明显的原因,只是对结果的附带说明。

She's got the job **because** she has a good command of many languages.

她得到了这份工作,因为她精通多种语言。

**Since** it is late, I shall go home now.

既然天晚了,我现在该回家了。

**As** he wasn't there, we left a message.

由于他不在,我们给他留下了一条信息。

## 三、让步状语从句

常用的引导让步状语从句的从属连词有 although, though, as, while, even if/even though 等。

1. although 引导的让步状语从句不倒装;though 引导让步状语从句时,从句可以使用倒装语序,也可以不使用,但 as 引导让步状语从句必须用倒装语序。

**Although** these measures are not effective forever, they are vital for now.

虽然这些措施并不能永远有效,但它们目前是至关重要的。

**Tired as/though he is**, he offers to help me.

尽管他已经很累了,他还是主动提出帮助我。

(2) while 引导让步状语从句,通常置于句首。

**While** I am willing to help, I do not have much time available.

尽管我愿意帮忙,但是我没有很多可用的时间。

2. even if 与 even though 引导的让步状语从句

John is in good shape physically **even if/even though** he doesn't have enough time to take exercise.

尽管约翰没有足够的时间锻炼,但他体形很好。

3. “疑问词+ever”引导的让步状语从句

“疑问词+ever”表示“无论……”,引导让步状语从句时,相当于“no matter + 疑问词”。

**No matter how/However** well you know Paris, it is easy to get lost.

不管你对巴黎多么熟悉,还是很容易迷路。

#### 四、其他状语从句

状语从句	连词
条件状语从句	if, unless (= if... not), so/as long as (只要), on condition that, in case (万一), suppose/supposing, provided/providing 等
目的状语从句	so that, in order that, in case (以防)等
结果状语从句	so... that..., such... that...等
地点状语从句	where, wherever 等
方式状语从句	as(按照), as if/as though(好像)等
比较状语从句	than, as... as..., not as/so... as...等

**As long as** you can keep away from them, you're safe. (条件状语从句)

只要你离他们远一点,你就是安全的。

I'll give you all the facts **so that** you can judge for yourself. (目的状语从句)

我把所有事实都告诉你,以便你自己作出判断。

Our country's history is **so** long and glorious **that** we are all proud of it. (结果状语从句)

我们国家的历史如此悠久和辉煌,以至于我们都为它感到自豪。

They completely ignore these facts **as if** they never existed. (方式状语从句)

他们完全忽略了这些事实,就仿佛它们从来不存在似的。

It was more expensive **than** I thought. (比较状语从句)

它比我想的要贵。

### 「语法闯关」

#### I. 用适当的状语从句的连接词填空

- Tom is so independent that he never asks his parents' opinion unless he wants their support.
- On our way to the house, it was raining so hard that we couldn't help wondering how long it would take to get there.
- If we don't stop climate change, many animals and plants in the world will be gone.
- Let's not pick these peaches until this weekend so

that they get sweet enough to be eaten.

- Unless you can sleep well, you will lose the ability to focus, plan and stay motivated after one or two nights.
- Although/Though/While scientists have learned a lot about the universe, there is much we still don't know.
- If you don't understand something, you may research, study, and talk to other people until you figure it out.
- It will be three years before they meet again.

#### II. 完成句子

- Now that/Since you've got a chance, you might as well make full use of it.  
既然你得到了机会,不妨充分利用它。
- Every/Each time I pass the school, I think of my first English teacher.  
每当我经过学校,我就会想起我的第一位英语老师。
- As long as you don't lose heart, you will succeed.  
只要你不灰心,你就会成功。
- Don't trust him, no matter what/whatever he says.  
无论他说什么,不要相信他。
- If it is convenient for you, I'll meet you at the entrance of the music hall at 7:00 tomorrow evening.  
如果你方便的话,明天晚上7点我会在音乐厅的门口与你会面。
- It was such an exciting activity that we all enjoyed ourselves very much.  
这是一项如此激动人心的活动,以至于我们都玩得非常愉快。
- They walked about 30 miles before they saw a village.  
他们走了大约30英里才看见一个村庄。
- Because my spoken English is fluent, I think I am suitable for this job.  
因为我的英语口语很流利,我认为我适合这项工作。
- It won't be long before you realise your mistakes.  
不久你就会意识到你的错误。
- I was about to go out when it suddenly rained heavily.  
我正要出去,这时突然下起了大雨。

## 课后素养评价(十三)

### I. 词语填空

to sum up; be accessible to; scholar; find out; department; pay attention to; lead to; institute; what's more; have... in common

1. It is fun, self-satisfying, and what's more, it can set a good example.
2. He is a serious scholar—a truly learned man.
3. If only he had paid more attention to what I said.
4. Too much work and too little rest often leads to illness.
5. He volunteered to serve as the manager of our department store.
6. The teacher was so angry that he decided to find out who broke the window.
7. Our institute has ordered a great many instruments from the company.
8. To sum up, he is a person with many outstanding qualities.
9. He and she have only one thing in common with each other; both enjoy reading.
10. Medicine should not be kept where it is accessible to children.

### II. 单句语法填空

1. Peter was the second athlete to finish (finish) the race.
2. The man can help us because he is an expert in fashion design.
3. John thinks it won't be long before he is ready for his new job.
4. As a whole, your design is of great value to our company.
5. In short, being a good leader needs courage and practice.
6. To tell the truth, this film is not as interesting as I expected.
7. If you work hard, your dream will come true sooner or later.
8. We have lived in this city since we moved here in 1990.

9. Either he didn't speak clearly or I didn't hear well.

10. While waiting (wait) for the bus, he shared the weather broadcast with me.

### III. 阅读理解

Handwritten Chinese characters can be beautiful. I still remember looking at Chinese and not understanding anything it said and yet feeling a strong attraction. In fact, some students start learning Chinese because of the characters. After having studied Chinese for a while, I realised that handwriting in Chinese takes a very long time to learn.

Living as we do in a digital era with smartphones and computers, most students sooner or later ask themselves this question: Is it really necessary to learn how to write by hand in Chinese? When using smartphones or computers, we can use phonetic input systems, which choose the characters we want for us as long as we can remember how they are pronounced. Since we enter different characters, we seldom need to be able to recognise the difference between individual characters in detail; the computer makes the right choices for us. Do we really need to write Chinese by hand at all?

I think most people agree that you should learn to write at least some characters at some point as a student of Chinese, although not necessarily straight away and not necessarily all the characters that you can say. But unless you don't care about written language at all, you should learn the basics of handwriting. Without it, it will be very hard to understand characters. You don't need to be a calligraphy master, but you do need basic handwriting skills to do this. Simply looking at things is, as usual, a bad way of learning.

I think learning the most common 500 characters or so is a good idea for all students. If you actually want to write by hand, extend that to 1,000. Then learn to handwrite characters outside of the 1,000 most common on a need-to-know basis.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。我们生活在一个拥有智能手机和电脑的数字时代,学习汉字书写真的有必要吗?作者给出了自己的答案。

1. What does the author think of Chinese characters?

- A. They are less communicative than English words.
- B. They attract some foreigners to learn Chinese.
- C. They show the greatness of Chinese culture.
- D. They are not really that difficult.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“In fact, some students start learning Chinese because of the characters.”可知,汉字吸引一些外国人学习中文。故选 B。

2. What can we infer about characters in Paragraph 2?

- A. Characters are very difficult for foreigners to learn.
- B. People believe learning to write characters is important.
- C. Characters may disappear with the development of society.
- D. People doubt the necessity of learning to write characters.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Living as we do in a digital era with smartphones and computers, most students sooner or later ask themselves this question: Is it really necessary to learn how to write by hand in Chinese?”可知,人们怀疑学习汉字书写的必要性。故选 D。

3. What does the underlined word “this” in Paragraph 3 refer to?

- A. Understanding characters.
- B. Being a calligraphy master.
- C. Keeping a good learning habit.
- D. Learning basic handwriting skills.

A 代词指代题。根据第三段中的“But unless

you don't care about written language at all, you should learn the basics of handwriting. Without it, it will be very hard to understand characters. You don't need to be a calligraphy master, but you do need basic handwriting skills to do this.”可知,画线词 this 指代上文中的“理解汉字”。故选 A。

4. What is the author's attitude to learning to write characters in the digital age?

- A. Worried.
- B. Uncaring.
- C. Supportive.
- D. Surprised.

C 观点态度题。根据第三段中的“But unless you don't care about written language at all, you should learn the basics of handwriting. Without it, it will be very hard to understand characters.”可知,作者认为学习汉字书写是有必要的,由此可知,作者持支持态度。故选 C。

### 【微点写作】介绍文化遗迹

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 虽然不是很大,但这些花园的设计是独一无二的,融合了自然、建筑和绘画的美丽。

Though not very large, these gardens are unique in their designs, bringing together the beauty of nature, architecture and painting.

2. 它建于一千多年前,是历史文化遗产,也是这座城市的象征。

Built more than a thousand years ago, it is a historic cultural heritage and also a symbol of the city.

3. 被誉为东方威尼斯的苏州是位于江苏省东南部的一座迷人的城市。

Suzhou, regarded as the Venice of the East, is a charming city located in the southeast of Jiangsu Province.

# Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 通过访谈内容，了解中国文学在国外传播的大致情况，同时对具有世界影响力的中国古典文学作品和现代文学作品与作家做更多的了解与研读，能将中国文学作品与作家介绍给世界；
- 思考、总结文化交流的方式方法，理解文化交流的重要意义。

## 自主式预习

### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

- historian *n.* 历史学家
- kingdom *n.* 王国
- enormous *adj.* 巨大的, 庞大的
- genius *n.* 天才, 天赋
- prior *adj.* 先前的; 较早的
- prior to 在……之前, 先于……
- be exposed to 暴露在……, 接触到……
- on the whole 总的来说, 总体而言
- keep a close eye on 密切关注; 留神, 留意
- be familiar to 为……所熟悉
- in addition 此外, 而且

12. care about 在乎, 在意

#### (二)阅读词汇

- romance *n.* 传奇故事
- stratagem *n.* 计谋, 策略
- temple *n.* 庙宇, 寺院
- tune *n.* 曲调, 旋律
- Sinologist *n.* 汉学家
- shepherd *n.* 牧羊人
- chamber *n.* 房间
- I Ching* 《易经》
- The Analects* 《论语》
- strike a chord 触动心弦, 在(某人)心中引起共鸣
- now that 既然
- go about 着手做; 处理

### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1	How the four Sinologists and <b>1. translators</b> got interested in Chinese literature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Petko loved Chinese kung fu and <b>2. music</b> because of the movie <i>The Shaolin Temple</i>.</li> <li>Annelous was interested in Chinese history and culture in high school and chose Chinese Studies as his academic <b>3. major</b> at university.</li> <li><i>Shi Ji</i> by Sima Qian had a great effect on Joachim due to his <b>4. passion</b> for Chinese literature.</li> <li>Mai gradually fell in love with Chinese literature when he worked as a translator.</li> </ul>

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2	How they select works to translate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Petko chooses <b>5. classical</b> Chinese literature, particularly works from the Ming and Qing dynasties.</li> <li>• Annelous chooses to translate Chinese literature works based on the opinions of <b>6. respected</b> Sinologists and which Chinese works have sold well in other countries.</li> <li>• Joachim just goes with what he likes and what he is interested in.</li> <li>• What interests Mai most is the <b>7. work</b> itself.</li> </ul>
Part 3	The popular works by Chinese writers in their countries.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Thirty-six Stratagems</i> is a <b>8. best-seller</b> in Bulgaria.</li> <li>• Each year more works by Chinese writers are published in the Netherlands.</li> <li>• The novels of Mo Yan and Yu Hua sell quite well in France. Literature has a lot of significance to the French, and Chinese literary works tend to be <b>9. highly thought of</b>.</li> <li>• Egyptians like the works of Shi Tiesheng and Zhou Guoping because they reflect <b>10. human nature</b> and experience.</li> </ul>

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What was Joachim's first encounter with Chinese classical literature?
  - Dream of the Red Chamber*.
  - The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*.
  - Records of the Grand Historian*.
  - Thirty-six Stratagems*.
- Where are most of the translated works of literature in Egypt from?
  - China.
  - English-speaking countries.
  - France.
  - Bulgaria.
- What does Petko plan to translate?
  - The Shaolin Temple*.
  - Song of the Shepherd*.
  - Dream of the Red Chamber*.
  - The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*.
- Why does Mai pay attention to works online by new authors?
  - They can translate classical Chinese literature.
  - They are good at studying classical Chinese literature.
  - They have some good ideas.

D. They are good at writing.

答案:1~4 CBDC

### II. 课文语法填空

Four Sinologists and **1. translators** (translate) share their experience of Chinese literature. Petko is from Bulgaria. He fell in love **2. with** China because of the movie *The Shaolin Temple*. He **3. particularly** (particular) likes classical Chinese works from the Ming and Qing dynasties. He says *Thirty-six Stratagems* is very popular in Bulgaria. Annelous comes from the Netherlands. He became interested in Chinese history and culture in high school and chose Chinese Studies as his **4. academic** (academy) major at university. He has been and is absorbed in **5. translating** (translate) Chinese writings into Dutch. Chinese works enjoy great **6. popularity** (popular) in the Netherlands. Joachim is a Frenchman. Sima Qian's writing had **7. a** profound influence on him. He **8. has translated** (translate) several works by Mo Yan. The French think highly of Chinese literary works. Mai, an Egyptian, showed passion for Chinese literature **9. when** working as a translator. He has translated some Chinese works and pays close attention to the

works by new and young **10. authors** (author). Egyptians like the works of Shi Tiesheng and Zhou Guoping because they reflect human nature and experience.

### III. 阅读升华

1. Why did Annelous choose Chinese Studies as his

academic major at university?

Because he was interested in Chinese history and culture in high school.

2. Why are more and more foreigners learning Chinese?

略

## 课后素养评价(十四)

### I. 单词拼写

- After the fire, nothing remained of the magnificent buildings of the temple (寺院).
- Hearing the tune (曲调) again sent waves of longing through her.
- The caves can be visited only by prior (事先的) arrangement.
- My brother is a historian (历史学家) and his major is the history of Germany.
- The sight of such an enormous (庞大的) crowd astonished us.
- Chaplin was not just a genius (天才), but he was also among the most influential figures in film history.
- There was a baker who also lived in this kingdom (王国).
- He still finds time for romance (浪漫) by cooking candlelit dinners for his girlfriend.

### II. 短语填空

break... into...; quite a few; be familiar to; keep a close eye on; tend to; translate... into...; prior to; be exposed to; think highly of; have an effect on; go for; on the whole; work on

- We are scheduled to work on the project in May.
- According to the study, people tend to need less sleep as they get older.
- He was thought highly of for his contribution to the company.
- Being exposed to sunlight too long does harm to the skin.
- The serious drought had an effect on the crops at that time, reducing the production greatly.
- The same goes for numerous big cities around the world.
- The policeman kept a close eye on the crowd

while searching for the criminal.

- The place is familiar to me because I have been there many times.
- Prior to the Sui and Tang dynasties, Chinese poems were basically written for singing.
- On the whole, he did a good job though he made some minor errors.
- Paper can be broken into small pieces and made into new paper.
- Quite a few translators have tried to translate the famous novel into English.

### III. 完成句子

- Their goal is to find out what caused the fire. 他们的目标是查明什么引起了火灾。
- The little boy impressed me with his big, bright eyes the first time I saw him. 第一次见到这个小男孩时,他明亮的大眼睛就给我留下了深刻的印象。
- Now that you have accepted the job, you should go about it right now. 你既然接受了这项工作,就要立刻着手做。
- What I want to know is whether he cares about her physical appearance. 我想知道的是他是否在乎她的外表。
- The past few decades have witnessed the rapid development of our country. 过去的几十年见证了我国国家的快速发展。

### IV. 七选五

Digital technology is the major engine of modern life. It provides us with our means of communication, entertainment, and social lives. The last few years especially have shown how important digital technology is to our lives, as the pandemic made us to move online. Everywhere, there are many apps that claim to help people find

happiness; heart-rate trackers, exercise apps, sleep apps, etc. 1

Actually, there are three things you can do to ensure that your digital technology tools are helpful. Firstly, be certain that the app is designed in such a way that it serves your purposes and not the company's purpose. Some apps will overwhelm you with notifications (通知) and data. 2 After all, you never want to feel bad about an app which always tells you what you should or should not do.

3 Before downloading an app that claims to make your life better, do a quick web search and read up on the science behind it. Sometimes app designers start with the best intentions, but then get too invested in the engineering and details and lose sight of the science that they are basing themselves on.

Finally, make sure you try out the app before you use it. 4 Read the fine print and inform yourself regarding return policies and trial periods when you download a new app. Don't use an app that isn't right for you.

Digital technology may help, but you still need to go outside to take a walk, and do something to make someone else happy. 5 Use the tools that are helpful to you, digital or otherwise, and find your way.

- A. Not every app is right for every person.
- B. You may find these notifications useful.
- C. How can we know which ones are truly helpful?

- D. That could be more harmful to your mental health than helpful.
- E. Remember, the pursuit of happiness doesn't have only one path.
- F. In addition, make sure that the science behind the app is good science.
- G. Can we rely on digital technology around us to become happier people?

答案: 1~5 C D F A E

### 【微点写作】介绍文化遗迹

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 成都历史悠久,文化底蕴深厚,拥有杜甫草堂、武侯祠、都江堰水利工程等众多著名历史景点。

With its long history and rich culture,  
Chengdu has many famous historic spots,  
such as Du Fu Thatched Cottage, Wuhou Memorial Temple, the Dujiangyan Irrigation System and so on.

2. 紫禁城位于北京市中心,是世界上最大的宫殿建筑群,吸引了来自国内外的游客。

Located at the very heart of Beijing, the  
Forbidden City is the world's largest palace  
complex which attracts tourists from home and abroad.

3. 无论谁去伦敦观光,大本钟都是首选。

Whoever goes to London for sightseeing,  
Big Ben is the first choice.

## Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 在理解课文的基础上感悟课文主题,从而加深对本单元主题意义的认识,增强对民族历史和文化的自豪感,坚定文化自信,并积极传播中国文化;
3. 通过完成阅读任务,学习如何介绍一个城市的文化亮点,能运用所学内容介绍中国的一个地方。

### 自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. I didn't go into the **temple**—I only saw it from the outside. 庙宇

2. I didn't know the title but I recognised the **tune**. 曲调

3. She will be unable to attend the party because of a



**prior** engagement.

先前的

4. This is the mark of her real **genius** as a designer.

天赋

5. I heard that in the United **Kingdom**, people speak quite differently depending on what part they come from.

王国

## II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>translator</u> <i>n.</i> 翻译家, 译者	<u>translate</u> <i>v.</i> 翻译
	<u>translation</u> <i>n.</i> 翻译; 译文
<u>historian</u> <i>n.</i> 历史学家	<u>history</u> <i>n.</i> 历史
	<u>historic</u> <i>adj.</i> 历史上著名的
	<u>historical</u> <i>adj.</i> 有关历史的; 历史学的
<u>romance</u> <i>n.</i> 传奇故事	<u>romantic</u> <i>adj.</i> 浪漫的; 充满传奇色彩的
<u>inspiring</u> <i>adj.</i> 鼓舞人心的; 启发灵感的	<u>inspire</u> <i>v.</i> 鼓舞, 激励
	<u>inspired</u> <i>adj.</i> 卓越的
	<u>inspiration</u> <i>n.</i> 激励; 灵感
<u>amazed</u> <i>adj.</i> 惊讶的, 吃惊的	<u>amazing</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人惊讶的, 令人吃惊的
	<u>amaze</u> <i>v.</i> 使惊奇, 使惊愕
	<u>amazement</u> <i>n.</i> 惊讶, 吃惊
<u>expose</u> <i>vt.</i> 使接触, 使体验; 揭露; 暴露	<u>exposed</u> <i>adj.</i> 无遮蔽的, 不遮风挡雨的, 无保护的; 易受攻击的
	<u>exposure</u> <i>n.</i> 接触, 暴露; 揭露
<u>tend</u> <i>v.</i> 趋于, 趋向; 照顾, 照料	<u>tendency</u> <i>n.</i> 趋势; 倾向

## III. 补全短语

1. prior to 在……之前, 先于……
2. be exposed to 暴露在……, 接触到……
3. have an effect on 对……有影响
4. work on 致力于, 忙于
5. do research into 做……的研究
6. think highly of 高度评价
7. on the whole 总的来说, 总体而言
8. keep a close eye on 密切关注; 留神, 留意

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 无生命名词作主语  
Each year sees more works by Chinese writers published in the Netherlands, and they are well-received.  
 每年都有更多的中国作家的作品在荷兰出版, 并且它们很受欢迎。
2. 句型公式: the first time 作连词用, 引导时间状语从句  
 I fell in love with *Dream of the Red Chamber* the first time I read it ...  
 我第一次读到《红楼梦》时就爱上了它……
3. 句型公式: 不定式作表语  
 Now that this dream has come true, my next goal is to translate *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*.  
 既然这个梦想已经实现了, 那么我的下一个目标是翻译《三国演义》。
4. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句  
 I just go with what I like and what I am interested in.  
 我只处理我喜欢和感兴趣的东西。
5. 句型公式: what 引导主语从句  
What interests me most is the work itself.  
 最令我感兴趣的是作品本身。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. prior *adj.* 先前的; 较早的

(教材原文) **Prior** to that, the only great historical works I had been exposed to were Homer's epic poems.

在那之前, 我唯一接触过的历史巨作是《荷马史诗》。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Please give us **prior** notice if you need an evening meal.

需用晚餐者, 请预先通知我们。

It happened **prior to** his arrival.

这件事发生在他到达之前。

Our first **priority** is to improve standards.  
我们的头等大事是提高水平。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) prior _____ ... 在……之前, 先于…… (2) priority <i>n.</i> 优先事项, 首要事情
探究结论	(1) to

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- It is important to enrich the soil prior to planting.
- The government's priority (prior) is to build more power plants.
- One of his priorities (prior) is to develop education.

(2) 完成句子

Just phone in your order three or more days prior to departure.

在出发的三天之前打电话预订即可。

### 2. expose *v.* 使接触, 使体验; 揭露; 暴露

(教材原文) Prior to that, the only great historical works I had been **exposed** to were Homer's epic poems.

在那之前, 我唯一接触过的历史巨作是《荷马史诗》。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Don't **expose** your skin **to** sunlight directly, or you will get sunburnt.

不要把你的皮肤直接暴晒于阳光下, 否则你会被晒伤。

The report revealed that workers had **been exposed to** high levels of radiation.

这份报告披露了工人们受到了高强度的辐射。

**Exposure to lead** is known to damage the brains of young children.

众所周知, 接触铅会损害幼儿的大脑。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) expose sb./sth. _____ ... 使某人/某物接触/暴露于…… be _____ to 暴露, 接触 (2) _____ <i>n.</i> 接触, 暴露; 揭露
------	--

续表

探究结论	(1) to; exposed (2) exposure
------	------------------------------

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- They are exposed (expose) to various climates and weather conditions.
- Long exposure (expose) to noisy surroundings may result in some physical and mental problems.
- He smiled suddenly, exposing (expose) a set of amazingly white teeth.

(2) 句型转换

If you are exposed to this material, you will be harmed.

→ Exposing yourself to this material, you will be harmed.

→ Exposed to this material, you will be harmed.

### 3. tend *v.* 趋于, 趋向; 照顾, 照料

(教材原文) Literature has a lot of significance to the French, and Chinese literary works **tend** to be highly thought of.

文学对法国人来说意义重大, 中国的文学作品往往受到高度评价。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

When I'm tired, I **tend to make** mistakes.

当我累了时, 我往往会出错。

Doctors and nurses **tended the injured**.

医生和护士照顾受伤者。

I **have a tendency to talk** too much when I'm nervous.

我紧张时总爱唠叨。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) tend _____ sth. 倾向于做某事; 往往会做某事 tend (to) sb. 照顾某人 (2) tendency <i>n.</i> 趋势; 倾向; 偏好 have a tendency to do sth. 有做某事的倾向
探究结论	(1) to do

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Men tend to put (put) on weight in middle age.② These plants have a tendency (tend) to grow in the rural areas.

(2) 完成句子

People tend to work hard at this stage of life.

在人生这个阶段,人们往往会努力工作。

**4. 无生名词作主语**(教材原文) **Each year sees** more works by Chinese writers published in the Netherlands, and they are well-received.

每年都有更多的中国作家的作品在荷兰出版,并且它们很受欢迎。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法**The past decade has witnessed** an almost explosive growth of medical biology.

过去的十年见证了医学生物学近乎爆炸式的发展。

**This stadium has seen** many exciting football matches.

在这个体育馆举办过很多精彩的足球赛。

**A deep sorrow seized** the man suddenly.

那名男子顿觉十分悲伤。

When he met his girlfriend for the first time, **words failed** him.

当他第一次见到他的女朋友时,他说不出话来。

**The sight** of the orphan always **reminds** me of her parents.

一见到这个孤儿,我就想起了她的父母。

**Investigation led** us to the foregoing conclusion.  
经过调查,我们得出了上述结论。**Losing his fortune drove** him mad.

他由于失去财产而发疯。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>无生名词作主语是一种拟人的手法,可以使语言更加生动。具体可分为以下几类:</p> <p>(1) 以 _____、_____、自然现象等名词作主语,常用 _____, _____, find 等动词作谓语动词。</p> <p>(2) 表示生理、_____ 状态的名词或表示某种遭遇的名词(如 word, anger, faith, idea, courage, desire 等)作主语,用 fail, desert, escape, seize 等动词作谓语动词。</p> <p>(3) 具有 _____ 或 _____ 意义的名词作主语,常用含有使役意义的动词(如 remind, make, let, drive, leave, lead 等)作谓语动词。</p>
探究结论	<p>(1) 时间;地点;witness;see</p> <p>(2) 心理 (3) 行为;动作</p>

**三评** 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① As is known to all, Rome witnessed/witnesses (witness) many great historic events.② When he had to speak to her, his courage suddenly escaped (escape) him.

(2) 完成句子

The news that he will go abroad for further study makes his mother excited.

他要出国深造的消息让他的母亲兴奋不已。

**写作探究****介绍文化遗迹****一、写作指导**

介绍文化遗迹一般属于说明文,写这类文章时,要注意下列问题:

1. 介绍文化遗迹,如文化遗迹的历史、地理位置、面积、特点、重要意义等,要客观、科学,使用的语言要简单明了、准确、生动。
2. 写作时要抓住文化遗迹的主要特征,注意安排好说明顺序,选择合适的说明方法,描写要详略得当、重点突出。
3. 由于是对客观事物的描写,通常用一般现在时。
4. 要注意行文的连贯性,恰当地使用过渡词。

5. 注意表达形式的多样性,比如在用词方面可用 stand, lie, stay, remain, keep, grow 代替 be 动词。

**二、典题示例**

党的二十大报告强调,增强中华文明传播力影响力,深化文明交流互鉴,推动中华文化更好走向世界。假设你是李华,你的笔友 Jason 对中国文化非常感兴趣,打算来中国参观一些世界文化遗迹。请你根据所给信息,用英语给 Jason 写一封电子邮件,介绍洛阳的龙门石窟。

名称	龙门石窟(Longmen Grottoes)
地理位置	位于河南省洛阳市南郊的伊河两岸。
开凿时间	从北魏至唐,历经 400 多年。
艺术价值	1. 是中国古代雕刻艺术的重要组成部分,现存有窟龕(niche) 2 300 多个,造像(statue)近 11 万尊; 2. 反映了中国古代政治、经济、宗教、文化等许多领域的巨大变化。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

3. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear Jason,

I am glad to know you are coming to visit China. I am writing to recommend one of the World Heritage Sites in China—Longmen Grottoes. \_\_\_\_\_

Yours,

Li Hua

### 三、审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 点明写信的目的 2. 介绍龙门石窟的情况:地理位置、开凿时间和艺术价值 3. 希望和建议

### 四、遣词造句

#### (一)核心词汇

① be located (in/on/at) 位于

② reflect great changes 反映巨大变化

③ enjoy oneself 玩得高兴

#### (二)完成句子

① The Longmen Grottoes are located (位于) on the banks of the Yi River, south of Luoyang City in Henan Province.

② The carving project began in the Northern Wei Dynasty and lasted for more than 400 years (历经 400 多年) until the Tang Dynasty.

③ The grottoes are an important part (是重要的一

部分) of ancient Chinese sculpture, and reflect great changes in ancient Chinese politics, economy, religion, culture and so on.

④ I do hope (真的希望) you'll come to visit the Longmen Grottoes and enjoy yourself.

#### (三)句式升级

① 用非限制性定语从句改写(二)中句②

The carving project began in the Northern Wei Dynasty, which lasted for more than 400 years until the Tang Dynasty.

② 用现在分词作状语改写(二)中句③

The grottoes are an important part of ancient Chinese sculpture, reflecting great changes in ancient Chinese politics, economy, religion, culture and so on.

#### (四)连句成篇

Dear Jason,

I am glad to know you are coming to visit China. I am writing to recommend one of the World Heritage Sites in China—Longmen Grottoes.

The Longmen Grottoes are located on the banks of the Yi River, south of Luoyang City in Henan Province. The carving project began in the Northern Wei Dynasty, which lasted for more than 400 years until the Tang Dynasty. At present there are over 2,300 niches, and nearly 110,000 statues. The grottoes are an important part of ancient Chinese sculpture, reflecting great changes in ancient Chinese politics, economy, religion, culture and so on.

I do hope you'll come to visit the Longmen Grottoes and enjoy yourself.

Yours,

Li Hua

### 五、学以致用

假如你是李华,你有一位英国网友 Tom,他给你发来邮件,想了解故宫的一些情况。请根据下面的要点用英语给他回一封电子邮件。要点:

1. 故宫(the Palace Museum),又叫紫禁城(the Forbidden City);

2. 它于 1406 年开始修建,1420 年建成;

3. 现在,故宫每周二免费向中国的中小學生团体开放;

4. 故宫存放着有上千年历史的文化珍宝(cultural treasures);

5. 请他亲自来看一看。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Tom,

It is nice to receive your email. Now I'd like to tell you something about the Palace Museum.

The Palace Museum, also called the Forbidden City, was completed in 1420 and it took people nearly 14 years to build it. As one of the largest museums in China, the Palace Museum holds

cultural treasures from the past thousands of years of Chinese history. Primary and middle school students from all over China now can visit it in groups free of charge every Tuesday.

I do hope you can come to China and take a look at this museum with your own eyes.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 课后素养评价(十五)

### I. 单句语法填空

- Workers at the nuclear plant were exposed to high doses of radiation.
- The small city is famous for many ancient temples (temple).
- The amount of paperwork involved is enormous (enormously).
- We want to recreate the romance (romantic) and excitement that used to be part of rail journey.
- As far as he is concerned, the duty to protect his sister is prior to all others.
- He gained valuable experience while working on the project.
- On the whole, I'm in favour of the proposal (提议).
- All his works are highly thought of by the readers.
- The rest of the agency was broken into several parts.
- It tends to get very cold here in winter.

### II. 完成句子

- In addition, their main aim is to keep a close eye on what these animals eat.  
此外,他们的主要目标是密切关注这些动物吃的东西。
- We considered the scholar a genius the first time we met him.  
我们第一次见到这个奖学金获得者时,我们认为他是一个天才。
- Recent years have seen/witnessed the great changes that have taken place in China.  
近年来中国发生了很大变化。
- What the old writer cares about is his health.  
那位老作家关心的是他的健康。

- The books written by him sell quite well in China.  
他写的书在中国很畅销。

### III. 语法填空

The solar term culture was created thousands of years ago. It is still useful today **1. to guide** (guide) people's lives through special foods, gardening and even healthy living tips that correspond with each solar term. Grain Buds (小满), the **2. eighth** (eight) solar term of a year, begins **3. on** May 21st this year and lasts 2 weeks. It marks the time **4. when** summer gradually becomes the dominant season, and the grains are about to ripen.

During the Grain Buds period, because of the great increase in rainfall, rivers are full of water, **5. giving** (give) rise to great tasty fish and shrimps. Grain Buds is also a season for eating the herb of the common sow thistle. It tastes a little bitter and has the function of purifying the body. It can **6. be made** (make) into different types of dishes.

It is a good period of the quick **7. growth** (grow) of flowers but also a season when plant diseases and pests are severer, which makes caring for your garden even **8. more critical** (critical).

High temperatures and humidity are common during the Grain Buds period. **9. The** increase in temperature over this season may give rise to some skin diseases, so it is also important to pay attention to the health tips **10. offered** (offer) by doctors.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是高中生李华,你的美国笔友 David 热爱中国传统文化,最近打算来中国工作和生活一段时间,但是不确定应该去往哪个城市,写信向你咨询。请你给他写一封回信,内容包括:

1. 你推荐的城市;
2. 推荐的理由(不少于两条);
3. 美好祝愿。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

[参考范文]

Dear David,

I am so pleased to learn that you are to spend some time in China.

I recommend you stay in Beijing, the capital and cultural centre of China. The city enjoys a high reputation for its abundance of ancient architecture, which represents the traditional local lifestyles. And there are also plenty of museums where precious relics of historical interest are waiting for you to explore. Besides, the exceptional Peking Opera performances there are also what you can't miss.

I wish you a very happy and meaningful time in China!

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

After a very long wait, Mother and I were relieved to see our dog delivered 6 puppies! The sixth was the smallest and black and white. I named her "Precious". I picked her up and laid her on top of the large pile of puppies, who were trying to suckle (吃奶). Mother dog immediately pushed Precious away from the rest of the group. She refused to recognise Precious as a member of her family.

"Something's wrong," said Mother.

I reached over and picked up Precious. My heart sank when I saw the little puppy had a cleft lip (唇裂) and could not close her little mouth. Precious would die because she could not suckle.

I purchased a syringe (注射器) and fed Precious by holding it. I did this every day and night, for more than ten days. The little puppy survived and learned to eat on her own as long as it was soft food.

Vacation was over and my new school life would begin. So I placed an ad for the puppies on the Internet. Within several days, all had been picked up by their new families, except Precious. I decided to

keep her and give her an operation if my parents saved enough money.

That night at around seven thirty, Mother and I were eating supper when we heard a knock on the front door. When I opened the door, there was a lady with her son standing behind. After knowing the purpose of their coming, I explained to them there were no puppies left.

Just at that moment, Precious left in the bedroom began to bark.

"My puppy! My puppy!" yelled the little boy as he ran out from behind his mother.

I just about fell over when I saw that the small child also had a cleft lip.

The boy ran past me as fast as he could, down the hall to where the puppy was still barking. Holding the puppy in his arms, he looked up at his mother and said, "Look, Mummy. They found homes for all the puppies except the pretty one, and it looks just like me!"

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*The boy bent there pressing his cheek against the small puppy. Seemingly understanding what was happening, "the pretty one" licked the boy's face again and again. I even saw the bright smile on his face. "They are the perfect pair!" I thought. Moved by the warm scene deeply, I decided to give them the puppy for free when the mother inquired the price, though I was so devoted to my puppy! When they said goodbye with the puppy to me, I hoped the pair could have a warm and happy life.*

*One year later, I was so surprised when that boy with Precious came to me. Both of their cleft lips disappeared! Precious rushed to me the moment she saw me. After hearing their story, I understood he came to me specially to express his gratitude. "The pretty one" really gave him happiness and lifted his spirits in the hard time. "We are in one!" the boy said, holding the puppy tightly. Any worries I'd had about the puppy's future were gone. Now the image of the little boy and his matching puppy still stays with me. My Precious has found her precious companion.*

## 读后续写技能养成 || 精彩结尾之对话结尾

### 「技能概述」

1. 对话结尾:指以单人或双人对话结尾的方式。它能反映人物心理、揭示谜底等。
2. 续写技巧:针对文中故事的具体内容,用切合主题、紧扣主线的简短对话来写,有时可以用人物动作和心理描写加以辅助。

### 「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考I卷续写范文)... With the encouragement ringing in the air, David tried again and again with his unique running style. A wave of cheer and applause burst out when David succeeded in crossing the finishing line. He greeted me with his usual big toothy smile and said confidently, "It was an amazing experience!"

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

本例以大卫的话为结尾。大卫在参加完比赛后,又露出他平日里灿烂的露齿笑容并且充满自信地说:“真是令人惊奇的体验!”该结尾充分体现了大卫由不自信到自信的转变,由纤弱到强大的转变。

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. utter *v.* 说
2. promise *v.* 答应
3. apologise *v.* 道歉
4. voice *v.* 表达,吐露(感情或意见)
5. sigh *v.* 叹息
6. yell *v.* 喊
7. mumble *v.* 嘟哝
8. stammer *v.* 结结巴巴地说
9. swallow *v.* 吞咽
10. repeat *v.* 重复
11. beg *v.* 乞求
12. reply *v.* 回复
13. add *v.* 补充
14. demand *v.* 要求
15. gasp *v.* 气喘吁吁地说
16. remember *v.* 回想起

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. Nancy gave him a big grin, "Our snowmen are

good neighbours!"

南希对他咧嘴一笑,“我们的雪人是好邻居!”

2. When I came to myself in hospital, I saw Kay crying. She said, "You made it, dear."

当我在医院苏醒过来时,我看见凯在哭。她说:“你做到了,亲爱的。”

3. Eason gave Zoe a thumbs-up, adding, "Sometimes there are nice things hiding where you don't expect them."

伊森对佐伊竖起大拇指,并补充道:“有时候,美好的东西就藏在你意想不到的地方。”

4. Mother, who had witnessed the scene from the window, walked up to Kareem and patted his shoulder gently, "Son! I'm really proud of you." 母亲从窗口看到了这一幕,她走到卡里姆身边,温柔地拍着他的肩膀说:“儿子!我真的为你感到骄傲。”

5. On seeing her mother crying about their generosity, Rina burst into tears as well and said, "I'll carry that memory with me forever." 当看到母亲为他们的慷慨而哭泣时,丽娜也哭了起来,说道:“我会永远记住这个回忆。”

### 「技能达标」

#### I. 完成句子

1. Eventually, I shouted out the sentence from my heart, "I did it!" 最后,我从心里喊出了那句话:“我做到了!”
2. He put my repaired shirt in a bag and patted me on the shoulder as I started to leave. "Follow your dreams," he said. 他把我修补好的衬衫放进一个包里,在我准备离开时拍了拍我的肩膀。“追随你的梦想,”他说。
3. She apologised to Daniel sincerely and hugged him in her arms, saying, "You are really growing up into a young man." 她真诚地向丹尼尔道歉,并把他抱在怀里,说:“你真的长大了,变成一个年轻人了。”

#### II. 用对话结尾的技巧完成语段

[前文故事梗概:一位80岁的老父亲在向45岁的儿子问了四次同样的问题(这是什么?)后,儿子变得很不耐烦,于是老父亲拿出以前的日记本让儿子看。日

记中记述了父亲耐心回答 3 岁儿子 23 次同样的问题的往事。]

*Feeling ashamed, the son got down on his knees before his father.* He made an apology to his father, begging his father to forgive him for his bad behaviour. He said aloud, (设计儿子对父亲说的话)

"I promise to make you happy forever, Dad. It is you who have cared for me ever since I was a little child, showering your selfless affection on me. You worked hard to make money so that I could afford to go to university. I will take care of you in the best way."

## 第三单元质量评估

(时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

### I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

East China's port city of Quanzhou was added to UNESCO World Heritage (遗产) List on July 25, 2021, bringing the total number of the country's UNESCO World Heritage sites to 56. The following are four of them, which fall into two categories—three cultural sites and one natural site.

#### \* Classical Gardens of Suzhou

Classical Chinese garden design, which seeks to recreate natural scenery, is nowhere better shown than in the nine gardens in Suzhou. They are generally acknowledged to be masterpieces of the style. Dating from the 11th century to the 19th century, the gardens reflect the importance of natural beauty in Chinese culture in their design.

#### \* Hubei Shennongjia

This natural site protects the largest primary forests remaining in Central China and provides living space for many rare animals. It is one of three centres of biodiversity in China. The site is important in the history of botanical research and was the object of international plant collecting trips in the 19th and 20th centuries.

#### \* Ancient City of Pingyao

Founded in the 14th century, Pingyao is a well-preserved example of a traditional Han Chinese city. It shows the changes of architectural styles and town planning in China over five centuries. Of special interest are the grand buildings associated

with banking, for which Pingyao was the major centre for the whole of China in the 19th and early 20th centuries.

#### \* Ancient Villages in Southern Anhui—Xidi and Hongcun

The two traditional villages of Xidi and Hongcun preserve the appearance of non-urban settlements of a type that largely disappeared or was transformed during the last century. Their street plan, their architecture and decoration, and the harmony of houses with water systems are unique surviving examples.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。在中国由联合国教科文组织列入的世界遗产总数达到 56 处。文章主要介绍了其中的四项:三项文化遗产和一项自然遗产。

1. What is stressed in the design of Classical Gardens of Suzhou?

- A. The tradition.
- B. The natural beauty.
- C. The biodiversity.
- D. The Chinese history.

B 细节理解题。根据 \* Classical Gardens of Suzhou 部分中的 "Classical Chinese garden design, which seeks to recreate natural scenery, is nowhere better shown than in the nine gardens in Suzhou." 可知,苏州古典园林的设计力求展现自然风光,即强调自然美。故选 B。

2. In what way is Hubei Shennongjia different from the other three?

- A. It belongs to natural sites.
- B. It has the largest forest in China.



- C. It attracts objective collectors.  
D. It owns a biodiversity research centre.

A 细节理解题。根据\* **Hubei Shennongjia** 部分中的“*This natural site protects the largest primary forests remaining in Central China and provides living space for many rare animals.*”可知,湖北神农架与其他三项的不同之处在于它是一项自然遗产。故选 A。

3. Which place was the major financial centre of China in the 19th century?

- A. Quanzhou.                      B. Suzhou.  
C. Pingyao.                        D. Xidi.

C 细节理解题。根据\* **Ancient City of Pingyao** 部分中的“*Of special interest are the grand buildings associated with banking, for which Pingyao was the major centre for the whole of China in the 19th and early 20th centuries.*”可知,19世纪时,平遥是中国当时的一大中心(城市)。故选 C。

### B

Tang Dynasty poets sang for about three centuries in different tones. There were many famous poets living in the Tang Dynasty such as Li Bai, Du Fu, Bai Juyi and Li Shangyin. *Quan Tangshi* edited in the Qing Dynasty is a collection of about 48,900 poems that were written by over 2,200 poets. But it doesn't cover all the poems of the Tang Dynasty.

During the Tang Dynasty, poems were recited when lovers walked under the moonlight. Poems were also recited when soldiers fought on the battlefield. People recited them in the open air or at temple fairs.

In the Tang Dynasty scholars had to be poets. Their readers were not only people of high social position but also common people. Poets recited poems; women singers sang poems and other ranks of people, including old women and children, read Tang poems. This atmosphere affected foreigners who visited the country at that time. As a result, Tang poetry was introduced to some adjacent countries, like Japan and Vietnam.

Tang poetry is a most brilliant page in the history of ancient Chinese literature. It's a miracle in the cultural history of mankind. The Tang Dynasty was a powerful empire with a vast territory. It inherited Chinese civilisation that went back to ancient times, and was combined with the best of other cultures and adopted the benefits of other nations in the world. Tang poetry wasn't the only spiritual wealth created by people of the Tang Dynasty. Philosophy, handwriting, painting, music and dance all gained new peaks of development. Tang poetry, however, was the jewel in the crown and the greatest achievement of the Tang Dynasty.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了中国唐诗的一些信息。

4. What can be learned from Paragraph 1?

- A. There were more than 48,900 poems written in the Tang Dynasty.  
B. In total there were four famous poets in the Tang Dynasty.  
C. Only people of the Tang Dynasty created poems.  
D. In the Tang Dynasty most common people were poets.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*Quan Tangshi* edited in the Qing Dynasty is a collection of about 48,900 poems that were written by over 2,200 poets. But it doesn't cover all the poems of the Tang Dynasty.”可知,唐朝时期被创作的诗歌应该超过了48 900首。故选 A。

5. What does the underlined word “adjacent” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?

- A. Neighbouring.                      B. Strong.  
C. Poor.                                D. Western.

A 词义猜测题。根据第三段最后一句中的“*like Japan and Vietnam*”以及常识可知,日本和越南都是中国的邻国,由此可知,adjacent 意为“邻近的”。故选 A。

6. What does the author really want to tell us in Paragraph 3?

- A. In the Tang Dynasty all poets were scholars.

- B. In the Tang Dynasty poems were quite popular.
- C. Many foreigners came to the East during the Tang Dynasty.
- D. In the Tang Dynasty many poems were sung by women singers.

B 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,在唐朝,学者肯定也是诗人,社会各个阶层的人们都在读唐诗,甚至外国人也受到了唐诗的影响。所以,本段主要介绍的是诗歌在唐朝是非常流行的。故选 B。

7. What can we know from Paragraph 4?

- A. The reasons for the poets to create poems in the Tang Dynasty.
- B. Tang poetry, the greatest spiritual wealth in ancient China.
- C. The significance and influence of Tang poetry.
- D. The editors of Tang poetry in the Qing Dynasty.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,本段想要告诉我们唐诗的意义和影响。故选 C。

### C

The traditional tent cities at festivals such as Glastonbury may never be the same again. In a victory of green business that is certain to appeal to environmentally-aware music-lovers, a design student is to receive financial support to produce eco-friendly tents made of cardboard that can be recycled after the bands and the crowds have gone home.

Major festivals such as Glastonbury throw away some 10,000 abandoned tents at the end of events each year. For his final year project at the University of the West of England, James Dunlop came up with a material that can be recycled. And to cope with the British summer, the cardboard has been made waterproof.

Taking inspiration from a Japanese architect, who has used cardboard to make big buildings including churches, Mr Dunlop used cardboard material for his tents, which he called Myhabs.

The design won an award at the annual New Designers Exhibition after Mr Dunlop graduated

with his product design degree and he decided to try to turn it into a business.

To raise money for the idea, he toured the city's private companies which fund new businesses and found a supporter in the finance group Mint. He introduced his idea to four of Mint's directors and won their support. Mint has committed around £500,000 to Myhabs and taken a share of 30 percent in Mr Dunlop's business. The first Myhabs should be tested at festivals this summer, before being marketed fully next year. Mr Dunlop said that the design, which accommodates two people, could have other uses, such as for disaster relief and housing for the Olympics.

For music events, the cardboard houses will be ordered online and put up at the sites by the Myhabs team before the festival-goers arrive and removed by the company afterwards. They can be personalised and the company will offer reductions on the expense if people agree to sell exterior (外部的) advertising space.

The biggest festivals attract tens of thousands of participants, with Glastonbury having some 150,000 each year. Altogether there are around 100 annual music festivals where people camp in the UK. The events are becoming increasingly environmentally conscious.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。为了让大型节日庆典更环保,James Dunlop 获得了灵感,研发了一种可循环利用的帐篷。目前他的想法已经得到一家公司的支持,这种新型的环保帐篷有望全面上市。

8. The underlined part “eco-friendly tents” in Paragraph 1 refers to tents \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. economically desirable
- B. favourable to the environment
- C. for holding music performances
- D. designed for disaster relief

B 词义猜测题。根据第一段最后一句中的“eco-friendly tents made of cardboard that can be recycled after the bands and the crowds have gone home”可知,这种帐篷是对环境有利的。另

外,根据 eco-friendly 的构成也可猜出其含义。故选 B。

9. Mr Dunlop established his business \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. independently with an interest-free loan from Mint
- B. with the approval of the city's administration
- C. in partnership with a finance group
- D. with the help of a Japanese architect

C 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“To raise money for the idea, he toured the city's private companies which fund new businesses and found a supporter in the finance group Mint.”可知,Mr Dunlop 与 Mint 为合作关系。故选 C。

10. It is implied in the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the weather in the UK is windy in summer
- B. most performances at British festivals are given in the open air
- C. the cardboard tents produced by Mr Dunlop can be user-tailored
- D. cardboard tents can be easily put up and removed by users

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“They can be personalised”可知,这种帐篷可以根据用户的要求来制作。故选 C。

11. The passage is mainly concerned with \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. an attempt at developing recyclable tents
- B. some efforts at making full use of cardboard
- C. an unusual success of a graduation project
- D. the effects of using cardboard tents at music festivals

A 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段中的“In a victory of green business that is certain to appeal to environmentally-aware music-lovers, a design student is to receive financial support to produce eco-friendly tents made of cardboard that can be recycled after the bands and the crowds have gone home.”可知,文章主要介绍的是一名设计专业的学生尝试使用纸板制作可回收的环保帐篷的故事。故选 A。

#### D

You may have heard that humans only use 10

percent of their brainpower, and that if you could unlock the rest of your brainpower, you could do so much more. However, there is a powerful body of evidence debunking the 10 percent myth. Scientists have consistently shown that humans use their entire brain throughout each day.

Despite the evidence, the 10 percent myth has inspired many references in the cultural imagination. A 2013 study showed that about 65 percent of Americans believed the myth, and a 1998 study showed that a full third of psychology majors, who focus on the workings of the brain, fell for it.

Neuropsychology studies how the anatomy (构造) of the brain affects someone's behaviour, emotion, and cognition. Over the years, brain scientists have shown that different parts of the brain are responsible for specific functions. Contrary to the 10 percent myth, scientists have proven that every part of the brain is integral to our daily functioning. Many brain imaging studies that measure brain activity when a person is doing a specific task show how different parts of the brain work together. For example, while you are reading a text on your smartphone, different parts of your brain work together. However, some parts of your brain, including those responsible for vision, reading comprehension, and holding your phone, will be more active.

However, some brain images unintentionally support the 10 percent myth, because they often show small bright splotches (斑点) on an otherwise gray brain. This may imply that only the bright spots have brain activity, but that isn't the case. Rather, coloured splotches represent brain areas that are more active when someone's doing a task compared to when they're not. The gray spots are still active, just to a lesser degree.

A more direct counter to the 10 percent myth lies in individuals who have suffered brain damage. If the 10 percent myth were true, damage to perhaps 90 percent of the brain wouldn't affect daily

functioning. Yet studies show that damaging even a very small part of the brain may have devastating consequences. For example, damage to Broca's area hinders proper formation of words and fluent speech, though general language comprehension remains intact.

Another line of evidence against the 10 percent myth comes from evolution. The adult brain only constitutes 2 percent of body mass, yet it consumes over 20 percent of the body's energy. In comparison, the adult brains of many vertebrate species—including some fish, reptiles, birds, and mammals—consume 2 to 8 percent of their body's energy. The brain has been shaped by millions of years of natural selection, which passes down favourable traits to increase the likelihood of survival. It is unlikely that the body would dedicate so much of its energy to keep an entire brain functioning if it only uses 10 percent of the brain.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讨论了人类只使用了10%的脑力这一说法是否正确。

12. What does the underlined phrase “fell for” in Paragraph 2 probably mean?

- A. Believed.                      B. Proved.  
C. Developed.                    D. Discovered.

A 词义猜测题。第二段提到,尽管证据表明人脑仅有10%被使用是“神话”,但很多人还是相信它。画线词所在句中,作者列举了2013年和1998年的两个研究来证明上述观点,即很多人还是依然相信“10%神话”。由此推知, fell for 和前文 believe 表达了同样的意思。故选 A。

13. What do we know about the brain according to Paragraph 3?

- A. Some parts of it are completely inactive.  
B. Some parts of it use more energy than others.  
C. Some brain damages will not affect our daily life.  
D. Some parts of it will be more active when performing a task.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“For example, while you are reading a text on your

smartphone, different parts of your brain work together. However, some parts of your brain, including those responsible for vision, reading comprehension, and holding your phone, will be more active.”可知,大脑的某些部分在执行任务时会更为活跃。故选 D。

14. Which of the following can best describe the author's attitude towards the 10 percent myth?

- A. Objective.                      B. Doubtful.  
C. Unconcerned.                  D. Supportive.

A 推理判断题。通读全文可知,第一段到第三段用研究结论否定了“10%神话”,表明“人脑仅有10%被使用”是荒诞的说法;而第四段到最后一段表达了相反的观点,并用脑损伤的人和进化论为例支持“10%神话”。由此可以推测出,作者只是陈述了人们对“10%神话”的不同观点,是客观的。故选 A。

15. What is the best title for the passage?

- A. What Percentage of the Human Brain Is Used?  
B. How Can the Human Brain Be Fully Developed?  
C. How Can the Myth of the Human Brain Be Solved?  
D. What Are the Functions of the Different Parts of the Human Brain?

A 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,作者在文中展示了关于“10%神话”的研究,讨论了我们人类到底是不是只使用了10%的脑力。因此,文章主要讲的就是我们人类到底使用了百分之多少的脑力,“What Percentage of the Human Brain Is Used?”是最佳标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Many schools offer vacations between terms and around holidays. 16 If you could use some advice on getting back into study, these skills will soon beat back your post-holiday blues and help you start your first school day back right.

Readjust your sleep schedule. Over the course of your vacation you might have enjoyed sleeping in or staying up late. 17 To reset your sleep schedule, you should return to your routine several

days to a week ahead of time.

**18** Making these preparations the night before your first school day can save you time and relieve your stress. Grogginess (犯迷糊) in the morning can cause you to take more time than you need to do these simple tasks, so ready your stuff before to make your first morning back as easy as possible.

Review your homework. Taking some time to look over homework can prevent you from forgetting to complete it. Take this time also to reflect on the way you did homework in the past. If you can think of any improvements, you might want to improve your homework routine. **19**

Eat a healthy breakfast. A healthy breakfast can put you on the fast track to feeling better about your school day. Foods like wholegrain toast, eggs, yogurt and cottage cheese can lift your spirits.

**20** Regular healthy breakfasts might also improve your memory, daily energy levels and your sense of calmness.

- A. Get your belongings well stored.
- B. Learn to cook delicious meals for your family.
- C. Pre-pack your schoolbag and choose your clothes.
- D. Such foods can even keep you going throughout the day.
- E. This might make it difficult to get back into your school routine.
- F. And returning to school might be the perfect time to make a change.
- G. But returning to school after a long break can leave you filled with fear and anxiety.

答案: 16~20 GECFD

### III. 完形填空(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

My daughter and her husband rented a house without furniture and just decided to “wing it” (临时应付) for lack of money. Soon after that, they saw a sofa 21 for free that was about 45 minutes from where they lived. The ad said whoever 22 arrived there would get it. They were the first but it was too 23 to fit in all in one go.

They were 24 for a while.

Then an old man from across the road 25 with a tape measure (卷尺) and a couple of oranges from his 26 to give them. The tape measure showed them there was no 27 to load it in the truck. And they would have to make two 28. The old man said he would 29 it with a sheet and make sure no one took the other part. When they returned, he said someone else had tried to get it but he had 30 them.

Then this man told them his story. He came from a poor country and grew up with a dirt floor, 6 siblings (兄弟姐妹) and no 31. He said people often forgot how 32 it was for young people starting out, but he 33 them for seizing the available opportunities. Besides the oranges from his yard, this old man also 34 them \$50 and suggested spending it in doing something nice for themselves and others. The 35 of this old man had my daughter in tears when she told the story to me.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的女儿在捡沙发时遇到一位陌生老人, 这位老人的慷慨帮助使人分外感动。

21. A. advertised                      B. deserted  
C. thrown                              D. exhibited  
A 根据下文“The ad”可知, 这里应指作者的女儿看到这个沙发“打的广告”。故选 A。
22. A. suddenly                        B. first  
C. really                                D. always  
B 根据下文“They were the first”可知, 广告说谁“第一个”到就能得到这个沙发。故选 B。
23. A. big                                 B. old  
C. heavy                                 D. complex  
A 根据下文“The tape measure showed them there was no 27 to load it in the truck.”可知, 沙发太“大”了, 不能一次性装走。故选 A。
24. A. explaining                      B. arguing  
C. struggling                         D. repairing  
C 根据上文“They were the first but it was too 23 to fit in all in one go.”可知, 他们“努力

着”想要把沙发运走。故选 C。

25. A. fell down                      B. went away  
C. checked in                      D. came out  
D 根据上文“from across the road”以及语境可知,老人是从对面“出来”的。故选 D。
26. A. truck                              B. store  
C. garden                              D. kitchen  
C 根据下文“Besides the oranges from his yard”可知,这些橘子来自老人的“花园”。故选 C。
27. A. way                                B. sign  
C. proof                                D. rule  
A 根据下文“And they would have to make two 28 .”可知,“不可能”把沙发一次性装上卡车。no way 表示“没有办法”,符合语境。故选 A。
28. A. rounds                            B. trips  
C. rescues                              D. decisions  
B 根据上文“The tape measure showed them there was no 27 to load it in the truck.”可知,他们需要两次“出行”才能运走沙发。故选 B。
29. A. hide                                B. decorate  
C. cover                                 D. clean  
C 根据下文“with a sheet”可知,老人准备用床单“盖住”沙发。故选 C。
30. A. defeated                         B. introduced  
C. attacked                              D. prevented  
D 根据上文“someone else had tried to get it”以及 but 表转折可知,老人“阻止了”他们。故选 D。
31. A. money                             B. chances  
C. relatives                             D. reputation  
A 根据上文“a poor country”可知,家里应该是没“钱”的。故选 A。
32. A. natural                            B. respectable  
C. sudden                                D. difficult  
D 根据上文“for lack of money”可知,年轻人刚开始是很“困难的”。故选 D。
33. A. punished                         B. thanked  
C. admired                              D. forgave  
C 根据上文“people often forgot”以及 but 表转折可知,老人很“钦佩”年轻人。故选 C。
34. A. promised                        B. showed  
C. lent                                      D. gave

D 根据上文“Besides the oranges from his yard”可知,除了橘子,老人还“给”了他们钱。故选 D。

35. A. reason                            B. kindness  
C. recognition                        D. knowledge  
B 根据上文“Besides the oranges from his yard, this old man also 34 them \$50”可知,这些都是老人的“善举”,让作者的女儿很感动。故选 B。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

With five thousand years of creative efforts, Chinese cuisine has become increasingly popular. Modern China enjoys a worldwide reputation as the “kingdom of cuisine”.

The endless variety of natural materials **36. and** methods of preparation employed in Chinese cuisine stand out unequalled in the world, which may account for the **37. universal** (universe) popularity of Chinese restaurants and cooking overseas. The three key elements, by **38. which** Chinese cooking is judged, are known as “colour, aroma and taste”. They are achieved by combining a series of delicate **39. activities** (activity).

Visitors to China are often surprised when a typical dinner for a table of eight people **40. consists** (consist) of cold and hot dishes, with soup and steamed rice. Often beer and wine **41. are served** (serve) as well. When toasting each other, people usually dry up their gasses **42. to convey** (convey) the message that they are sincere and joyful. **43. However/Nevertheless**, it is quite acceptable for a foreign guest to take a little instead of emptying the glass. While the custom strikes a foreign visitor as **44. particularly** (particular) strange, it shows one key aspect that fine food and good drink, **45. taken** (take) in the company of good friends, make up one of our supreme pleasures in life.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假设你是李华。你校交换生 Steven 对中国传统文化很感兴趣,希望你能给他推荐一个相关的社团,以便下学期加入。请你给他写一封 80 词左右的英文信件推荐橙子辅导社,要点如下:

1. 写信的目的；
2. 简要介绍该社团；
3. 推荐的理由。

注意：开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

[参考范文]

Dear Steven,

I'm glad to hear that you are interested in traditional Chinese culture, so I sincerely recommend the Orange Tutoring club of our school to you.

Orange Tutoring club was founded in 2006 and is the club with the most members in our school. Every weekend, the club will carry out activities, mainly studying excellent traditional Chinese culture, popularising relevant historical knowledge, and organising members to visit local museums every weekend. I believe you will learn a lot of traditional Chinese culture in the club and enrich your knowledge.

Finally, I extend my sincere greetings to you.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Greg could always be counted on to have an interesting party every year. This year the party was at Greg's house. The fun part was a scavenger hunt (寻宝游戏) he had set up for us. Two days before the party, Greg went around and asked the neighbours if they would help out. They were almost all willing.

At the party he divided us into groups of four. We all had the same list of things to collect and an hour's time to do it. The group that found the most things on the list would be the winners. So as soon as the hunt began, my group set out at once, in the hope of winning the game. Our first stop was house number 38. A Mrs Trollis answered the bell quickly. She was glad to help. She had three of the items

needed: a nail, a photograph of a baby, and a shoe box.

The next stop was Mr Gray's house. He was an older man who invited us in. He told us all about a scavenger hunt he went on when he was a boy. We were interested but also worried that we would run out of time listening to his stories. When he realised we didn't have all night, Mr Gray hurried off to find us a few things we needed. "I hope you will be the winners," he said.

Then we rushed off to another house. A young lady, Ms Crane, came to the door. She looked busy but she said she could help out. We asked for a baking soda box. Ms Crane emptied some baking soda into a bottle and handed us the box. We got a few more items in other houses and by this time we were missing only a Chinese newspaper.

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

We soon found, however, that finding a Chinese newspaper was a great challenge because none of the neighbours had one. With just fifteen minutes to go we were getting worried. Suddenly, I had an idea. "Why not go to the street?" I suggested. "Maybe we can find a Chinese there who carries a Chinese newspaper." Realising it might be our only chance, we immediately rushed to a street nearby, where we did find a Chinese woman. It was so lucky that she happened to have a Chinese newspaper in her bag. Smiling, she handed us the newspaper after we explained the situation to her.

Finally, we got everything on the list. We wasted no time in getting back to Greg's with the things we collected. It turned out that our group was the only one to get a Chinese newspaper. After all our things were checked, to our great joy, we were declared the winners. Of course, the other groups all wondered how we had managed to get such a newspaper. "It's very simple," I laughed. "Since it's a Chinese newspaper, you should ask a Chinese for it."

# Unit 4

## Everyday economics

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，熟悉话题语境，获取课文的主旨大意与核心信息；
3. 观看视频，了解货币的发展历史；
4. 观察并理解图片，初步了解日常生活中不同的经济活动，理解货币在其中扮演的角色，对货币经济学的基本概念有一定程度的理解。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一) 核心词汇

1. blank *adj.* 无表情的，木然的
2. dizzy *adj.* 头晕目眩的
3. potential *n.* (事物的)潜力，可能性
4. enterprising *adj.* 有创业精神的；有事业心的；有进取心的
5. phase *n.* 阶段，时期
6. bonus *n.* 奖金；红利
7. guidance *n.* 指导，引导
8. consultant *n.* 顾问
9. purchase *v.* 购买
10. distribution *n.* (商品的)分销，经销
11. as to 至于，关于
12. a number of 许多，大量
13. contribute to 促成；导致
14. most of all 最重要的是
15. be fond of 喜欢

16. give back 归还
17. take a deep breath 深吸一口气
18. turn... into... 把……变成……
19. end up 结束；告终
20. return to 回到
21. dream of 渴望；梦见

#### (二) 阅读词汇

1. bug *n.* 突然的兴趣，迷恋
2. manufacturer *n.* 制造商；制造公司，制造厂
3. cosmetics *n.* 化妆品，美容品
4. entrepreneurial *adj.* 创业的，具有创业精神的
5. input *n.* 投入(物)
6. forehead *n.* 额，前额
7. chairwoman *n.* 女主席；女会长
8. sunrise *n.* 日出(时分)；黎明；拂晓
9. obstacle *n.* 障碍，阻碍，妨碍
10. row upon row 一排又一排的
11. in the hope of 希望
12. start out 开始，起初；从……着手



## 「课文速览」

## 表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1 — Para. 2)	The interview of Zhang Yue.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The line of sweat ran down her forehead.</li> <li>• Feeling <b>1. dizzy</b>, she took a deep breath as she struggled to finish her <b>2. presentation</b>.</li> <li>• Her company lies in a valley.</li> <li>• People should finish picking the rose flowers before <b>3. sunrise</b>.</li> </ul>
Part 2 (Para. 3 — Para. 4)	The <b>4. reasons</b> for starting a business in her home town.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• She graduated from university overseas and realised the <b>5. potential</b> of planting rose flowers.</li> <li>• She wanted to give something back to her home town.</li> <li>• Being her own boss gave her some <b>6. freedom</b>.</li> </ul>
Part 3 (Para. 5 — Para. 6)	Zhang Yue's challenges.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Like any entrepreneur, she was just starting out and still had a lot to learn.</li> <li>• The biggest challenge at the <b>7. initial phase</b> was to persuade people to work for her.</li> <li>• Few in the village believed she could create a multi-million <i>yuan</i> business from flowers.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 7 — Para. 8)	Zhang Yue's <b>8. advice</b> for young entrepreneurs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• She advised that people should be realistic and seek <b>9. guidance</b> from expert consultants.</li> <li>• To succeed in business, people need a lot of things.</li> <li>• Most of all, don't be too <b>10. ambitious</b>.</li> </ul>

## 任务型课堂

## I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- How did Zhang Yue feel when she appeared on TV?
  - Excited.
  - Nervous.
  - Depressed.
  - Calm.
- Why should rose flowers be picked before sunrise?
  - Because they grow well then.
  - Because they are the most beautiful then.
  - Because there are too many people then.
  - Because they are easily damaged or broken.
- What's the biggest challenge at the initial phase for Zhang Yue?
  - Her parents' disapproval.
  - Her lack of confidence.
  - How to win the belief of local people.
  - Her lack of capital and equipment.

答案:1~3 BDC

## II. 课文语法填空

Zhang Yue grew up in the country and already knew about growing plants. **1. Surrounded**(surround) by roses as she was growing up, she paid them little attention. It was only after graduating from university overseas **2. that** she realised the great potential. She decided to return to her home town and grow roses to give something back to her home town, which is a place **3. where** roses grow wild. She set up her own company and became its chairwoman.

Zhang Yue is **4. lucky** (luck) enough to get investment and the all-important input and support from more experienced business people. However, she still has a lot to learn. She has overcome a number of **5. obstacles** (obstacle) in nursing her business to the success it is today.

She managed to win the belief of the local people. After she **6. appeared** (appear) on TV, a major Asian manufacturer of cosmetics was willing to purchase her product and help with its **7. distribution** (distribute).

She advises that people be realistic and seek guidance from expert consultants before rushing into things. **8. To succeed** (succeed) in business, young people need more than a good idea, hard work and determination. What really matters **9. is** (be) a sound business plan, access to capital, and good

management and negotiating skills. Most of all, don't be too **10. ambitious** (ambition).

### III. 阅读升华

1. What do you think has contributed to Zhang Yue's success?  
Her determination, hard work, devotion and management skills.
2. Do you want to start your own business after graduating from college? Give your reasons.  
略

## 课后素养评价(十六)

### I. 阅读理解

Not long ago, "blind box economy" suddenly became popular, winning the hearts of large numbers of faithful fans. People simply get interested in it. A couple spent 200,000 *yuan* on them. Another sixty-year-old guy spent over 700,000 *yuan* in buying blind boxes. Statistics showed that last year 300,000 hobbyists made deals through a second-hand shopping platform.

The blind boxes usually contain peripheral (周边的) dolls of comics and animation, or film and television, or specially designed ones. A single blind box usually costs about thirty to fifty *yuan*. But there is no mark on the box, and only after opening it can the buyer see what he has bought. This is rather like buying lottery tickets, for the buyer has to bet on his luck.

However, addiction to blind boxes is much like that to gambling (赌博). It is highly nontransparent compared with lottery tickets. Nobody knows whether sellers of blind boxes exaggerated (夸大) the winning rate so as to attract people to buy them, thus digging a consumption trap. Besides, it is also unknown whether the objects in the blind boxes are genuine or not. The blind box economy promoted its second-hand trade. The price of some classic dolls or dolls of limited editions have skyrocketed in second-hand trade platforms, and some may reach thirty to forty times. But it is difficult for buyers to judge whether it is the result of real supply and demand, or the consequence of businessmen's tricks.

The basis of the "blind box economy" is the cultural trend of collection. Many of the target consumers are young people who have scanty experience of life. They are thus attracted by deliberately exaggerated probability of "winning a prize" and constantly throw money to buy blind boxes in order to gain dolls that they desire. Or they may buy high-priced blind box dolls at second-hand trade platforms, thinking they can keep value preservation and appreciation, thus falling into the fixed pattern of trap carefully designed by businessmen.

Therefore, it is necessary to remind young people to control their consumption in case they become addicted.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章介绍了前不久,“盲盒经济”突然崛起。“盲盒经济”的受众群体中很多是涉世未深的年轻人,他们对市场风险的识别能力相对较低。文章旨在提醒消费者在购买盲盒前要三思。

1. A couple and a sixty-year-old guy are mentioned in Paragraph 1 to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. stress the importance of "blind box economy" to people  
B. tell how much money people spend on "blind box economy"  
C. show the popularity of "blind box economy" among people  
D. prove older people can afford more to buy "blind box economy"  
C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "People simply

get interested in it. A couple spent 200,000 yuan on them. Another sixty-year-old guy spent over 700,000 yuan in buying blind boxes.”可知,第一段提到一对夫妇和一个六十岁的男人的目的是展示“盲盒经济”的受欢迎程度。故选 C。

2. Which may NOT be the contributing factor to “blind box economy”?

- A. The fondness of gambling to bet on their luck.
- B. The high winning rate exaggerated by sellers.
- C. The blind faith in the cultural trend of collection.
- D. The possibility of making a fortune in second-hand trade.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Nobody knows whether sellers of blind boxes exaggerated (夸大) the winning rate so as to attract people to buy them, thus digging a consumption trap.”可知,售卖盲盒的商家是否夸大了中奖概率,变相诱导购买,我们还不得而知。因此 B 项可能是促成因素;根据第四段中的“The basis of the ‘blind box economy’ is the cultural trend of collection.”可知,“盲盒经济”基于收藏的文化潮流。因此 C 项是促成因素;根据第四段中的“they may buy high-priced blind box dolls at second-hand trade platforms, thinking they can keep value preservation and appreciation”可知,消费者在二手交易平台上花高价购买盲盒玩偶,认为其可以保值、升值。因此 D 项也属于促成因素。因此通过排除法可判断出 A 项可能不是“盲盒经济”的促成因素。故选 A。

3. What does the underlined word “scanty” in Paragraph 4 probably mean?

- A. Previous.      B. Inadequate.
- C. Personal.      D. Unforgettable.

B 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“They are thus attracted by deliberately exaggerated probability of ‘winning a prize’ and constantly throw money to buy blind boxes in order to gain dolls that they desire.”可知,这些年轻人容易被刻意夸大的“中奖”概率吸引,不断投入金钱去购买盲盒,以获得心仪的玩偶,由此可得知他们缺乏生活经验,因此第四段中画线的单词 scanty 表示“不充分的(inadequate)”。故选 B。

4. What’s the author’s purpose in writing the passage?

- A. To inform readers of the “blind box economy”.
- B. To promote the products of “blind box economy”.
- C. To list the reasons behind the popularity of “blind box economy”.
- D. To warn the consumers to think twice before buying blind boxes.

D 写作意图题。根据第四段中的“They are thus attracted by deliberately exaggerated probability of ‘winning a prize’ and constantly throw money to buy blind boxes in order to gain dolls that they desire.”及最后一段的内容可知,作者写这篇文章的目的是提醒消费者在购买盲盒前要三思。故选 D。

## II. 七选五

In order for a business to survive in today’s world, it is important that we regularly review what we are doing and how we are doing it. By considering new ideas and new ways of doing things, we can improve on our products or services, increase sales, reduce costs and make our processes more effective and efficient. 1

Using the latest technology to improve your products or services. When we think of innovation, we often think of new technologies. While they might be impressive, we should not use new technologies just because they are available. 2 Companies that produce cars, household appliances, etc. often have a large R&D (研发) department to work on making their products better.

3 By listening to customer feedback, we can get their opinions on how we are doing and find out what it is that they want. We also need to be aware of changes in customer demands and keep up with the times.

Offering a new product or service to reach new customers. 4 Innovation sometimes means developing a new product that targets a different group of customers. Although video games were often played by boys, in 2006, video games giant Nintendo introduced a new game, successfully targeting girls and older customers.

5 By looking at the changes to the customer’s lifestyles and needs, we sometimes

realise that there might be better ways to serve them. Customers who do not have a lot of time might prefer to have their food or their shopping delivered to their homes, or they like to do their banking online.

- A. Changing the way you provide a service.
- B. In short, innovation is key to increasing profits.
- C. Not all innovation will bring success to our businesses.
- D. Responding to customer demands by changing what is on offer.
- E. Innovate constantly in order to keep your business on the right track.
- F. There is a risk that your competitors might take away some of your customers.
- G. It is important to consider how the technology

can improve our products or services.

答案:1~5 BGDFA

**【微点写作】关于非现金支付的议论文**

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 第三,如果使用移动支付,每个人都可以在没有任何纸币的情况下购物,以防止钱被盗。  
Thirdly, if using the mobile payment, everyone can go shopping without any paper currency to prevent the money being stolen.
2. 这是一种如此方便的支付方式以至于它在全国范围内广受欢迎。  
It is such a convenient way of payment that it gains great popularity across the country.
3. 首先,我们可以方便地购买我们想要的东西。  
Firstly, it is convenient for us to buy what we want.

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas Language points

### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,感知课文的语篇结构及语言特点,学习和掌握课文中与话题相关的表达方式,并能运用所学的表达方式就年轻人创业这一话题进行有效交流;
3. 基于课文内容联系自身生活实际,从成功创业的主人公身上汲取人生经验,学习她的个人品质,辩证地看待年轻人创业的问题。

### 自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. Zoe looked at me with a **blank** expression. 木然的
2. Her head still hurt, and she felt slightly **dizzy** and disoriented (迷失方向的). 头晕目眩的
3. This is because fifth-generation networks are still in testing and trial **phases**. 阶段,时期
4. Further additions to your pay may take the form of **bonus** payments. 奖金;红利
5. He has a round face with a high **forehead**. 前额
6. A suitable answer has already been put forward by the **chairwoman**. 女主席
7. By **sunrise** tomorrow we'll be on our way. 黎明

8. There has been a big **input** of resources into the project from industry. 投入
9. A lack of qualifications can be a major **obstacle** to finding a job. 障碍

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<p><u>potential</u> <i>n.</i> (事物的) 潜力,可能性 <i>adj.</i> 有潜力的</p>	<p><u>potentially</u> <i>adv.</i> 潜在地</p>
<p><u>enterprising</u> <i>adj.</i> 有创业精神的;有事业心的;有进取心的</p>	<p><u>entrepreneurial</u> <i>adj.</i> 创业的,具有创业精神的</p>
	<p><u>enterprise</u> <i>n.</i> 公司</p>

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>distribution</u> <i>n.</i> (商品)的分销, 经销	distributor <i>n.</i> 经销商, 分销商
	distribute <i>v.</i> 分配, 分发
<u>guidance</u> <i>n.</i> 指导, 引导	guide <i>v.</i> 给……引路, 指引 <i>n.</i> 向导, 导游; 指南
<u>consultant</u> <i>n.</i> 顾问	consult <i>v.</i> 请教, 咨询; 商量; 查阅
<u>manufacturer</u> <i>n.</i> 制造商; 制造公司, 制造厂	manufacture <i>v.</i> 生产, 制造
<u>purchase</u> <i>v.</i> 购买	purchaser <i>n.</i> 购买者
	purchasable <i>adj.</i> 可买到的

## III. 补全短语

1. as to 至于, 关于
2. start out 开始, 起初; 从……着手
3. turn... into ... 把……变成……
4. end up 结束; 告终
5. be fond of 喜欢

6. give back 归还
7. in the hope of 希望
8. a number of 许多, 大量
9. contribute to 促成; 导致
10. most of all 最重要的是

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词作状语

Surrounded by roses as she was growing up, she paid them little attention.

在她成长的过程中, 虽然她周围到处都是玫瑰, 但她很少注意到它们。

2. 句型公式: as 引导定语从句

As people say, "It takes a village to raise a child."

正如人们所说: “养育一个孩子需要整个村庄的力量。”

3. 句型公式: 强调句型

It was only then that the locals began to believe me.

直到那时, 本地人才开始相信我。

## 任务型课堂

1. potential *n.* (事物的)潜力, 可能性

(教材原文) It was only after graduating from university overseas and returning to visit her parents that Zhang realised the **potential**.

直到从国外的大学毕业后, 回去探望父母时, 张悦才意识到这里的潜力。

**一感** 读句子感悟用法

First, we need to identify actual and **potential** problems.

首先, 我们需要弄清实际的问题和潜在的问题。

He **has the potential to become** a world-class musician. 他有潜力成为世界级的音乐家。

The situation is unstable and **potentially** dangerous.

情况不稳定, 可能有危险。

**二探** 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) have the potential to do sth. 有潜力做某事; 有可能做某事 the potential for (doing) sth. (做)某事的可能性/潜力 realise one's potential 发挥某人的潜能 (2) potential <i>adj.</i> 潜在的, 有潜力的 a potential disaster 潜在的危害 a potential customer 潜在的客户 (3) _____ <i>adv.</i> 潜在地, 有潜在可能性地
探究结论	(3) potentially

### 三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① All children should be encouraged to realise their full potential.

应当鼓励所有的儿童充分发挥他们的潜能。

② It's believed that the affair was potentially harmful to British aviation.

据信,该事件可能对英国航空业造成不利影响。

③ I think the boy has the potential for painting, but he needs training.

我认为这个男孩有绘画潜质,但他需要训练。

### 2. guidance n. 指导,引导

(教材原文) Though she welcomes the new entrepreneurial spirit, she advises that people be realistic and seek **guidance** from expert consultants before rushing into things.

尽管她欢迎新的创业精神的涌现,但她建议人们要现实一些,向专家顾问寻求指导,避免仓促行事。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

**Under the guidance of** the teacher, I made great progress in English.

在老师的指导下,我在英语(学习)上取得了巨大的进步。

She **guided** us through the busy streets **to** the museum.

她带领我们穿过繁忙的街道去博物馆。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) <u>        </u> the guidance of sb. = under sb.'s guidance 在某人的指导下 ask for/look for guidance 寻求指导 (2) guide v. 给……引路,指引 n. 向导,导游;指南 a travel guide 一本旅行手册 guide sb. to/through/around... 带领某人到/穿过/参观……
探究结论	(1) under

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Children need discipline, but they need guidance (guide) even more.

② A blind man is sometimes guided (guide) by a dog.

(2) 完成句子

Activities all take place under the guidance of an

experienced tutor.

所有活动都在一位经验丰富的导师的指导下进行。

### 3. consultant n. 顾问

(教材原文) Though she welcomes the new entrepreneurial spirit, she advises that people be realistic and seek guidance from expert **consultants** before rushing into things.

尽管她欢迎新的创业精神的涌现,但她建议人们要现实一些,向专家顾问寻求指导,避免仓促行事。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

He was a **consultant** to the Swedish government.

他是瑞典政府的一名顾问。

Have you **consulted** your lawyer **about** this?

你就此事咨询过你的律师吗?

Why not **consult with** Frank?

为什么不找弗兰克商量呢?

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) consult v. 请教,咨询;商量;查阅 consult sb. <u>        </u> sth. 咨询某人某事 consult <u>        </u> sb. 和某人商量 (2) consultation n. 咨询;磋商
探究结论	(1) about; with

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① An increasing number of people are consulting their accountants about the tax laws.

② He has the opportunity to teach or work as a consultant (consult).

③ The decision was reached after consulting (consult) with parents and teachers.

(2) 完成句子

The President consulted with European leaders before taking action yesterday.

昨天总统在采取行动之前与欧洲领导人商议过。

(3) 句式升级

After I consulted my teacher, I made up my mind to major in English.

→ Having consulted my teacher, I made up my mind to major in English. (非谓语动词作状语)

### 4. 强调句型

(教材原文) **It was** only then **that** the locals began to believe me.

直到那时,本地人才开始相信我。

[句式分析] 强调句型的基本结构: It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who + 其他成分。

### 一感 / 读句子感悟用法

**It was because the water had risen that** they could not cross the river.

正是因为水涨了,他们才没能过河。

**Was it during the World War II that** he died?

他是二战期间死亡的吗?

**Why is it that** you put off the meeting?

你为什么推迟会议呢?

**It was not until ten o'clock that** he went to bed.

直到10点他才睡觉。

### 二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) 肯定句: It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who + 其他成分。</p> <p>(2) 一般疑问句: Is/Was it + 被强调部分 + _____ + 其他成分?</p> <p>(3) 特殊疑问句: 特殊疑问词 + is/was + it + _____ + 其他成分?</p> <p>(4) not... until... 结构的强调句型为 “It is/was not until... that...”, 在这一固定句型中, 由于 not 已经前移, that 后只能用肯定形式。</p>
探究结论	(2) that/who (3) that

### 名师点拨

(1) 此句型中 it 没有词汇意义, 只是引出被强调部分。

(2) 此强调句型只能强调主语、宾语、表语和状语, 不能强调谓语动词。

### 三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It was in the park that I met Mr Green yesterday afternoon.

② It was not what you said but the way you spoke that annoyed him.

(2) 句型转换

My cousin bought an old bike yesterday in a marketplace.

→ It was my cousin who/that bought an old bike yesterday in a marketplace. (强调主语)

→ It was an old bike that my cousin bought yesterday in a marketplace. (强调宾语)

→ It was yesterday that my cousin bought an old bike in a marketplace. (强调时间状语)

→ It was in a marketplace that my cousin bought an old bike yesterday. (强调地点状语)

## 课后素养评价(十七)

### I. 单词拼写

- The boy feels hot on the forehead (前额), so he must be sent to hospital at once.
- To be honest, those maths problems made me dizzy (头晕目眩的).
- According to our headmaster, all children should be encouraged to realise their full potential (潜力).
- She is a consultant (顾问) to the government.
- My uncle purchased (购买) a new house near the lake last year.
- Who will be in charge of the distribution (分配) of food and clothing to the flood victims?
- Obviously, your son is too young to distinguish right from wrong, and needs your guidance (指

导).

- She stared at me with a blank (木然的) expression on her face.
- Software development consists of a number of phases (阶段).
- The firm's employees were expecting large bonuses (奖金).

### II. 短语填空

take a deep breath; in front of; dream of; pay attention to; be fond of; more than; end up; most of all

- Li Hua, who is fond of travelling, plans to travel as usual for his holiday.
- The man who sits in front of me is more than an

actor. He is also a producer in this film.

3. Faced with so many audience, the girl took a deep breath to rid herself of fears.
4. Most of all, as we have communication with foreigners, we should pay attention to the differences in our body language.
5. My sister dreams of being admitted into a key university.
6. If you work like this, you'll end up in failure.

### III. 完成句子

1. It was when she gave back the book to him that she found that his house was full of smoke.  
正是当她把书还给他时,她发现他的房子里满是烟雾。
2. My mother advised that we should start out early and return to the hotel before 6 o'clock.  
妈妈建议我们早点动身,并在6点之前回到酒店。
3. As to their extinction, many scientists hold the firm belief that what contributes to it is the change of the climate.  
至于它们的灭绝,许多科学家坚信,导致灭绝的是气候变化。
4. We found our monitor surrounded by reporters lucky enough to get guidance from the famous musician.  
我们发现我们被记者包围的班长足够幸运地得到了著名音乐家的指导。
5. As is/was reported in the newspaper, the traffic accident caused great damage and a number of policemen came to help with the rescue work.  
正如报纸上报道的那样,这起交通事故造成了重大损失,许多警察来协助救援工作。

### IV. 完形填空

Though completely blind, Jasen Bracy, a 15-year-old quarterback is unstoppable when he's on the football field. The young star grew up enjoying the sport every time football season came around and knew that football was his 1.

Jasen has been 2 since he was a young child. All he can tell is when it's morning or night time. However, Jasen never felt 3 to follow his

dream that one day he would be on TV or on the football field himself. When Jasen 4 13, his parents gave him a phone, which he used to call every football 5 in the area and asked if they would give him a try without his parents 6. "All of a sudden, one day we get a call from coach David Nichols saying, 'Hey, I got a(n) 7 from your son asking if he could come to play football for us, but did he say he was blind?'" Jasen's father said. But 8 the many other teams who rejected Jasen, Nichols was ready to give him a 9.

Jasen shocked Nichols and his team, immediately 10 the uniform and mastering 11 needed to play football without seeing the field, players or ball. In the games, the opposing team doesn't even 12 Jasen is blind.

Football isn't the only thing Jasen can do. He is good at 13 sports, including swimming, golf and wrestling. His dreams are boundless, and nothing seems out of 14 to him. But his heart 15 in football and his focus is on reaching the National Football League.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了盲人球星Jasen热爱足球,并通过自己的努力,加入当地的足球队,用技术征服队友和对手,并为自己的足球梦继续奋斗。

1. A. passion                      B. possession  
C. privilege                      D. principle

A 根据上文“The young star grew up enjoying the sport every time football season came around”可知,Jasen从小到大都喜欢看足球赛,由此推知足球是Jasen热衷的爱好。故选A。

2. A. deaf                              B. lame  
C. blind                              D. sick

C 根据下文“All he can tell is when it's morning or night time.”及第一段中的“Though completely blind”可知,Jasen只能辨别早上和晚上,由此推知Jasen是盲人。故选C。

3. A. satisfied                      B. thrilled  
C. anxious                          D. hesitant

D 根据下文“one day he would be on TV or on



the football field himself. When Jasen 4 13, his parents gave him a phone, which he used to call every football 5 in the area and asked if they would give him a try without his parents 6”可知,Jasen 认为自己某一天会上电视或站在足球场上,并给当地所有足球队打电话。由此推知,Jasen 毫不犹豫地追求梦想。故选 D。

4. A. turned            B. counted  
C. grew                D. remained

A 根据下文“13”可知,此处指 Jasen 到 13 岁时,turn+数字表示“到了几岁”。故选 A。

5. A. class              B. team  
C. store                D. brand

B 根据下文“But 8 the many other teams who rejected Jasen, Nichols was ready to give him a 9.”可知,Jasen 给当地所有足球队打电话。故选 B。

6. A. knowing          B. understanding  
C. supporting         D. believing

A 根据下文“‘All of a sudden, one day we get a call from coach David Nichols saying...’ Jasen’s father said.”可知,David 教练给 Jasen 的父亲打电话时,Jasen 的父亲才知道 Jasen 给足球队打电话。由此推知,Jasen 是在父母不知情的情况下给足球队打电话。故选 A。

7. A. email             B. text  
C. call                 D. letter

C 根据上文“When Jasen 4 13, his parents gave him a phone, which he used to call every football 5 in the area and asked if they would give him a try without his parents 6.”可知,Jasen 给当地所有足球队打电话,所以 David 接到 Jasen 的电话。故选 C。

8. A. as                 B. despite  
C. except              D. unlike

D 根据下文“Jasen shocked Nichols and his team, immediately 10 the uniform and mastering 11 needed to play football without seeing the field, players or ball. In the games, the

opposing team doesn’t even 12 Jasen is blind.”可知,Jasen 加入了 Nichols 的球队,所以 Nichols 的球队和其他拒绝 Jasen 的球队不同。故选 D。

9. A. chance            B. choice  
C. reason              D. reply

A 根据下文“Jasen shocked Nichols and his team, immediately 10 the uniform and mastering 11 needed to play football without seeing the field, players or ball. In the games, the opposing team doesn’t even 12 Jasen is blind.”可知,Jasen 加入了 Nichols 的球队,由此推知,Nichols 给了 Jasen 加入球队的机会。故选 A。

10. A. setting aside    B. putting on  
C. taking over        D. sorting out

B 根据下文“uniform”及“mastering 11 needed to play football without seeing the field, players or ball”可知,此处描述 Jasen 穿上球衣,上场表现踢球技术。故选 B。

11. A. regulations      B. routines  
C. techniques         D. disciplines

C 根据上文“Jasen shocked Nichols and his team”及下文“In the games, the opposing team doesn’t even 12 Jasen is blind.”可知,Jasen 使 Nichols 及其球队震惊。在球场上,对手甚至没有意识到 Jasen 是盲人。由此推知,Jasen 的球技高超。故选 C。

12. A. demonstrate    B. realise  
C. recommend        D. approach

B 根据上文“Jasen shocked Nichols and his team, immediately 10 the uniform and mastering 11 needed to play football without seeing the field, players or ball.”可知,Jasen 在看不见的情况下,展示了高超的球技。由此推知,对手甚至没有意识到球技高超的 Jasen 是盲人。故选 B。

13. A. elegant           B. virtual  
C. primitive           D. numerous

D 根据上文“Football isn’t the only thing Jasen can do.”及下文“including swimming, golf and wrestling”可知,Jasen 不仅擅长足球,还擅长许多其他运动项目,如游泳、高尔夫和摔跤。故选 D。

14. A. reach            B. control  
C. practice           D. favour

A 根据上文“Football isn't the only thing Jasen can do. He is good at 13 sports, including swimming, golf and wrestling.”可知, Jasen 擅长许多运动, 包括游泳、高尔夫和摔跤。由此推知, 对于 Jasen 来说, 似乎没什么是他做不到的。out of reach 意为“无法够到”。故选 A。

15. A. hands            B. gives  
C. lies                D. results

C 根据下文“his focus is on reaching the National Football League”可知, Jasen 的重点是进入国家足球联盟, 由此推知, Jasen 的心一直在足球上。故选 C。

【微点写作】关于非现金支付的议论文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 此外, 我们永远不会担心得到假钞票或不得不计算零钱。

Besides, never will we worry about getting fake notes or having to count change.

2. 越来越多的人选择使用移动支付来支付账单, 移动支付正在取代纸币支付。

More and more people are choosing to pay the bill by using mobile payment, which is taking the place of paper currency.

3. 对于一些不使用手机支付的老年人来说, 这是不方便的。

It is not convenient for some elderly people who do not use mobile phones to pay for items.

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务及目标

1. 复习定语从句, 能更好地理解其形式、意义与语用功能, 并在具体、真实的语境中进行运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习并运用与个人财务管理相关的词汇和表达, 理解其含义, 对日常经济学概念和财务管理有基本的了解;
4. 关注社会生活中个人信用体系的构建和运行, 思考如何规范自己的经济行为、建立良好的个人信用, 树立正确的金钱观、价值观;
5. 学会用英语进行咨询、释疑以及优势分析, 并能够在实际生活中运用所学表达。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **equator** is an imaginary line around the middle of the earth. 赤道
2. I naturally took him to be the owner of the **estate**. 庄园
3. This model is technically **superior** to its competitors. 优质的
4. A glass of wine does have quite a lot of **calories**. 卡(路里)
5. Try to avoid being **subjective** and one-sided when looking at problems. 主观的
6. As a **freshman**, I am looking forward to my college life. (大学的)一年级学生
7. A number of efforts were made to keep the

company **afloat**.

经济上周转得开的

8. There is no **rational** explanation for his actions. 合理的

9. I like the cheese because it has a soft, **mild** flavour. 不浓烈的, 淡的

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>conventional</u> <i>adj.</i> 传统的, 常规的	convention <i>n.</i> 传统, 常规
<u>discriminate</u> <i>v.</i> 不公正地区别对待, 歧视	discrimination <i>n.</i> 区别对待, 歧视

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>exceed</u> <i>v.</i> 超过,超出	<u>excessive</u> <i>adj.</i> 过分的,过度的
<u>financial</u> <i>adj.</i> 财政的,金融的;财务的	<u>finance</u> <i>n.</i> 金融,财政
<u>accumulate</u> <i>v.</i> 积累,积聚	<u>accumulation</u> <i>n.</i> 积累,积聚
<u>interfere</u> <i>v.</i> 介入;干涉	<u>interference</u> <i>n.</i> 干扰;干涉

## III. 补全短语

1. refer to 指的是;谈到;参考;查阅
2. up to 多达;忙于;由……决定的
3. rely on 依靠,信赖
4. prohibit... from 阻止……做……
5. be associated with 与……有关的
6. on one's own 独自

7. make ends meet 使收支相抵
8. keep/bear... in mind 牢记,记住
9. interfere with 妨碍,干扰
10. go into debt 陷入债务之中,负债

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:when 引导的时间状语从句的省略

For most of this history, lenders relied mainly on their subjective judgement when deciding whether or not a borrower was creditworthy.

在这段历史的大部分时间里,放款人主要依靠他们的主观判断来决定借款人是否是信用良好的。

2. 句型公式:祈使句+and/or+陈述句

Always make payments on time, or your credit score will be affected.

一直要按时付款,否则你的信用评分将会受到影响。

3. 句型公式:so that 引导目的状语从句

Avoid luxuries so that you don't go into debt.

避免(购买)奢侈品,这样你就不会负债。

## 任务型课堂

1. superior *adj.* 质量上乘的,优质的

(教材原文) **superior**, smooth blend, with mild flavour

品质上乘,混合均匀,味道温和

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

In terms of efficiency and cleanness, buses, trains and other forms of public or mass transportation **are superior to** the private automobile.

在效率和清洁度方面,公共汽车、火车和其他形式的公共或大众交通工具优于私家车。

If that situation continues, its **superiority** may be eroded, or even dissolved altogether.

如果那种情况继续存在,那么它的优越性可能被侵蚀,甚至完全消失。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be superior _____ 比……更好/强;更胜一筹 (2) superiority <i>n.</i> 优越感;优越(性),优势
探究结论	(1) to

## 名师点拨

superior 用作形容词时,本身含有“较”的意思,故不再有比较级和最高级形式。表示两者的比较用“superior to”,而不能“superior than”。

## 三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① The human mind will always be superior to machines because machines are only tools of human minds.
- ② There are, however, good reasons to doubt its superiority (superior) on all three counts.

## 2. make ends meet 使收支相抵

(教材原文) You will have to pay bills and handle budgets to **make ends meet**.

你不得不支付账单,处理预算来使收支相抵。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

She spent too much time **making herself up**.

她在化妆上花去了太多时间。

Can you **make out** the signature at the foot of this letter?

你能辨认出信尾的签字吗?

You must **make up for** all the lost time.

你必须把损失了的时间补回来。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	make _____ 组成; 编造; 化妆 make _____ 理解; 辨认出 make _____ 弥补 make it 获得成功; 准时到达 make the best/most of 充分利用
探究结论	up; out; up for

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 用 make 的相关短语填空

① I think it's very unkind of you to make up stories about him.

② Can you make out what this means?

③ You have to make up for the money you lost.

④ You're brave and determined. You can make it.

⑤ We should make the best/most of this valuable opportunity.

(2) 完成句子

I figured that we could make ends meet this month.

我计算了一下, 我们这个月能收支相抵。

## 语法探究

### 复习定语从句

#### 「语法感知」

① The place **where** this happens is a valley, a world away from any television studio.

② Zhang never thought that this was **something** she would end up doing.

③ This is a place **where** roses grow wild.

④ Zhang therefore decided to return to her home town and grow roses, **which** surprised many people.

⑤ As someone **who** grew up in the country, Zhang already knew about growing plants.

⑥ However, like any entrepreneur **who** was just starting out, she still had a lot to learn.

⑦ The biggest challenge at the initial phase was to persuade people to work for me, **which** was totally outside my experience.

⑧ You should know your own limits and those of the **people** you work with.

1. 以上例句中④⑤⑥⑦为关系代词引导的定语从句, 且关系代词在从句中作主语; ①③为关系副词引导的定语从句, 关系副词在从句中作状语。

2. 例句②⑧中先行词分别为 something 和 people, 在定语从句中充当宾语, 省略了关系词。

3. 例句④⑦为非限制性定语从句, 关系代词只能用 which, 不能用 that, 在这里指代前面整个主句的内容。

#### 「语法精讲」

##### 一、定语从句的关系词

1. 关系代词在从句中作主语、宾语、定语或表语; 关系副词在从句中作状语。

2. 关系词通常有下列三个作用: (1) 引导定语从句; (2) 代替先行词; (3) 在定语从句中充当某个成分。

关系词	关系代词	who, whom, whose, which, that, as
	关系副词	when, where, why

##### 二、限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句	从句和主句的关系十分密切。如果去掉, 主句的意思就不完整。两者之间不用逗号分开。
非限制性定语从句	从句和主句的关系不是十分密切, 只是对先行词或主句作附加说明。如果去掉, 主句的意思仍然完整。从句和主句之间往往用逗号分开。翻译时, 非限制性定语从句单独翻译。

These are the apples **that** they sent us two days ago. (限制性定语从句)

这些是他们两天前送给我们的苹果。

The novel, **which** I read last night, is very interesting. (非限制性定语从句)

那部小说非常有趣, 我昨天晚上读的。

### 三、关系代词和关系副词的区别

判断定语从句的引导词用关系代词还是关系副词的方法及依据:

方法	依据
根据从句的谓语动词	若是及物动词,后面若无宾语,用关系代词;若是不及物动词,则用关系副词。
根据关系词在从句中作的成分	把关系词放进定语从句中,若作主语或宾语用关系代词;若作状语用关系副词。

I visited the village **where** the famous writer once lived. (关系词在从句中作状语)

我参观了这位著名作家以前住过的村庄。

I visited the village **which/that** is famous for its beautiful scenery. (关系词在从句中作主语)

我参观了那个因美丽的景色而闻名的村庄。

### 四、介词+关系代词

当关系代词在定语从句中作介词的宾语时,我们通常用“介词+关系代词”引导定语从句。这里的关系代词只能用 which 或 whom。先行词指物时,用 which;先行词指人时,用 whom。在这个结构中,介词确定的原则:

1. 依据定语从句中动词或形容词等所需要的某种习惯搭配来确定。

Tom is the man **on whom** you can depend.

汤姆是你可以信赖的人。(习惯搭配 depend on)

John introduced to me his friend **with whom** I was not very familiar.

约翰向我介绍了我不是很熟悉的他的朋友。(习惯搭配 be familiar with)

2. 依据与先行词搭配的具体意义而定。

I'll never forget the day **on which** we climbed Mount Tai.

我永远不会忘记我们爬泰山的那一天。

3. 根据所表达的意思来确定。

The clever boy made a hole in the wall, **through which** he could observe what was happening inside the house.

这个聪明的男孩在墙上挖了一个洞,透过它,他可以观察屋里发生的事情。

4. 表示“所有”关系或“整体中的一部分”时,通常用介词 of。

He has three daughters, **all of whom** went abroad for further study.

他有三个女儿,她们都去国外深造了。

### 名师点拨

在定语从句中,有一些含介词的动词短语不可拆开使用,如 look after, look for 等。

The babies **whom** the nurses are **looking after** are very healthy. (正)

The babies **after whom** the nurses are **looking** are very healthy. (误)

### 「语法冲关」

#### I. 用适当的关系代词或关系副词填空

1. They were well trained by their masters who/that had great experience with caring for these animals.
2. On the edge of the jacket, there is a piece of cloth that/which gives off light in the dark.
3. The students benefiting most from college are those who are totally engaged in academic life.
4. Kate, whose sister I shared a room with when we were at college, has gone to work in Australia.
5. We have entered into an age when dreams have the best chance of coming true.
6. Their child is at the stage where she can say individual words but not full sentences.
7. Many young people, most of whom were well-educated, headed for remote regions to chase their dreams.
8. Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears, none of which has been proved.

#### II. 用定语从句合并句子

1. The man lives opposite our house. He is a miner.  
→The man who/that lives opposite our house is a miner.
2. The novel is very inspiring. It makes me very excited.  
→The novel is very inspiring, which makes me very excited.
3. I want to talk to the boys. Their homework hasn't been handed in.  
→I want to talk to the boys whose homework hasn't been handed in.
4. I still remember the day. On the day I first came to Guilin.  
→I still remember the day when/on which I first came to Guilin.

5. Her daughters wrote to her every two weeks. Both of them studied abroad.  
→ Her daughters, both of whom studied abroad, wrote to her every two weeks.

6. This is the place. We've lived there for five years.  
→ This is the place where we've lived for five years.

## 课后素养评价(十八)

### I. 词语填空

make sure; make ends meet; up to; superior; keep... in mind; be associated with; interfere with; less than; subjective; freshman; go into debt; accumulate

- A few years ago, it was impossible to find superior quality coffee in local shops.
- We know that taste in art is a subjective matter.
- She never allows her personal feelings to interfere with her work.
- Dust and dirt soon accumulate if a house is not cleaned regularly.
- Both the husband and the wife had to work to make ends meet.
- For the first time, our hotel accommodates up to 500 guests.
- It is important that the hotel receptionist has made sure that guests are registered correctly.
- This is my first year of college. I'm a freshman.
- To buy a house or a car, some people have to go into debt.
- It's likely that his disease is associated with heavy smoking.
- Please keep it in mind that you must arrive at the airport on time.
- Have more than you show; speak less than you know.

### II. 单句语法填空

- Discrimination (discriminate) against women is not allowed in our country.
- The engines shut off automatically (automatic) in an emergency.
- Now that you are grown-up, you should not rely on your parents.
- After conventional (convention) opening remarks, he made a brilliant speech.
- She complained loudly to the shopkeeper, who answered her mildly (mild).

- She wants a job where her management skills can be put to good use.
- Did you read the book whose cover is red?
- She is still financially (finance) dependent on her parents.
- We'll never forget the days when we stayed with Professor Smith.
- I know the man who/whom/that you spoke to just now.
- Should people be prohibited from using (use) plastic bags for good to eliminate white pollution?
- Her problem was just too big for her to solve on her own.

### III. 阅读理解

When Zbynek Frolik needed new employees to handle increasing orders at his factories in central Bohemia, he sent out advertisements across the Czech Republic. But in a prosperous economy where nearly everyone had work, there were few takers. Raising wages didn't help. Nor did offer to subsidise (补贴) housing. So he turned to the robots.

"We can't find enough humans," said Mr Frolik, whose company, Linet, makes hospital beds sold in over 100 countries. "So we're trying to replace people with machines wherever we can."

Such talk usually makes people think of a future where employees are no longer needed. In many major economies, companies are experimenting with replacing factory workers, truck drivers and even lawyers with artificial intelligence.

But in Eastern Europe, robots are being enlisted as the solution for a shortage of workers. Often they are helping to create new types of jobs as businesses in the Czech Republic, Hungary, Slovakia and Poland try to stay competitive. Economic growth in these countries has averaged 5 percent in recent years, affected by the global recovery. A booming economy has reduced the jobless rate to just 2.4

percent, the lowest in the European Union.

The lack of manpower, however, has limited the ability of Czech companies to expand. Nearly a third of them have started to turn away orders, according to the Czech Confederation of Industry, a trade group. “It’s becoming a brake on growth,” said Jaroslav Hanak, the organisation’s president. “If businesses don’t increase robotisation and artificial intelligence, they’ll disappear.”

Some factories in Eastern Europe are already on the way. At Elko EP, which makes industrial timers for companies like General Electric, 70 percent of production is automated, and the company is aiming to be almost fully robotised in a few years. In a corner of the factory, robots have taken over routine manufacturing (制造业) tasks. Jiri Konecny, the company’s CEO, moved factory floor workers to more complex roles, and focused hundreds of other employees on research and development. “If we hadn’t invested early in automation, we’d be dead by now,” he said.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要讲述了经济快速增长,导致一些国家很难找到工人。公司应该花更多的钱在自动化上,才能得以生存。

- What is the problem that Czech Republic is facing?
  - It’s hard to find human workers.
  - Its population is decreasing greatly.
  - Robots are now welcome at factory work.
  - Employees do not want to do factory work.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“*But in a prosperous economy where nearly everyone had work, there were few takers. Raising wages didn’t help. Nor did offer to subsidise (补贴) housing. So he turned to the robots.*”可推知,捷克共和国面临的问题是很难找到工人。故选 A。
- Which of the following may have contributed to the problem in Eastern Europe according to Paragraph 4?
  - Tough competition.
  - Advanced technology.
  - A low birth rate.
  - A fast-growing economy.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*Economic growth*

in these countries has averaged 5 percent in recent years, affected by the global recovery. A booming economy has reduced the jobless rate to just 2.4 percent, the lowest in the European Union.”可推断出,快速增长的经济可能导致了东欧的问题。故选 D。

- How might Jaroslav Hanak feel about the future of Czech companies?
  - Puzzled.
  - Worried.
  - Surprised.
  - Hopeful.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“*‘It’s becoming a brake on growth,’ said Jaroslav Hanak, the organisation’s president. ‘If businesses don’t increase robotisation and artificial intelligence, they’ll disappear.’*”可推断出, Jaroslav Hanak 对捷克的公司的未来很担忧。故选 B。
- What should companies do to survive?
  - Change their policies.
  - Turn to other countries for help.
  - Employ qualified human workers.
  - Spend more money on automation.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*‘If we hadn’t invested early in automation, we’d be dead by now,’ he said.*”可知,公司应该花更多的钱在自动化上,才能得以生存。故选 D。

### 【微点写作】关于非现金支付的议论文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 我们也不需要害怕收到假钱。  
Nor do we need to be afraid of receiving fake money.
- 此外,它还会自动记录我们的财务报告,这使我们能够知道我们的钱去了哪里。  
Besides, it also keeps a record of our financial report automatically, allowing us to know where our money is going.
- 我们对手机的依赖程度如此之高,以至于在手机因电池耗尽或无服务无法工作时,我们会发现自己被困住了。  
So much do we depend on cellphones that we find ourselves trapped in occasions when they fail to work, running out of battery or out of service.

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 阅读课文，理解课文内容，养成对日常生活观察、思考的习惯，对日常经济活动进行理性分析，多角度看待事物；
- 联系生活实际，增加对经济生活的理解，更深入地思考经济问题；增强责任意识 and 主人翁意识，正确认识当前的经济形势和个人的经济行为，树立正确的价值观和增强责任感。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

##### (一) 核心词汇

- sorrow *n.* 令人悲伤的事，不幸
- hire *v.* (短期的)租用，租借
- expense *n.* 费用，花费
- abuse *n.* 滥用
- rent out 出租(房屋、房间、土地等)
- at the expense of 以……为代价
- as is often the case 通常都是如此
- response to 对……的回应
- be beneficial to 对……有益
- set up 建立，创立
- cut down on 减少，削减

- kind of 有点儿
- take on 呈现；承担；雇用
- be relevant to 与……相关
- be subject to 受……支配；受……影响

##### (二) 阅读词汇

- frustration *n.* 懊丧，懊恼，沮丧
- supervision *n.* 监督；管理
- theft *n.* 偷盗，偷窃
- purse *n.* (女士)钱包
- thereby *adv.* 因此，由此
- toddler *n.* 学步的儿童，刚学走路的小孩
- designer clothes 名牌服装
- at rock-bottom prices 以最低价格
- do a further favour 进一步保护/提高/帮助等
- get lost 迷路

#### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	The 1. <u>benefit</u> of sharing.	We have been told and are often reminded that it is good to share. The behaviour of sharing is beneficial to setting up positive 2. <u>emotional bonding</u> .
Part 2 (Para. 2)	The extra meaning of sharing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Today, the action of sharing has expanded to almost every 3. <u>aspect</u> of our lives. The sharing economy is taking off in all sorts of areas.</li> <li>It is creating new ways of 4. <u>thinking</u> and is providing services to people when and where they want them.</li> </ul>



续表

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3 (Para. 3)	The reasons for sharing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sharing is a response to our increasing demand for <b>5. <u>quality goods</u></b> and services at competitive prices.</li> <li>• We also make <b>6. <u>connections</u></b> and sometimes even make new friends.</li> <li>• Besides, sharing encourages us to reuse items, thus <b>7. <u>cutting down on</u></b> waste.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 4)	The problems of sharing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The sharing economy is developing faster than existing regulations or <b>8. <u>ongoing</u></b> supervision.</li> <li>• The sharing economy is subject to abuse of <b>9. <u>trust</u></b>.</li> <li>• Personal data is not yet <b>10. <u>secure</u></b>.</li> </ul>
Part 5 (Para. 5)	The future of sharing.	The sharing economy is expanding at such a rate that we can only imagine what it will <b>11. <u>comprise</u></b> in the future.

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the function of Paragraph 1?
  - To introduce the author's experience.
  - To lead the topic of the text.
  - To introduce a scientific study.
  - To introduce what we can share.
- What's the main idea of Paragraph 2?
  - The extra meaning of sharing.
  - Aspects of our lives.
  - The success of the sharing economy.
  - The advantages of the sharing economy.
- What can be learned from Paragraph 3?
  - Sharing is beneficial to the environment.
  - Sharing may lead to waste.
  - Sharing only benefits the lender.
  - Sharing may harm the relationship of people.

答案:1~3 BAA

### II. 课文语法填空

It is good to learn **1. to share** (share). Psychologists stress that the behaviour of sharing is **2. beneficial** (benefit) to setting up positive emotional bonding. Today, the action of sharing takes **3. on** extra meaning and has expanded to

almost every aspect of our **4. lives** (life). The sharing economy is creating new ways of **5. thinking** (think) and is providing services to people when and where they want them. There are **6. various** (vary) kinds of sharing and all can **7. be delivered** (deliver) at the click of a button. We can benefit a lot from sharing, such as making new friends, reusing items and doing **8. a** further favour for the environment. **9. However**, the sharing economy has its problems. For example, it is subject to abuse of trust and personal data is not yet secure. There is no doubt that the sharing economy can take **10. us** (we) to a wonderful society.

### III. 阅读升华

- What's the author's attitude towards the sharing economy?  
Positive/Optimistic/Favourable.
- What can you learn from the passage about sharing?  
Sharing is a good virtue. We can benefit a lot from sharing, so we should learn to share. (回答合理即可)

## 课后素养评价(十九)

### I. 单词拼写

1. People were in deep sorrow (悲伤) at the news that a plane with five people on board crashed yesterday.
2. Last summer, my friend and I hired (租用) a car and headed for Guilin.
3. Having got involved in a theft (偷盗), he was sentenced to five years in prison.
4. With prices going up so fast, many people are working out ways to cut down their expenses (费用).
5. The abuse (虐待) of women needs to be treated seriously and sensitively.
6. The loss of her purse (钱包) caused her much inconvenience.

### II. 短语填空

rather than; rent out; at the expense of; take on; take off; be relevant to; cut down on; take advantage of; set up; be beneficial to; be subject to; kind of; pay for; in favour of; as well; again and again; as long as; all of the time

1. I decided to stay at home rather than go to the cinema.
2. A stay in the countryside will be beneficial to your health.
3. He devoted his time to football at the expense of his studies.
4. We set up a monument in memory of the heroes who gave their life to our country.
5. They had to rent out the upstairs to make the mortgage (抵押) payments.
6. If you want to stay healthy, cut down on the amount of salt you eat.
7. Yesterday afternoon, he took advantage of the good weather to go for a walk.
8. Our city has taken on a new look in the past few decades.
9. Your answers must be relevant to the question and cover the topic.
10. This was the moment when Spielberg's career really took off.
11. As long as you have your health, nothing else matters.

12. You can't please everyone all of the time, and there's no need to try to.
13. As is known to all, all flights are subject to delay.
14. What his friend said made him feel kind of embarrassed.
15. He was in favour of my plan, so his response to it was positive.
16. It was clear that he had no intention of paying for the meal out of his own pocket.
17. So beautiful is the West Lake that many visitors come here again and again.
18. I write my own songs and I play the guitar as well.

### III. 完成句子

1. Whether she is happy or sad, she always tries to keep smiling.  
不管开心还是难过,她总是努力保持微笑。
2. As is often the case, the experiment done, I go on to take notes in the experiment report.  
像往常一样,实验完成后,我继续在实验报告上做记录。
3. What is in no doubt is that Mary is qualified for the job.  
毫无疑问,玛丽胜任这项工作。
4. The new machines have run much faster, thereby reducing our cost.  
新机器运转得快得多,因此降低了我们的成本。
5. He has made such great progress in his study that the teacher is quite satisfied with him.  
他在他的学习上取得了如此大的进步,因此老师对他很满意。

### IV. 七选五

Do you know that overnight success usually takes at least 10 years? One man said, "My overnight success was the longest night of my life. I spent many days and nights just getting there." 1 Many people are waiting for their ship to come in—when they've not even sent it out of the harbour. You see, winners simply do what losers don't want to do. 2 Success is mostly just hanging on after

others have let go! So the most important trip you'll make is when you go the extra mile.

Many people who have failed do not know how close they are to success when they give up. 3 One guy said, "The secret to success is to start from doing and to keep on doing." So don't give up because your trying times are hard.

4 If we keep doing, we can gain almost anything we want. Nothing can bring success like persistence (坚持). Talent can't, for there are many talented people who are not successful. 5 Only persistence and determination can give you the power to succeed. You see, you can succeed just like anyone else, as long as you keep wanting it enough and keep working for it enough. So why not decide today to start going the extra mile on the road to your success?

- A. They don't actually fail; they just give up too easily.  
 B. They made all the efforts without any results.  
 C. Remember, "Rome was not built in a day."

D. Education can't, for the world is full of educated losers.

E. And they keep doing it till they get the success they want.

F. Never forget, it is persistence that matters.

G. Give it all you've got and you can never fail.

答案:1~5 CEAFD

### 【微点写作】关于非现金支付的议论文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 例如,在支付您购买的商品时,您可能会被监控,因此您的账户可能会被盗。

For example, you might be monitored while paying for what you have bought so that your account could be stolen.

2. 因此,为了用户的利益,该系统值得进一步探究。

So the system deserves further exploring for the benefit of the users.

3. 与传统支付相比,移动支付有其优点和缺点。

Compared with traditional payment, mobile payment has its advantages and disadvantages.

## Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

### 学习任务及目标

- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 阅读课文,掌握“正反论证”式议论文的基本特征和论证方法,能够运用所学内容就“非现金支付”这一经济现象展开论述;
- 联系自身实际,进一步辩证、深入地理解日常生活中的经济活动及新兴的经济现象,树立正确的金钱观。

### 自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. A **toddler** requires close supervision and firm control at all times. 学步的儿童

2. Regular exercise strengthens the heart, **thereby** reducing the risk of heart attack. 因此

3. He was arrested on charges of corruption and **abuse** of power. 滥用

4. We can **hire** bikes for a day to explore the town. (短期的)租用,租借

5. I took a coin out of my **purse** and gave it to the child. 钱包

## II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>sorrow</u> <i>n.</i> 令人悲伤的事, 不幸	sorrowful <i>adj.</i> 悲伤的
<u>frustration</u> <i>n.</i> 懊丧, 懊恼, 沮丧	frustrate <i>v.</i> 使懊恼, 使沮丧
	frustrated <i>adj.</i> 沮丧的, 懊恼的
	frustrating <i>adj.</i> 令人沮丧的, 令人懊恼的
<u>supervision</u> <i>n.</i> 监督; 管理	supervise <i>v.</i> 监督; 管理
<u>expense</u> <i>n.</i> 费用, 花费	expensive <i>adj.</i> 贵的, 昂贵的
	expend <i>v.</i> 花费
<u>theft</u> <i>n.</i> 偷盗, 偷窃	thief <i>n.</i> 小偷, 贼

## III. 补全短语

- rent out 出租(房屋、房间、土地等)
- at the expense of 以……为代价
- be beneficial to ... 对……有益
- set up 建立, 创立
- cut down on 减少, 削减
- be subject to 受……支配; 受……影响
- as is often the case 通常都是如此
- take on 呈现; 承担; 雇用

## IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Taking it as an object of study, psychologists have

published various papers stating that the behaviour of sharing is beneficial to setting up positive emotional bonding.

心理学家将分享作为研究的对象, 发表了各种各样的论文来说明分享行为有利于建立积极的情感纽带。

- 句型公式: 独立主格结构

This wealth of ways of sharing is a response to our increasing demand for quality goods and services at competitive prices, all delivered at the click of a button.

我们需要价格有竞争力的优质产品和服务, 这些丰富的共享方式是对这种不断增长的需求的回应, 现在这些需求都可以通过一键单击来实现。

- 句型公式: whether... or...

Whether we're a lender or a borrower, it's a win-win situation.

不管我们是出借人还是借用人, 这都是一个双赢的局面。

- 句型公式: as 引导非限制性定语从句

As is often the case all over the world with new areas of economic activity, the sharing economy is developing faster than existing regulations or ongoing supervision.

全世界的新经济活动领域通常都是如此, 共享经济的发展速度过快, 而现有法规和持续监管还未跟上。

- 句型公式: what 引导主语从句

Nonetheless, what is in no doubt is that the sharing economy is increasingly relevant to our daily lives as well as to the global economy.

尽管如此, 毫无疑问, 共享经济与我们的日常生活以及全球经济的关系日益密切。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. sorrow *n.* 令人悲伤的事, 不幸

(教材原文) Parents and teachers keep reminding us to share toys, snacks, books, happy memories, and sometimes even **sorrows** with others.

父母和老师不断地提醒我们要与他人分享玩具、零食、书籍以及快乐的回忆, 有些时候甚至要分享自己的伤心事。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

**To her sorrow**, no one came to help her when she was in trouble.

令她伤心的是, 当她处于困境中时, 没有人来帮助她。

Always **in sorrow** and depression, he will live no better than die.

总是沉浸在悲哀和沮丧中, 他将生不如死。

His father's face looked suddenly soft and **sorrowful**.

他父亲的面容忽然变得温柔而悲伤。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ one's sorrow 令某人伤心的是 _____ sorrow 悲伤 express one's sorrow at 对……表示悲痛 remove one's sorrow 消除某人的悲伤 (2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 悲伤的 (3) <i>sorrowfully adv.</i> 伤心地, 悲伤地
探究结论	(1) to; in (2) sorrowful

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① She felt sorrowful (sorrow) when she heard the news of her best friend's death.

② To his sorrow, his whole house was destroyed in the earthquake.

③ He was weeping sorrowfully (sorrow) when leaving his home town.

(2) 完成句子

① We expressed our sorrow at his father's death at that time.

在那时我们对他的去世表示悲痛。

② They said that the decision was made more in sorrow than in anger.

他们说作出这个决定, 与其说是出于气愤, 不如说是出于悲伤。

### 2. expense n. 费用, 花费

(教材原文) Some companies are taking unfair advantage of this situation to expand their share of the market, often at the **expense** of more traditional and established companies.

一些公司正在利用这种情况获取不公平的优势, 扩大其市场份额, 这往往以损害已有的更为传统的公司为代价。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The garden was transformed **at great expense**.

花园改建花了一大笔费用。

She **expended** all her efforts **on** the care of home and children.

她把所有精力都花在料理家务和照顾孩子上。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) at the expense of 以……为代价 at one's expense 某人负担费用; 嘲弄某人 at great/huge expense 花费大笔费用 spare no expense in doing sth. 不惜费用做某事 (2) <i>expensive adj.</i> 贵的, 昂贵的 (3) _____ <i>v.</i> 花费
探究结论	(3) <i>expend</i>

### 三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① He built up the business gradually at the expense of his health.

他以他的健康为代价逐步建立起这个企业。

② Don't expend all your energy on such a useless job.

不要把你的精力全花在这无益的工作上。

### 3. as 引导非限制性定语从句

(教材原文) **As is often the case** all over the world with new areas of economic activity, the sharing economy is developing faster than existing regulations or ongoing supervision.

全世界的新经济活动领域通常都是如此, 共享经济的发展速度过快, 而现有法规和持续监管还未跟上。

[句式分析] 本句为主从复合句, 其中 as 引导非限制性定语从句。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

**As we all know**, an astronaut needs to be healthy and calm in order to work in space.

众所周知, 要想在太空工作, 航天员需要是健康的、冷静的。

He forgot to bring his pen with him, **as was often the case**.

他忘了带笔, 这是常事。

**As is reported** in the newspaper, the mayor will visit our school tomorrow.

正如报纸上报道的那样, 市长明天要来参观我们学校。

**As we expected**, he won first prize in the speaking competition.

正如我们所预料的那样, 他在演讲比赛中获得了一等奖。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) as 引导非限制性定语从句常用于以下结构: as we all know/as it is well known to all(众所周知), as is said above(正如上面说的那样), as is expected(正如所预料的那样), _____ (正如报道的那样), _____ (正如上文提到的那样)等。</p> <p>(2) as 引导非限制性定语从句时位置比较灵活, 可位于 _____、句中或句末。</p>
探究结论	<p>(1) as is/was reported; as is mentioned above</p> <p>(2) 句首</p>

## 名师点拨

which 引导非限制性定语从句时不能置于句首, 只能位于主句之后。

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① As is known to all, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

② As is said above, we must protect our earth.

③ Tom was late again for school this morning, which made the teacher very angry.

(2) 完成句子

As is often the case, we have worked out the production plan.

正如往常一样, 我们已经制订出了生产计划。

# 写作探究

## 关于非现金支付的议论文

### 一、写作指导

关于非现金支付的议论文属于利弊分析类议论文。此类文章是对某种现象或事物的优势和劣势进行对比分析并得出结论, 一般可写成“三段式”或“四段式”。

- 常用结构模式: 描述某一现象(事物)→分析其优势→分析其劣势→个人的态度或看法。
- 正确的时态: 议论文常用一般现在时, 但述说过去的事实时, 则用过去时; 预测将来时, 要用将来时。
- 注意事项: 在分析现象(事物)的利与弊时, 应各自阐明论点与论据, 做到条理清晰, 论证充分。

### 二、典题示例

假定你是李华, 你的美国朋友 Tom 听说在中国通过扫描二维码就可以轻松实现移动支付, 他对此感到不可思议。请你用英语写一篇短文告知 Tom 移动支付在中国的相关情况。内容包括:

- 移动支付在中国非常流行, 方便快捷, 功能强大;
- 移动支付存在安全问题, 如个人信息泄露、资金盗用、导致过度消费等。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

参考词汇: 扫描二维码 scan QR codes; 移动支付 mobile payment

### 三、审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	第一、三人称
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>点明写此短文的目的</li> <li>介绍移动支付的优缺点</li> <li>总结观点</li> </ol>

### 四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇

① be accustomed to 习惯于

② let out personal information 泄露个人信息

(二) 完成句子

① Mobile payment is very convenient for our daily lives (对我们的日常生活来说是十分方便的)。

② Most of us accustom ourselves to (使我们自己习惯于) paying by scanning QR codes.

③ By mobile payment, we can pay easily wherever we are (无论我们在哪里)。

④ Personal information is likely to be let out (很可能被泄露)。

⑤ Besides, we tend to buy more than what we really

need (我们真正所需的) by paying online.

### (三) 句式升级

①用 be accustomed to 短语升级(二)中句②

Most of us are accustomed to paying by scanning QR codes.

②用 It 作形式主语升级(二)中句④

It is likely that personal information will be let out.

### (四) 连句成篇

Mobile payment is very convenient for our daily lives. Most of us are accustomed to paying by scanning QR codes. By mobile payment, we can pay easily wherever we are. This allows us to say goodbye to wallets and bank cards. However, its security issues can be worrying. For example, it is likely that personal information will be let out and money will be stolen. Besides, we tend to buy more than what we really need by paying online.

All in all, mobile payment has greatly changed our lives in China.

### 五、学以致用

目前,中国的很多城市出现了共享单车(bicycle-sharing),它受到了人们的欢迎,同时也出现了一些问题。请以“Bicycle-sharing”为题写一篇英语短文,内容要点如下:

1. 共享单车方便出行,健康环保;
2. 存在随意停放和人为损坏共享单车的现象;
3. 你的看法。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:停放 park

[参考范文]

#### Bicycle-sharing

Nowadays, bicycle-sharing has come into people's lives in many cities of China and it has become a popular means of transport.

Indeed, bicycle-sharing makes it convenient for people to travel. Also, bicycle-sharing is not only beneficial to our health but also environmentally friendly.

However, some problems also exist in bicycle-sharing. First, some people may park the bicycles wherever they want to. What's worse, many people even break them on purpose.

As far as I'm concerned, we should take a developing view about bicycle-sharing and, with effective measures taken, it can be expected that it will become a more helpful way to travel daily.

## 课后素养评价(二十)

### I. 单句语法填空

1. When you get used to it, you'll never feel sorrowful (sorrow).
2. At his suggestion, I bought the more expensive (expense) printer.
3. I was kind of upset that you weren't there.
4. You'll never regret the money you paid for the ticket.
5. Her fame was bought at the expense of her marriage.
6. I rent out the house only on rare occasions for special events.
7. We can't take on any more work — we've tried our best.
8. I'm going to take advantage of the tour to explore the history of the castle.
9. It strikes me that nobody is really in favour of the changes.

10. He tried to cut down on smoking but in vain.
11. Flights are subject to delay because of the fog.
12. He said he would still support them, as long as they didn't break the rules.
13. Our first task is to set up a communications system.
14. I take delight in helping others, which is beneficial to others as well as myself.
15. Of course, your story should be relevant to the point you're making.

### II. 完成句子

1. We wear sports shoes when/while (we are) doing physical exercise at school.  
在学校锻炼时我们都穿运动鞋。
2. As is often the case, he came as well to help me with my experiment.  
像往常一样,他也来帮助我做实验。

3. There being no taxis, we had to walk.

没有出租车,我们只好步行。

4. The sunlight shines on the water ahead of us, making it difficult to see where the boat was going.

阳光照射在我们前方的水面上,使得难以看清那只船驶向何方。

5. What is clear is that its advantages were essential. 有一点清楚的是,其优点很关键。

### III. 语法填空

Who invented the ATM? There have been **1. arguments** (argue) for years over who should officially go down in history as “the inventor of the ATM”. Now the UK government is **2. clearly** (clear) saying it was James Goodfellow **3. who/that** invented the ATM.

Back in the mid-1960s, James Goodfellow was working **4. as** a development engineer for Glasgow firm Kelvin Hughes, and had been charged with inventing a way to enable customers to withdraw cash from banks when Saturday opening ended. “Most people **5. working** (work) during the week couldn’t get to the bank. They wanted a solution. The solution **6. was** (be) a machine which would issue cash on demand to a **7. recognised** (recognise) customer,” he said. “I set out **8. to develop** (develop) a cash-issuing machine, and make this a reality. I invented the pin (personal identification number) and an associated coded token (代币).”

The cash machine has become a world-conquering piece of technology. There are now 3 million ATMs worldwide, with **9. the** number forecast to hit 4 million by 2020. The good news for Goodfellow is that people are beginning to know him for his invention. Even **10. better** (good) for him, the Home Office has now officially recognised his other achievements.

## IV. 写作

### 第一节 应用文写作

随着科技的发展,移动支付成为潮流。有人认为移动支付方便快捷,有人认为它存在不足,比如手机没电时无法支付等问题。请说说你的观点,并举例说明。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:二维码 QR code

#### [参考范文]

In recent years, mobile payment has made its way into people’s life. It is supported by major companies. Thanks to their services, we can buy products without wallets. All we need are a cellphone and QR codes.

In my view, mobile payment is very convenient because it can save us the time of dealing with changes and keep a record of our financial report automatically. However, mobile payment has its problems. For example, sometimes the cellphone runs out of battery, unable to pay the bills.

Mobile payment is making a difference to our life with advantages outweighing disadvantages.

### 第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Sam, an eight-year-old boy, was very happy as his school was reopening. He was going to meet his friends after a long summer vacation. Another reason why he couldn’t wait to go to school was that he wanted to show his friends the brand-new (全新的) red pen which his uncle bought him from Singapore.

In the recess (休息) when he opened his pencil box to show the pen to his best friend Suresh, he found the pen was missing. He was in tears. He remembered that when he had taken it out to write on the maths notebook, Mark, who sat beside him, commented, “What a lovely pen! Where did you get it?”



Sam sat on his chair and cried. His friend Green couldn't bear to see Sam crying! So he went to him. Green knew that Sam had lost his pen.

Green said, "Do you know what, Sam?" Sam asked, "What?" "I have always wanted to be a detective." Sam, who was already upset, said, "So what?! It is none of my business? Boohoo...!!" Green said, "Sam, please take it easy. You have lost your pen and I want to be a detective. This will be my first case to solve a problem as a detective! The mystery of the red pen!" Green suggested that they should go looking for clues about the missing pen.

This cheered up Sam immediately and he agreed. He wiped his tears and brightened up. They went out of the class and Green asked, "Now, who was the first person you showed the pen to?" Sam said, "Mark." "Great! Let's go to the field," Green said.

Sam asked, a bit surprised, "Why do we have to go to the field?" Green said that they had to go to the field because Mark always played basketball in

the field and had his lunch there.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*So both of them walked to the field and found Mark was playing basketball. Green asked, "Did you take Sam's red pen?" "No, you can't blame me for that. I'm not the thief at all. I just saw it when Sam showed it to me. And I didn't know his pen was missing," Mark said, in a serious voice. "After the class was over, I came here. How could I take his pen?"*

*What Mark said sounded reasonable, so Sam and Green went off to look for other clues. Green, the detective, thought for a moment. Then he asked Sam, "Isn't it possible that the red pen fell onto the floor under your desk?" Sam didn't look for it carefully, so they hurried back to the classroom. There, just under Sam's chair lay his pen. So sometimes we may do wrong to our friends if we don't think carefully.*

## 读后续写技能养成

### 「技能概述」

1. 画面定格:指结尾时以环境描写结合动作和情感描写,融情于景的结尾方式,它就好像是电影镜头在结尾处渐渐拉远。
2. 续写技巧:描写环境时应搭配动作及情绪描写;用非谓语句或 with 复合结构来组句;将文章主旨融入其中。

### 「范例体悟」

Hearing my words, Mum, dumbfounded, threw her arms around me. Holding back the tears, I said, "Happy New Year!" That day I got enough hugs and kisses from my family to last a lifetime.

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

本例属于画面定格式结尾。结尾使用了非谓语句开头,同时借助动作、心理和对话描写,形成一幅妈妈拥抱孩子和孩子祝福妈妈新年快乐的温馨画面。

## 精彩结尾之画面定格

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. delighted *adj.* 开心的
2. touched *adj.* 受感动的
3. relieved *adj.* 感到宽慰的
4. grab *v.* 抓住
5. jump off 跳下
6. break down with tears 泣不成声
7. hold/gather... into one's arms 把……抱/搂在怀里
8. dash out 冲出去
9. grit one's teeth 咬紧牙关
10. gather one's strength 用尽全力
11. be overwhelmed with... 陷入/充满……
12. throw oneself into one's arms 投入某人的怀抱

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. She held her son tightly into her arms, with tears welling up in her eyes.

她紧紧地儿子抱在怀里,眼里涌出了泪水。

2. Tom jumped off the helicopter and ran towards Jane. She broke down with tears welling up in her eyes.

汤姆跳下直升机,向简跑去。她泣不成声,热泪盈眶。

3. Grabbing the camera, I dashed out and snapped valuable pictures of the escaping bear, making the trip unforgettable for the whole life.

我拿起相机,冲了出去,并拍下了逃跑的熊的珍贵照片,这让此次旅行终生难忘。

4. (2022·新高考I卷续写范文) To my surprise, David gritted his teeth, ignored the bleeding knee and gathered all his strength to stand up and dashed to the finishing line. "What a brave boy!" I sighed with teary eyes.

令我惊讶的是,大卫咬紧牙关,不顾膝盖流血,用尽全身力气站起来,冲向终点线。“多勇敢的孩子啊!”我眼泪汪汪地叹息道。

## 「技能达标」

### I. 完成句子

1. Standing at the door, Caroline watched the driver get back into the car, which slowly drove away and disappeared from her sight.

卡罗琳站在门口,看着司机回到车里,车慢慢开走了,从她的视线中消失了。

2. Overwhelmed with excitement, Paul said to Mum, "Tom gave me his favourite toy!" "What a special birthday present!" Mum laughed,

giving the brothers a tight hug.

保罗兴奋极了,对妈妈说:“汤姆把他最喜欢的玩具给了我!”“多么特别的生日礼物啊!”妈妈笑了,紧紧地拥抱了兄弟俩。

3. Dad put his hand on my shoulder and we sat looking at each other for a moment. Nothing else was said. Dad started the car and we went home. 爸爸把手搭在我肩上,我们坐着对视了一会儿。别的什么也没说。爸爸发动汽车,我们回家了。

### II. 用画面定格的技巧完成语段

[前文故事梗概:一只猴子抢走一个男孩(船长的儿子)的帽子并挂在船上桅杆的横梁上,男孩为夺回帽子,爬上横梁。险情之下,船长鼓励儿子跳入水中,最后男孩获救。]

*Seeing his son wet but alive, the captain breathed a sigh of relief. A burst of applause and cheers broke out from the crowd. Though he had an outward appearance of calm, his heart was pounding with nervousness. Never in his dream did he imagine he was so close to losing his beloved son. At the same time, he was proud of his son for making a wise choice in the face of danger. He kept his son company for a long while until his son felt better.* (用画面定格法设计一个结尾)

The moment the boy stood up, he threw himself into his father's arms, saying "Thank you, Dad!" in a gentle voice, with tears of gratitude and happiness rolling down his cheeks.

## 第四单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

### I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

#### A

Accommodation is available for Alt University students in a number of dorms (宿舍) for girls and boys as separated. These dorms are located on Matbey campus and are designed to provide a clean, comfortable, secure and civilised environment for the students.

#### ◆ FEE STRUCTURE

Room Type	Annual Rate (9 months)	Per Semester	Description
Single Room	\$ 3,750	\$ 1,875	Front view (14 m <sup>2</sup> )
Single Room	\$ 3,550	\$ 1,775	Front view (10 m <sup>2</sup> )
Single Room	\$ 3,450	\$ 1,725	Back view (14 m <sup>2</sup> )
Triple Room	\$ 2,250	\$ 1,125	Back view (30 m <sup>2</sup> )
Quadruple Room	\$ 2,450	\$ 1,225	Front view (32 m <sup>2</sup> )
Quadruple Room	\$ 2,100	\$ 1,050	Back view (30 m <sup>2</sup> )

Room fee includes accommodation, electricity, heating and water, Wi-Fi, cleaning service and laundry. Room charges and meal plans are for 9 months (one academic year) or 1 semester during the study period at the university. Once students register for the dorm or meal plan, it cannot be refunded (退款) in case of cancelling the stay or the meal service.

#### ◆ FACILITIES

##### Meal Plan:

Students can choose a meal plan including three courses in a day during their stay. For one semester

it costs \$ 810, and for two semesters \$ 1,620.

##### Cleaning Service:

The cleaning of dorm rooms and common spaces is provided by professional cleaners.

##### Cooking:

Residents can either dine at the in-house restaurant or cook their own meals at the common kitchen area.

##### Leisure Time Activities and Relaxation:

Music rooms and gyms are available for the use of students, free of charge.

##### Safety:

Alt University Dormitory offers students safe accommodation with its 24/7 security and 24/7 available staff.

#### ◆ HOW TO APPLY?

Students can prefer to stay at the dormitory for the first semester only or two semesters both (the whole academic year). In order to make a room reservation, you should fill in the online application form.

Due to limited space, applications will be processed on a first-come first-served basis. Overseas students, students living in the distance in the city and students with handicap will be given priority over the others.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了一大学的学生宿舍情况,包括费用、设施及申请方式。

- Xie Lei is going to spend \$ 1,200—\$ 1,400 on accommodation for the first semester in Alt University, what room type can she apply for?
  - Quadruple Room with front view.
  - Quadruple Room with back view.

C. Single Room with front view.

D. Triple Room with back view.

A 细节理解题。根据文中表格第三列 Per Semester 下的第五行“\$1,225”,且第五行对应的是“Quadruple Room”和“Front view (32 m<sup>2</sup>)”可知,Xie Lei 预计一学期在住宿上花费 1200 至 1400 美元,所以她可以申请阳面的四人间(Quadruple Room with front view)。故选 A。

2. Students living in the dorm can \_\_\_\_\_.

A. use the gym at a lower price

B. enjoy free heating and water

C. cook meals in a particular area

D. stop the meal plan anytime and get the money back

C 细节理解题。根据 **Cooking** 下的“Residents can either dine at the in-house restaurant or cook their own meals at the common kitchen area.”可知,住在宿舍的学生可以在公共厨房区域,即特定区域做饭。故选 C。

3. What may help a student successfully apply for a dorm?

A. Applying for accommodation for the whole academic year.

B. Sending the application form as early as possible.

C. Applying for a dorm in a distant campus.

D. Volunteering for the dorm cleaning job.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Due to limited space, applications will be processed on a first-come first-served basis.”可知,尽早寄出申请表将有助于学生成功申请宿舍。故选 B。

## B

The story of the most sustainable pair of jeans is also the story of a family whose members have dedicated their lives to denim innovation. It is the great-great-grandson of the family business founder who has brought Candiani and whole fashion industry to new heights by creating the first fully

biodegradable stretch denim.

Alberto Candiani, the current owner of Candiani, created the first fully biodegradable jeans using a plant-based yarn obtained from natural rubber. Once the innovative denim came to life, a brand-new pair of jeans was put to the test by being buried in forest land for six months. At the end of that period, Candiani's team discovered the fibers had almost fully broken down. The new technology is called Coreva. “These garments are extremely durable, but at the end of their life, you could send them back to us and we recycle them, or you could fertilise your vegetables with them,” Alberto Candiani said.

Jeans generate an environmental impact that has become a real global challenge. According to the United Nations Environment Programme, it takes around 2,000 gallons of water to make a typical pair of jeans. And during production, around 71 pounds of carbon dioxide are released. What's more, most jeans are manufactured with stretch denim made with plastic, which can take hundreds of years to degrade.

But by creating a circular model in which fabrics are biodegradable at the end of their lifecycle, tons of garments can be prevented from ending up in landfills. Candiani has not only achieved this by going plastic-free, but the manufacturer has also reduced water use by 75 percent and the use of chemicals by 65 percent. Although Candiani creates a product that is about double the price of traditional denim due to the higher labour and more manufacturing costs involved, business is booming. Not only has the company tripled its production, but its motto of “the greenest mill in the blue world” is credible.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了 Candiani 公司利用从天然橡胶中提取的植物纤维纱

线制成了第一条可完全生物降解的牛仔裤。

4. What is highlighted about Candiani in Paragraph 1?

- A. It is dedicated to clothing innovation.
- B. It has the most sustainable pair of jeans.
- C. It enters a new phase by creating greener fabrics.
- D. Its founder has taken industries to a new level.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段强调了 Candiani 进入了一个新的阶段,创造更环保的面料。故选 C。

5. What do we know about the innovative denim?

- A. It can be reused to nourish plants.
- B. It is made of unrecyclable materials.
- C. It uses Coreva to make it a little durable.
- D. It can last for six months under the forest land.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“‘These garments are extremely durable, but at the end of their life, you could send them back to us and we recycle them, or you could fertilise your vegetables with them,’ Alberto Candiani said.”可知,此类牛仔布可以重复使用来滋养植物。故选 A。

6. What's the function of Paragraph 3 in the passage?

- A. To explain the possible reasons for global warming.
- B. To show the bad effects of jeans on the environment.
- C. To raise people's awareness of environmental protection.
- D. To emphasise the value of the new denim by contrast.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可推知,第三段的作用是通过对比强调新牛仔布的价值。故选 D。

7. Which of the following can best describe

Candiani's innovation?

- A. Doing a hard but thankless job.
- B. Killing two birds with one stone.
- C. Putting the cart before the horse.
- D. Solving the problem one and for all.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘But by creating a circular model in which fabrics are biodegradable at the end of their lifecycle, tons of garments can be prevented from ending up in landfills. Candiani has not only achieved this by going plastic-free, but the manufacturer has also reduced water use by 75 percent and the use of chemicals by 65 percent.’”可推知,“一石二鸟”最能描述 Candiani 的创新。故选 B。

### C

Ahmad is the founder of Copia, which she describes as “a match-making website meets Uber for food recovery”. Companies use the Copia app to report when they have leftover food, what kind, and how much. When recipients (受助者) such as shelters, soup kitchens, and agencies first register with Copia, they indicate how many people they need to feed, on what days, and what kind of food they'll take. Copia makes a profit from the fees that companies pay to remove leftover food; the companies receive a tax write-off for their food donations.

How did Ahmad create Copia? As a senior at UC Berkeley, she found nearly 50 million Americans are at the risk of going hungry every day, while more than 133 billion pounds of eatable food is deserted each year. Ahmad started a student group that recovered food from the campus and distributed it to local non-profit organisations.

As rewarding as this was, the inefficiencies (低效) bothered her. One day, she got a call from the dining hall manager, who had 500 sandwiches left over from an event. She rented a car, loaded it with the food. She found takers for only 25 sandwiches and ended up giving out the rest at a nearby park.

“I remember thinking how cool it would be if people who had food could say, ‘Hey, we have stuff,’ and people who needed it could speak up, and then we could connect the two.”

After she graduated, Ahmad turned the group into Copia. It operates in 40 cities in Northern California and has served over 700,000 people. Its biggest success was this past Super Bowl: Copia recovered more than 14 tons of food which fed more than 23,000 people.

Despite her busy schedule, Ahmad tries to do one food pickup a week. “When you get to the shelter,” she says, “someone opens the door, sees all the food, and says, ‘If you hadn’t come today, 270 women wouldn’t have eaten.’ And that’s when I’m like, ‘This is why I do what I do.’”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了应用程序 Copia 的创始人及其运作方式。

8. Who will benefit from the Copia app?

- A. Hungry people living in Copia.
- B. Registered companies donating food.
- C. Charity organisations serving the poor.
- D. Food recovery companies removing food.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Companies use the Copia app to report when they have leftover food, what kind, and how much.”以及“Copia makes a profit from the fees that companies pay to remove leftover food; the companies receive a tax write-off for their food donations.”可知,捐赠食品的那些注册公司可以获益。故选 B。

9. What made Ahmad finally create the app?

- A. Too much food is wasted.
- B. Too many people go hungry.
- C. Her group’s work is rewarding.
- D. Her group’s work doesn’t go well.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“As rewarding as this was, the inefficiencies (低效) bothered her.”可知,她的团队工作不顺利,使她最后成立了

Copia。故选 D。

10. What is Ahmad really proud of?

- A. She founds Copia and makes a profit.
- B. She connects the companies and recipients.
- C. She helps hungry people go through the hard time.
- D. She enjoys the biggest success—the Super Bowl.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第三段及最后一段内容可知,Ahmad 真正为之骄傲的便是帮助饥饿的人们渡过难关。故选 C。

11. What’s Copia’s operating model?

- A. Consumer to consumer.
- B. Production to consumer.
- C. Business to consumer.
- D. Business to business.

C 推理判断题。通读全文可知,Copia 的操作模式是企业对消费者模式。故选 C。

#### D

Advice to “sleep on it” could be well founded, scientists say. After a good night’s sleep a problem that couldn’t be solved the night before can often appear more manageable, although the evidence until now has been anecdotal. But researchers at the University of Lübeck in Germany have designed an experiment that shows a good night’s sleep can improve insight and problem-solving.

“If you have some newly-got memories in your brain, sleep acts on these memories and restructures them, so that after sleep the insight into problems which you could not solve before increases,” said Dr Jan Born, a neuroscientist, at the university. To test the theory, they taught volunteers two simple rules to help them turn a string of numbers into a new order. There was also a third, hidden rule, which could help them increase their speed in solving the problem. The researchers divided the volunteers into two groups: half were allowed to

sleep after the training while the rest were forced to stay awake.

Dr Jan Born and his team noticed that the group that had slept after the training were twice as likely to figure out the third rule as the other group. “Sleep helped,” Born said in a telephone interview. “The important thing is that you have to have a memory representation in your brain of the problem you want to solve and then you sleep, so it can act on the problem.”

But Born admitted that he and his team don't know how restructuring of memories occurs or what governs it. Pierre Maquet and Perrine Ruby of the University of Liège in Belgium said the experimental evidence supports the anecdotal suggestions that sleep can help develop creative thinking. Although the role of sleep in human creativity will still be a mystery, the research gives people good reason to fully respect their periods of sleep, they added.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了良好的睡眠可以提高洞察力和解决问题的能力。

12. What does the underlined phrase “sleep on it” in Paragraph 1 probably mean?

- A. To get as much sleep as possible.
- B. To go on sleeping without being disturbed.
- C. To delay deciding something until the next day.
- D. To sleep till after the time you usually get up in the morning.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线短语后面的“After a good night's sleep a problem that couldn't be solved the night before can often appear more manageable”可知,睡个好觉后,前一天晚上无法解决的问题通常看起来更容易解决。由此可推知,画线短语表示“把问题推迟到第二天再解决”。故选 C。

13. What is the purpose of the experiment?

- A. To test problem-solving ability in sleep.

- B. To discover people's insight during sleep.
- C. To prove a good sleep helps solve problems.
- D. To discuss how to improve sleeping quality.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“But researchers at the University of Lübeck in Germany have designed an experiment that shows a good night's sleep can improve insight and problem-solving.”可知,这个实验的目的是证明良好的睡眠有助于解决问题。故选 C。

14. How did Jan Born and his team carry out the experiment?

- A. Through comparison.
- B. Through interviews.
- C. Through talks.
- D. Through imagination.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“The researchers divided the volunteers into two groups: half were allowed to sleep after the training while the rest were forced to stay awake.”以及第三段中的“Dr Jan Born and his team noticed that the group that had slept after the training were twice as likely to figure out the third rule as the other group.”可推知,Jan Born 和他的团队是通过比较的方法进行实验的。故选 A。

15. What can we learn about the experimental evidence?

- A. It helps scientists control memories.
- B. It explains the role of sleep in humans.
- C. It tells us the role of sleep is a mystery.
- D. It shows sleep does good to creative thinking.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Pierre Maquet and Perrine Ruby of the University of Liège in Belgium said the experimental evidence supports the anecdotal suggestions that sleep can help develop creative thinking.”可知,我们能从实验证据中了解到,睡眠对创造性思维有好

处。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Dreams come true through actions, and the best action is to set and achieve goals. Realising your goals is important. As you realise your goals, you will find relief from many problems that seem to trouble you. 16 With the following of plans and actions come achievements, success, and accomplishments.

Self-realisation is an understanding of your direction in life. If you understand your direction, you will see what you must do to achieve your goals.

17 This action of achievement makes you feel satisfied and complete. Even if only for a few hours, it still feels good.

18 If a person doesn't have goals, he often feels a lack of purposes, wondering what the purpose of life is. The real meaning of life is growth. When something is growing, it is alive. For us humans we stop physically growing around the age of 21, so after that milestone we can only continue to grow mentally, spiritually, and psychologically.

19 Having a purpose in life provides principles, ideas, motivation and a reason to live. If you have a purpose, you will feel competent and confident. This takes you to your goals since you focus on your objective in life.

20 For instance, a short-term goal is to walk around the block without stopping, then to run around the block without stopping, and then to increase the distance every time a goal is reached until the final goal of running a marathon is accomplished. If you start by trying to run the marathon, you will fail, but by starting with smaller goals, you will succeed.

- A. Goals are an essential part of life.
- B. When you reach a goal, you get realisation.
- C. The realisation of self will bring you satisfaction.
- D. But first you must set a goal, and then plans and

actions will follow.

E. As for the long-term goals, they are what will determine your life.

F. To keep growing we must have a purpose, whether we invent one or discover one.

G. The most important way to realise your goals is to set up short-term goals that work towards long-term goals.

答案:16~20 DBAFG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

I built a company when I was approached with a major opportunity that was going to take our company to the next level. Then something 21 happened. I received an email from the investor that read: "We're going to 22 ..."

I was crushed (崩溃的). The next few days I thought about this 23 and realised just how 24 I truly was. I thought maybe it was time to count my 25 and get another "real job". Luckily, I realised that having that thought meant I had a problem—my fear of 26. If I was going to keep moving forwards with my company, I'd have to 27 this fear of being rejected again. So, I 28 the Internet to help solve my problem and I found a game. The 29 of the game is to help you get over your fear of rejection by 30 seeking out rejection. I loved it. I 31 I would try it to help me remove this fear.

What came next was something I could have 32 imagined. As my rejection journey continued, I began to feel more and more 33 when asking for things, realising I could focus on the 34 factors.

In the process of my rejection journey, here is what I learned about rejection. Avoiding it doesn't 35 mean you avoid failure. Most people believe avoiding rejection is a good thing, but that's not true.



**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在失去一笔重要投资后开始害怕被人拒绝,为了克服自己的这种恐惧感,他通过玩一个游戏来让自己消除恐惧。在这种尝试下,作者逐渐变得无惧。

21. A. interesting            B. strange  
C. unexpected            D. different  
C 作者遇到一个重要的机会,但从下文内容可知,投资者最后决定不再投资他的公司,这是作者没想到的(unexpected)。故选 C。
22. A. quit                    B. invest  
C. fail                      D. lose  
A 投资者打算停止(quit)投资;不能说投资者打算失败或失去。故选 A。
23. A. condition            B. case  
C. accident                D. defeat  
D 作者的公司失去了一笔重要的投资,这是一次失败(defeat)。故选 D。
24. A. thankful            B. discouraged  
C. fortunate               D. considerate  
B 根据语境可知,接下来的几天里,作者应是感到沮丧(discouraged)。故选 B。
25. A. investment          B. losses  
C. money                   D. days  
B 作者静下心来,觉得自己是该清点损失(losses)了。故选 B。
26. A. rejection            B. destruction  
C. loss                      D. failure  
A 根据下文内容可知,此处指的是害怕拒绝(rejection)。故选 A。
27. A. ignore                B. hate  
C. minimise                D. overcome  
D 作者认为自己必须想办法克服(overcome)这种恐惧。故选 D。
28. A. responded to        B. appealed to  
C. turned to                D. led to  
C 作者求助于(turned to)网络。故选 C。
29. A. purpose              B. outcome  
C. rule                      D. origin

A 根据下文内容可知,此处指的是这个游戏的目的(purpose)。故选 A。

30. A. consequently        B. accidentally  
C. primitively            D. intentionally  
D 该游戏通过有意(intentionally)寻找被拒绝的机会来帮助玩家克服自己的恐惧。故选 D。
31. A. admitted            B. decided  
C. suggested              D. explained  
B 作者决定(decided)试用它来帮助自己消除这种恐惧。根据语境可知选 B。
32. A. never                 B. ever  
C. almost                  D. nearly  
A 接下来所发生的事是作者从未(never)想到的。故选 A。
33. A. fearless              B. powerful  
C. ashamed                D. embarrassed  
A 随着拒绝之旅的继续,作者逐渐变得越来越无惧(fearless)。故选 A。
34. A. undesirable         B. predictable  
C. controllable            D. considerable  
C 作者意识到自己应该关注那些可控的(controllable)因素。故选 C。
35. A. firmly                B. frequently  
C. necessarily              D. hopefully  
C 避免遭到拒绝未必(not necessarily)就意味着能避免失败。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

*Along the River During the Qingming Festival* is a painting **36. by** the Song Dynasty artist Zhang Zeduan. The painting is 24.8 centimetres in **37. height** (high) and around 5.28 metres long. The countryside and the crowded city are the two main parts in the picture, with the river **38. running** (run) through the entire length. The right part is the rural area of the city. There are crop fields and rural folk. A country path broadens into a road and **39. joins** (join) with the city road. The left half is the urban area, **40. which** eventually leads into the city centre.

Many economic activities can be seen in this area. Zhang Zeduan's painting is celebrated as **41.** the most famous work of art from the Song Dynasty. However, there are copies of the famous painting. An early copy, generally **42.** considered (consider) to be the most similar to the original, is said to be made during the Yuan Dynasty. Another known remake (改编版) **43.** was painted (paint) during the Ming Dynasty. This copy has a length of 9.87 metres, **44.** longer (long) than the original. Another version by five Qing Dynasty court painters was presented to the Qianlong Emperor. This version was **45.** later (late) moved, along with many other handicrafts, to the Taipei Palace Museum.

#### V. 写作(共两节, 满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

“传承中华优秀传统文化, 满足人民日益增长的精神文化需求”是党的二十大报告中的重要内容。假如你是李华, 想邀请你的英国朋友莱斯莉(Leslie)一起参加你校举行的“弘扬中华传统文化——戏曲进校园”展演活动。请给她写一封英文邮件, 内容包括:

1. 活动时间、地点;
2. 活动内容。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 行文连贯, 语篇完整;

3. 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。

##### [参考范文]

Dear Leslie,

How are things with you?

Now, I have a piece of good news to share with you. There will be an activity about traditional Chinese operas at 2:00 pm on July 1. Knowing that you are interested in traditional Chinese culture, I'd like to invite you to join us. The activity will be held on the playground in our school and all the teachers and students will attend. On that day, a culture show and many wonderful opera performances will be put on. It's a chance for you to learn more about

traditional Chinese culture, and I am sure it will broaden your horizons and that we'll have a great time.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jack, a clerk at the local bank, was wandering alone on the street. It was a cold, silent winter night. His mind was on his wife Linda, who had been in a car accident two months ago and was now lying in a hospital bed, waiting for more money for her operation. Jack had sold everything he had, and he had tried his best to borrow money from all the people and banks he could. But the real world is cruel.

A large amount of money was still needed. To Jack, it would mean a great deal of suffering to see his wife die without any help. "I have only one option left," Jack said to himself. Then he went to the bank, his workplace, again. For several days, he observed the bank and planned a theft.

The next day, he went to work as usual. Everything seemed normal; he joked with his workmates and helped his clients as he always did. But no one noticed that he had brought a bigger suitcase to work, instead of the small one he always carried. At 5:00 pm, the bank closed, and the clerks and the guards had all gone home. However, at that moment, Jack was in the bathroom, and the guards didn't notice him, of course. When the noises coming from the street were replaced by silence and everything turned dark, Jack came out from the bathroom. He first cut the lines of the alarms and monitors with tools from his new suitcase.

He was all too familiar with the equipment

since he had been working there for 8 years and had been studying the security system for the past 30 days. Using a special key and some other tools, he then easily opened the doors of the safes. The bank's security system wasn't very good, which allowed Jack to take a lot of money. Several minutes later, Jack left the bank with a heavy bag filled with money.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*After Jack had been out from the bank for a while, the alarms began to ring. The police arrived at the bank very quickly, only to find no one there. The next day was a really special day for the town, which was filled with newspapers and TV reporters*

*covering the strange theft. The clerks at the bank were busy discussing the case, of course, including Jack. The police could only promise to catch the thieves as soon as possible, even though no clues had been found yet.*

*But the most unlucky man was the manager of the bank, an old man. He seemed to be the only person to blame and was removed from his position. At last, with enough money for her operation, Jack's wife was saved. However, Jack felt guilty about the manager of the bank. He could not forget what he had done to the old man. His guilt deepened as time went by. Finally, he turned himself in to the police and accepted his punishment.*

## Unit 5

## Into the unknown

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Comprehending

## 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读文章, 获取课文的主要信息, 了解玛雅文明的辉煌成就, 找出可能导致玛雅文明没落直至消失的原因;
3. 观看视频, 了解过去人们对地震、日食、雷电等自然现象的误解, 同时了解对这些自然现象的科学解释;
4. 观看图片, 学习图片中有关现象或事件的英文表达, 并基于图片和已有知识, 谈论自己对四种未解之谜的认识, 理解相关理论, 拓宽视野, 对探索未知产生兴趣。

## 自主式预习

## 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

## (一) 核心词汇

1. civilisation *n.* 文明(社会)
2. abandon *v.* 离弃, 逃离
3. dismiss *v.* 拒绝考虑, 否定
4. expansion *n.* 扩大; 增加
5. bury *v.* 将……埋在下面
6. ruin *n.* 残垣断壁, 废墟
7. turn... into... 把……变成……
8. lead to 导致, 引起
9. deal with 处理, 对付; 涉及
10. play a part in 在……中起作用
11. add to 增添, 增加
12. fall into ruin (因无人照料而) 衰落, 败落
13. compare... and... 比较……和……

14. find out 找出; 查明

15. so far 到目前为止

16. correspond to 和……相一致, 相符合

17. apply... to... 把……应用于……

## (二) 阅读词汇

1. tropical *adj.* 来自热带的; 产于热带的
2. astronomy *n.* 天文学
3. canal *n.* 运河
4. downfall *n.* 衰败
5. intrigue *v.* (因奇特或神秘而) 激起……的兴趣, 引起……的好奇心
6. pyramid *n.* 金字塔
7. cyclone *n.* 气旋; 旋风
8. megadrought *n.* 超级干旱
9. on top of 除……之外; 在……之上
10. all the more 更加
11. at one's peak 在……的巅峰时期

## 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	An incredible discovery of Maya cities by a teenager.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• William from Canada thought he had made an incredible discovery from his study of ancient <b>1. star charts.</b></li> <li>• He found that the locations of the 117 known Maya cities <b>2. correspond to</b> the positions of the stars. He believed he had spotted an unknown Maya city buried deep in the <b>3. jungle.</b></li> </ul>

续表

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2 (Para. 2 — Para. 3)	The <b>4. achievements</b> of Maya civilisation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Maya built impressive <b>5. palaces and temples</b>.</li> <li>• The Maya had an amazing understanding of <b>6. mathematics and astronomy</b>.</li> <li>• The Maya had a true and complicated <b>7. writing system</b>.</li> <li>• By 700 AD, Maya civilisation was at its peak.</li> </ul>
Part 3 (Para. 4 — Para. 5)	The possible <b>8. reasons</b> for the downfall of Maya civilisation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Maya people themselves may have played a part in their downfall.</li> <li>• The <b>9. natural disasters</b> may have led to the decline of Maya civilisation.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 6)	Mysteries left by Maya civilisation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Maya left <b>10. various mysteries</b> for later people to solve.</li> <li>• The rise and fall of Maya civilisation must also leave us thinking about our own past, present and future.</li> </ul>

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What did William find in his study?
  - He found several new stars.
  - He found that the locations of the 117 known Maya cities are consistent with the positions of the stars.
  - He found some Maya cities buried deep in the jungle.
  - He found some stars suddenly disappeared.
- Which of the following made the Maya calendar very accurate?
  - Their understanding of mathematics and astronomy.
  - Their advanced technology.
  - Their rich knowledge of physics.
  - Their extraordinary intelligence.
- What happened to the Maya in the early 16th century?
  - Most Maya people were killed by Europeans.
  - The houses of the Maya people were burned by Europeans.
  - Most Maya people died of an infectious disease.
  - Only a few Maya people survived.

答案: 1~3 BAD

### II. 课文语法填空

As well as experts, ordinary people

1. are intrigued (intrigue) by Maya civilisation. Why? Maya civilisation has been surrounded by mystery since its rediscovery in the 19th century. The Maya built **2. impressive** (impress) palaces and temples. **3. What** is most extraordinary about these complex structures is how they were built without the advanced technology. The Maya had an amazing understanding of mathematics and astronomy. Furthermore, they had a true writing system, **4. which** is so complicated that, so far, no one has been able to interpret it **5. completely** (complete). By 700 AD, Maya civilisation was at its peak.

With time going by, Maya civilisation began to decline. The Maya people **6. themselves** (they) may have played a part in their downfall. **7. By** changing the landscape, the Maya people may have unknowingly reduced their ability to deal with natural disasters. The natural disasters may have led to the decline of the Maya. It is believed **8. that** the droughts were the main reason why Maya civilisation began to collapse at different rates in different places. These droughts would have caused food shortages, conflicts and, ultimately, the downfall of the cities.

The Maya left various mysteries for later people **9. to solve** (solve). Meanwhile, the rise and fall of Maya civilisation must also leave us **10. thinking** (think) about our own past, present and future.

### III. 阅读升华

1. How many factors are mentioned in the passage which may have contributed to the downfall of Maya civilisation? And what are they?

Two. The Maya people and natural disasters.

2. What lessons can we learn from the downfall of Maya civilisation?

Human beings must live in harmony with nature and keep the balance of nature instead of destroying it.(回答合理即可)

## 课后素养评价(二十一)

### I. 阅读理解

Almost a decade ago, researchers at Yale University launched a global database called Map of Life to track biodiversity distributions across the planet. Now, the team added a new feature to the database that predicts where species currently unknown to scientists may be hiding.

In 2018, ecologist Mario Moura of the Federal University of Paraíba in Brazil teamed up with Yale ecologist Walter Jetz, who took the lead in the initial creation of the Map of Life. The pair set out to identify where 85 percent of Earth's undiscovered species may be. For two years, the team collected information about 32,000 vertebrate (脊椎动物) species. Data on population size, geographical range, historical discovery dates and other biological characteristics were used to create a computer model that estimated where undescribed species might exist today.

The model found tropical environments in countries including Brazil, Indonesia, Madagascar, and Colombia house the most undiscovered species. Smaller animals have limited ranges that may be inaccessible, making their detection more difficult. In contrast, larger animals that occupy greater geographic ranges are more likely to be discovered, the researchers explain.

"It is striking to see the importance of tropical forests as the birthplace of discoveries, stressing the urgent need to protect tropical forests and address the need of controlling deforestation rate if we want a chance to truly discover our biodiversity," said Moura.

The map comes at a crucial time when Earth is facing a biodiversity crisis. It was reported that there was a 68 percent decrease in vertebrate species populations between 1970 and 2006 and a 94 percent decline in animal populations in the America's

tropical subregions. "At the current pace of global environmental change, there is no doubt that many species will go extinct before we have ever learned about their existence and had the chance to consider their fate," Jetz said.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍一个名为生命地图(Map of Life)的全球数据库跟踪生物多样性的分布情况,并预测科学家目前未知的物种可能隐藏在哪里。

1. What can be learned about the Map of Life?

- A. It only tracks biodiversity distributions.  
B. It was initially created by Mario Moura.  
C. It predicts where undiscovered species might exist.  
D. It managed to locate 85% of the undiscovered species.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Now, the team added a new feature to the database that predicts where species currently unknown to scientists may be hiding.”可知,生命地图可以预测未被发现的物种在哪里生存。故选C。

2. Which factor makes animals easier to discover?

- A. Location.                      B. Species.  
C. Size.                              D. Population.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Smaller animals have limited ranges that may be inaccessible, making their detection more difficult. In contrast, larger animals that occupy greater geographic ranges are more likely to be discovered, the researchers explain.”可知,体型更大的动物更容易被发现。故选C。

3. What does the underlined word “address” mean in Paragraph 4?

- A. Tackle.                              B. Ignore.  
C. Maintain.                              D. Postpone.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“It is striking to see the importance of tropical forests as the birthplace of discoveries, stressing the

urgent need to protect tropical forests”和后面的“if we want a chance to truly discover our biodiversity”可知,要发现生物多样性,就需要保护热带森林并解决控制森林砍伐率的问题。所以画线词 address 为“处理,解决”之意。故选 A。

4. What can we infer from the last two paragraphs?

- A. Tropical animal populations have slightly declined.
- B. The Map of Life is significant to protecting biodiversity.
- C. Tropical forests are the birthplace of many extinct species.
- D. Many species will undoubtedly go extinct even if discovered.

B 推理判断题。根据最后两段,尤其是最后一段中的“The map comes at a crucial time when Earth is facing a biodiversity crisis.”可推断,生命地图对保护生物多样性很重要。故选 B。

## II. 七选五

To lose weight, you don't need to suppress your appetite. Eat often but eat healthily, and you will make it.

1, they often skip mealtimes to avoid any more calories for the day. This, however, is an extremely counterproductive(适得其反的) action. Your body's metabolism can become confused when you do not eat meals on a regular basis. 2, your body thinks that it needs to store energy away for later. This is a simple survival mechanism that ensures you do not starve to death in an emergency situation. It can also result in fat retention(脂肪沉积). So even if you do not have time for an entire meal, it can help to have some nuts, a boiled egg, or some raw vegetables.

Eating more often is also a great way to keep your blood sugar from crashing throughout the day. 3. You may want to take a hint from the eating habits of toddlers. Toddlers are known for their consistent snacking. They often refuse to eat an entire meal, yet, graze on snacks(吃零食) throughout the day.

Grazing can help you avoid a hungry feeling, and helps to keep your blood sugar stable. 4. It can be difficult, at first, to tell when you are truly hungry, or just eating out of habit. Many individuals eat for comfort, or out of boredom. Part of losing weight is learning to listen to your body. Eat healthy snacks or small meals throughout the day. 5.

- A. Unless you want to eat junk food
- B. When people are eager to lose weight
- C. If you do not eat when you are hungry
- D. It gives your body a steady stream of energy
- E. Being hungry should not be a part of any diet plan
- F. Don't depend on three planned meals to satisfy you
- G. It is hard to stick to a healthy diet but in the long run it can make a difference

答案:1~5 BCDEF

## 【微点写作】科技说明文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 配备辅助设备,该机器人有能力处理老年人可能遇到的紧急情况。

Equipped with supportive aids, this robot is qualified to deal with emergencies the elderly may encounter.

2. 此外,该笔由极其坚固的材料制成,这可以保护笔在掉落到地面时免受损坏。

Furthermore, the pen is made of extremely strong materials, which can protect the pen from the damage when it falls onto the ground.

3. 更好的是,它写起来如此流畅,以至于它能有助于使我们的书法更好。

Better still, so smoothly does it write that it can contribute to making our handwriting better.

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,感知课文的语言特点,把握课文的结构和脉络,学习并掌握与话题相关的词汇和表达;
3. 在理解课文的基础上,合理思考和分析玛雅文明消失背后的原因,培养探索精神。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They were **intrigued** by what he had experienced during the journey. 激起……的兴趣
2. The miners were **buried** alive when the tunnel collapsed. 将……埋在下面
3. This **pyramid** is the oldest of the Seven Wonders of the World. 金字塔
4. The road and the **canal** run parallel to each other. 运河
5. The company's **downfall** over the last several decades was dramatic. 衰败
6. A large number of churches fell into **ruin** after the revolution. 废墟

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>civilisation</u> <i>n.</i> 文明(社会)	<u>civilised</u> <i>adj.</i> 文明的;有教养的
	<u>civilise</u> <i>v.</i> 教化,开化
<u>dismiss</u> <i>v.</i> 拒绝考虑,否定	<u>dismissal</u> <i>n.</i> 解雇;摒弃
	<u>dismissive</u> <i>adj.</i> 轻蔑的,鄙视的
<u>expansion</u> <i>n.</i> 扩大;增加	<u>expand</u> <i>v.</i> 扩大;扩展
	<u>expansive</u> <i>adj.</i> 广阔的;广泛的;全面的
	<u>expansively</u> <i>adv.</i> 广阔地
<u>astronomy</u> <i>n.</i> 天文学	<u>astronomical</u> <i>adj.</i> 天文学的,天文的;极其巨大的
	<u>astronomer</u> <i>n.</i> 天文学家

#### III. 补全短语

1. correspond to 和……相一致,相符合
2. apply... to ... 把……应用于……
3. all the more 更加
4. deal with 处理,对付;涉及
5. add to 增添,增加
6. at one's peak 在……的巅峰时期
7. turn... into ... 把……变成……
8. lead to 导致,引起
9. fall into ruin (因无人照料而)衰落,败落
10. on top of 除……之外;在……之上

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:过去分词短语作后置定语  
Based on this, he believed he had spotted an unknown Maya city buried deep in the jungle.  
据此,他相信自己发现了一座深埋于丛林深处的未知的玛雅城市的位置。
2. 句型公式:with+宾语+宾语补足语  
It contained more than 800 characters, with some signs representing animals, people and objects and others representing syllables.  
它包含 800 多个字符,一些符号代表动物、人和物,另一些则代表音节。
3. 句型公式:so... that...  
It was a writing system so complicated that, so far, no one has been able to interpret it completely.  
它是一个如此复杂的文字系统以至于到目前为止还没有人能够完全解读它。
4. 句型公式:whatever 引导让步状语从句  
Whatever the reasons, Maya civilisation largely disappeared within the deep jungle.  
不管原因是什么,玛雅文明几乎消失在了丛林深处。



## 任务型课堂

### 1. dismiss v. 拒绝考虑, 否定; 解雇, 开除; 让……离开

(教材原文) Although his theory has been **dismissed** by scholars, it shows how powerful the secrets of Ancient Maya civilisation are among people.

尽管学者们否定了他的理论, 但是这表明古玛雅文明的奥秘在人们心中是如此有影响力。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

We **dismissed** the cook because her cooking was so poor.

我们解雇了厨师, 因为她的厨艺太差了。

He just laughed, and **dismissed** my proposal as unrealistic.

他只是笑了笑, 认为我的建议不切实际, 拒绝考虑。

Bob **was dismissed for** stealing bicycle parts.

鲍勃因偷自行车零件而被解雇。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) dismiss sb./sth. 解雇某人/拒绝接受某物</p> <p>dismiss ... _____ ... 把……视为……而不予考虑</p> <p>dismiss sb. _____ ... 因……解雇某人</p> <p>dismiss sb. from 从……解雇某人</p> <p>dismiss sb./sth. from one's mind 试图忘记某人/某物</p> <p>dismiss sth. out of hand 不考虑某事</p> <p>(2) dismissal n. 解雇; 摒弃</p>
探究结论	(1) as; for

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Jones was dismissed (dismiss) because he was often late for work.

② Mr Yang just laughed, and dismissed the question as unimportant.

③ The servant was dismissed by the Greens for being lazy and dishonest.

④ If you are late again, you will be dismissed from your job.

(2) 完成句子

She claimed she was unfairly dismissed from her post.

她声称她被不公平地免职。

### 2. abandon v. 离弃, 逃离

(教材原文) But the greatest mystery of all is what caused the Maya to **abandon** most of their great cities.

但最大的谜团是什么导致玛雅人抛弃了其绝大部分的大城市。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The crew **abandoned** the sinking ship after a hard struggle.

经过一番艰苦的搏斗之后, 船员们逃离了正在下沉的船。

The cruel man **abandoned** his wife and children.

那个狠心的男人抛弃了他的妻子和孩子。

After her husband died, Mrs Smith **abandoned herself to** grief.

史密斯太太的丈夫去世后, 她悲痛欲绝。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) abandon sb./sth. 抛弃某人/某物</p> <p>abandon (doing) sth. 放弃(做)某事</p> <p>abandon oneself _____ sth. 沉迷于某种情感</p> <p>(2) abandon n. 放任; 放纵</p> <p>with abandon 放纵地; 尽情地</p> <p>(3) abandoned adj. 被抛弃的, 被遗弃的; 放纵的</p>
探究结论	(1) to

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① In order to save his daughter, he abandoned escaping (escape) from the burning house himself.

② He gave most of his money to groups that help the

poor, sick, disabled and abandoned (abandon) children.

③ The building has been abandoned (abandon) for a number of years, and it needs to be repaired.

④ Even if you meet with difficulties, you shouldn't abandon yourself to despair.

(2) 完成句子

We are scared to abandon ourselves to our feelings in case we seem too weak or out of control.

我们不敢放纵自己的情感,以免显得太过软弱或缺乏自制。

### 3. expansion n. 扩大;增加

(教材原文) huge **expansion** of...

……大规模的扩张

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The computer industry has **expanded** greatly over the last decade.

计算机行业在过去的十年里急剧扩张。

We have plans to **expand** the business **into** the European market.

我们计划把业务拓展到欧洲市场。

Tom later **expanded on/upon** his initial statement. 汤姆后来对他最初的声明作了进一步说明。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ <i>v.</i> 扩大;扩展 expand into 扩展到;扩充成 expand _____ 进一步阐述;详谈;补充 expand to 拓展到 (2) <i>expansive adj.</i> 广阔的;广泛的;全面的
探究结论	(1) expand; on/upon

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① These policies will cause the creation and expansion (expand) of tourist attractions all over the country.

② With time going by, the society expanded into a worldwide organisation.

③ I am quite satisfied with your explanation, so there is no need to expand on/upon it.

(2) 完成句子

The rapid expansion of cities can bring many jobs to people.

城市的迅速扩大能给人们带来许多工作机会。

### 4. whatever 引导让步状语从句

(教材原文) **Whatever the reasons**, Maya civilisation largely disappeared within the deep jungle.

不管原因是什么,玛雅文明几乎消失在了丛林深处。

[句式分析] 句中的 **Whatever the reasons** 是 **Whatever** 引导的让步状语从句,此处省略了 **be** 动词。此句还可以写成 **No matter what...**

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

**Wherever he goes**, he takes his digital camera with him. (让步状语从句)

无论走到哪里,他都带着他的数码相机。

We will do **whatever we can** to save the boy. (宾语从句)

我们将做我们能做的任何事情来救那个男孩。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) <b>whatever/whichever/however/whoever/whenever/_____</b> ... = no matter what/which/how/who/when/where..., 表示“不管……,无论……”,引导让步状语从句。 (2) <b>whatever/whichever/whoever</b> 可以引导名词性从句。
探究结论	(1) <b>wherever</b>

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Whatever methods parents choose to adopt, they need to teach their kids that money doesn't grow on trees!

② Whatever project he works on is always successful.

③ However great the difficulty is, we will get it over.

④ Whoever will get full marks first will be given

the prize.

(2) 句型转换

① Whatever he says, you won't listen to him.

→ No matter what he says, you won't listen to him.

② Whenever the disaster happens, the soldiers will appear.

→ No matter when the disaster happens, the soldiers will appear.

## 课后素养评价(二十二)

### I. 单词拼写

1. With the development of astronomy (天文学), people know more about the fundamental theory of climate, atmosphere and the globe.
2. The arrival of canals (运河) was of great value to many industries.
3. Much to our disappointment, the terrible earthquake left the whole city in ruins (废墟) in a short time.
4. My teacher always reminds me that under no circumstances should I abandon (放弃) my learning goals once I set them.
5. As far as I'm concerned, we can dismiss (拒绝考虑) their objections.
6. As we all know, many of the universities' problems are from rapid expansion (扩大).
7. It's well known that the Chinese civilisation (文明) is one of the oldest in the world.
8. Their house was buried (将……埋在下面) by a landslide.

### II. 短语填空

fall into ruin; be applied to; deal with; correspond to; (be) based on; lead to; add to; turn... into...; play a part in

1. Most of the buildings fell into ruin because of the big earthquake last week.
2. The company tried its best to design products that correspond to the needs of the customers.
3. Learning to say no is one big factor to deal with some pressure from all of your friends.
4. After several years' hard work of the villagers, the bare mountain was turned into the one covered with green grass and trees.

5. Based on a true story, the movie touched the audience greatly.
6. The bad weather added to our difficulty in completing the work.
7. New technology is being applied to almost every industrial process.
8. Officials have said lightning may have played a part in the accident.
9. It's reported that the new law have led to a reduction in fuel consumption in the US.

### III. 完成句子

1. So rude is the waiter to the customers that it's likely/possible that he will be dismissed.  
这个服务员对顾客如此粗鲁,以至于他有可能被解雇。
2. Whatever your dream is, you should work hard to realise it.  
不论你的梦想是什么,你都需要努力去实现它。
3. So far, no one has found out why the canal is buried.  
到目前为止,还没有人找出运河被掩埋的原因。
4. The fact that he was curious about everything contributed to his invention.  
他对一切都感到好奇的事实促使他有了自己的发明。
5. The old man sat in his chair, (with) his eyes looking at the ceiling.  
老人坐在椅子上,眼睛看着天花板。

### IV. 完形填空

Have you seen people who take pictures of food for more than 10 minutes before eating? My friend Stella is such an example. Every time we went to a

restaurant, she would not take a bite until all the dishes we 1 were on the table. Then she would spend five minutes in 2 the dishes in a seemingly random but in fact 3 order. Then the most important part: taking pictures. After that, she would choose one of the 4 and click in the filter (滤镜) app. The food eventually looked 10 times more delicious than it really was, but we had no 5 to really enjoy it—it all went cold. Actually Stella's real life is much less elegant. For example, she hates to wash the dishes, so she leaves them in the sink for days.

Many people care too much about others' opinions and try too hard to 6 others. They find it hard to be 7 and to accept themselves, and thus they are afraid to show their 8 life on social media. What they are trying to prove is 9 what they lack in reality. But this will not bring any 10 to reality, as they still 11 the same old pattern of life.

If they really want an elegant life, they should put more 12 into achieving it 13 fabricating (伪造) it. Being more confident, 14 themselves and trying their best to be better are much more meaningful than 15 their life on social media.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讲述了现在一些人在社交媒体上过度美化自己的生活,作者认为这是不自信、不敢接受真实的自己造成的。如果他们想要优雅地生活,他们应该更加努力,而不是制造假象。

- A. ordered                      B. served  
C. offered                      D. prepared  
A 根据语境可知,此处是指作者及其朋友点的菜被端上桌。故选 A。
- A. cooking                      B. washing  
C. setting                      D. collecting  
C 根据下文的“Then the most important part: taking pictures.”可推测,她要把菜品摆好来拍照。故选 C。
- A. messy                      B. arranged  
C. casual                      D. missed  
B 根据语境可知,此处应选择一个和 random 相反的词。故选 B。

- A. dishes                      B. restaurants  
C. tables                      D. pictures  
D 根据上文的“taking pictures”可知,此处是原词复现。故选 D。
- A. chance                      B. choice  
C. excuse                      D. reason  
A 根据上下文内容可知,此处是指因为有人拍照,食物变凉了,大家错过了享受美食的机会。故选 A。
- A. comfort                      B. please  
C. inspire                      D. discourage  
B 根据上文的“Many people care too much about others' opinions”可知,此处指取悦别人。故选 B。
- A. independent              B. generous  
C. responsible              D. confident  
D 根据下文的“thus they are afraid to show their 8 life on social media”可知,他们觉得接受自己很困难,由此推测,他们不自信。故选 D。
- A. real                      B. secret  
C. peaceful                      D. healthy  
A 根据下文的“what they lack in reality”可知,此处指真实的生活;real 和 reality 是同根词。故选 A。
- A. rarely                      B. hardly  
C. exactly                      D. nearly  
C 根据下文的“what they lack in reality”可知,此处是指人们在社交媒体上展示的东西,恰好是自己现实生活中所缺乏的东西。故选 C。
- A. difficulty                      B. change  
C. guidance                      D. harm  
B 根据下文的“as they still 11 the same old pattern of life”可知,他们的现实生活并没有改变。故选 B。
- A. question                      B. dislike  
C. doubt                      D. follow  
D 根据空前的“still”和空后的“the same”可推断,此处是指他们依然按原来的方式来生活, follow 意为“遵循”,符合语境。故选 D。
- A. effort                      B. ambitions  
C. feelings                      D. money  
A 根据常识可知,想要优雅地生活,就必须付出努力。故选 A。
- A. other than                      B. more than  
C. rather than                      D. less than  
C 根据语境可知,上下文存在对比关系。故

选 C。

14. A. identifying      B. accepting  
C. persuading      D. amusing

B 根据上文的“They find it hard to be 7 and to accept themselves”可知,此处意为“接受”,accept 是原词复现。故选 B。

15. A. simplifying      B. ruining  
C. beautifying      D. worsening

C 根据第一段中的“After that, she would choose one of the 4 and click in the filter (滤镜) app.”可知,作者的朋友是在美化自己的生活,beautifying 意为“美化”,符合语境。故选 C。

### 【微点写作】科技说明文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 但是,最令你惊讶的是以下新功能。

However, what amazes you most is the following new function.

2. 你可以想象乘坐高铁在中国旅行是多么有趣。

You can imagine how interesting it is to travel around in China by high-speed rail.

3. 你需要做的就是购买这道菜需要的所有东西,然后告诉它如何烹饪这顿饭。

All you need to do is buy all the things that are needed for the dish and then tell it how to cook the meal.

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务及目标

- 总结、归纳名词性从句的类型和表意功能,并能够在真实语境中加以运用;
- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 通过阅读与单元主题相关的语篇,学习更多与单元主题相关的词汇和表达,进一步理解面对未知事物或现象时的正确做法;
- 能听懂与探索人类大脑及睡眠奥秘相关的话题内容,并能恰当地运用功能性表达询问信息、解释信息;
- 具有探索未知时不能盲目冒险、还应考虑安全问题的意识,学会主动且理性地探索求真。

## 自主式预习

### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- They made their **getaway** along a pavement on a stolen motorcycle.      逃走
- The army was forced to **retreat** after suffering heavy losses.      后退
- He forced himself to **subdue** and overcome his fears.      克制
- The forces were sent to complete a secret mission in an **uncharted** place.      地图上没有标明的
- She had started to **delve** into her father's distant past.      探究
- He **shrank** back against the wall as he heard them approaching.      退缩

### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>disappearance</u> n. 消失,不见	disappear v. 消失,不见
	appear v. 出现,呈现
	appearance n. 到来,出现;外表,外观
<u>sensible</u> adj. 明智的,理智的,合理的	sense n. 感觉;意识 v. 意识到
<u>understandable</u> adj. 可以理解的;易懂的	understand v. 理解,明白
<u>curiosity</u> n. 好奇,好奇心	curious adj. 好奇的
	curiously adv. 好奇地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>unknown</u> <i>adj.</i> 未知的; 不出名的	<u>known</u> <i>adj.</i> 出了名的; 已知的
<u>investigation</u> <i>n.</i> 调查	<u>investigate</u> <i>v.</i> 调查

### III. 补全短语

1. make a getaway 逃跑, 逃走
2. run for one's life 逃命
3. check out 调查, 检查
4. test the waters 试水, 试探
5. steer clear of 避开……; 从……处脱身
6. throw oneself into 积极投入到……中去
7. think twice 再三考虑, 慎重考虑
8. shrink from 避免做, 不愿做
9. set out 动身踏上(漫长的)旅途
10. look into 调查(问题)

### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语; a time when...  
Often, making a quick getaway is a sensible and understandable natural response, dating back to a

time when our ancestors were running for their lives from dangers, such as wild animals, lightning and fire.

通常情况下, 快速逃离是一种明智且可以理解的自然反应, 这可以追溯到我们的祖先从野兽、闪电和火灾等危险中逃命的时代。

#### 2. 句型公式: 部分否定

However, not everyone chooses to follow this instinct.

然而, 并不是每个人都选择遵循这种本能。

#### 3. 句型公式: there is no need for sb. to do sth.

While there is no need for us to shrink from new situations, we should always look into things first and consider our options.

虽然我们没有必要在新情况面前退缩, 但我们总应该首先调查一番, 再考虑我们的选择。

#### 4. 句型公式: 强调句型

Interestingly, it is the back part of the brain that is involved with our vision.

有趣的是, 正是大脑的后部与我们的视觉有关。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. check out 调查, 检查; 结账后离开

(教材原文) So while you may be tempted to **check out** a strange object or to test the waters of a new situation, it can be safer to steer clear of the unfamiliar.

因此, 当你可能忍不住想要查看一个陌生的物体或摸清新环境的情况时, 避开不熟悉的东西可能会更安全。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The accountant **checked out** the bills carefully.

会计仔细核对账单。

Bob **checked out** of the hotel early in the morning.

鲍勃一大早就从旅馆退房了。

**Check in** two hours before the flight.

请于起飞前两小时办理登记手续。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	check _____ 登记入住; 检票登机 check off 在……上打钩(表示选择、完成、正确等) check through 检查; 核对; 校订 check on sb./sth. 核实, 检查(是否一切正常)
探究结论	in

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

①(2023·新高考Ⅱ卷) They talk to the flood of international tourists and to visiting Chinese zookeepers who often come to check on the pandas.

② If you want to stay at a hotel, you have to check in.

③ One by one she checked them off on her register.

(2)完成句子

Guests must check out before noon, or they will be charged for the day.

旅客必须于中午前办理完手续离开,否则将收取全日费用。

## 2. set out 动身踏上(漫长的)旅途;从……开始,从……着手

(教材原文) In more recent times, Norwegian explorer, Roald Amundsen endured one of the most hostile environments on Earth when he **set out** into uncharted territory to reach the South Pole.

在更近的时期,挪威探险家罗阿尔德·阿蒙森为了到达南极出发前往未知领域,忍受了地球上最恶劣的环境之一。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The city police **set up** roadblocks to check passing vehicles.

该市警察设置了路障检查过往车辆。

Armed with the information you have gathered, you can **set about preparing** your business plan.

= Armed with the information you have gathered, you can **set out to prepare** your business plan.

有了你收集的信息,你就可以开始着手准备你的商业计划了。

The bank **set aside** 1.1 billion dollars to cover bad debts from business failures.

银行留出 11 亿美元来抵消因企业倒闭而产生的坏账。

It is not necessary to **set down** the rest of the oration.

没有必要把这篇演说的其余部分写下来。

The clock said four minutes past eleven when we **set off**.

我们出发时,时钟显示 11 点 4 分。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	set _____ 建立,创立
	set about 开始,着手
	set _____ 留出……用于;置……于不顾
	set _____ 记下;写下
探究结论	set _____ 出发,动身;使爆炸,引爆
	up; aside; down; off

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①Emerson would always set down new ideas that occurred to him.

②After resting a few minutes longer, they set out/off again.

③He urged the participants to set aside minor differences for the sake of achieving peace.

④The company was set up in 1851, and moved to the new building in 2011.

(2)一句多译

地震过后,人们开始重建自己的家园。

①After the earthquake, the people set about rebuilding their homes. (set about)

②After the earthquake, the people set out to rebuild their homes. (set out)

## 语法探究

### 复习名词性从句

#### 「语法感知」

①Intrigued by Maya civilisation from a very young age, 15-year-old Canadian William Gadoury **thought** he had made an incredible discovery from his study of ancient star charts.

②Through comparison, he found **that** the locations of the 117 known Maya cities correspond to the positions of the stars.

③Based on this, he **believed** he had spotted an unknown Maya city buried deep in the jungle.

④Although his theory has been dismissed by scholars, it shows **how** powerful the secrets of Ancient Maya civilisation are among people.

⑤It isn't difficult to see **why**.

⑥Extending south from parts of **what** we now know as Mexico into Central America, Maya civilisation

has been surrounded by mystery since its rediscovery in the 19th century.

⑦ **What** is most extraordinary about these complex structures is **how** they were built without the use of wheels, metal tools or even animal power.

⑧ The fact **that** Maya society was technologically primitive makes its achievements all the more incredible and mysterious.

⑨ But the greatest mystery of all is **what** caused the Maya to abandon most of their great cities.

⑩ **Why** Maya civilisation collapsed remains a mystery.

⑪ Some research seems to indicate **that** the Maya people themselves may have played a part in their downfall.

⑫ By changing the landscape in this way, **it** is possible **that** the Maya people unknowingly reduced their ability to deal with natural disasters.

⑬ Research also suggests **that** those natural disasters may have led to the decline of the Maya.

⑭ Some recent studies have found **that** there were far fewer tropical cyclones than usual between 700 AD and 1000 AD.

⑮ Many scientists believe **that** these droughts were the main reason why Maya civilisation began to collapse at different rates in different places.

1. 以上例句中⑦⑩⑫含有主语从句;⑦⑨含有表语从句;①②③④⑤⑥⑪⑬⑭⑮含有宾语从句;⑧含有同位语从句。

2. 例句①②③⑧⑪⑫⑬⑭⑮含有 **that** 引导的名词性从句,其中句①③省略了引导词 **that**。

3. 例句⑥⑦⑨含有连接代词 **what** 引导的名词性从句,连接词在从句中作主语或宾语。

4. 例句④⑤⑦⑩含有连接副词 **how**, **why** 引导的名词性从句,连接词在从句中作状语。

5. 例句⑫为 **that** 引导的主语从句,其中 **that** 从句是真正的主语, **it** 作形式主语。

## 「语法精讲」

### 一、名词性从句概述

主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句在复合句中的作用相当于名词,因此这四种从句统称为名词性从句。它们有下列相同之处:

#### 1. 关联词大抵相同。

(1)从属连词: **that**, **whether**, **if**

(2)连接代词: **who**, **what**, **which**, **whom**

(3)连接副词: **when**, **where**, **why**, **how**

#### 2. 需用陈述语序。

#### 3. 四种从句一般不用逗号和主句分开。

### 二、名词性从句的分类

#### 1. 主语从句

(1)主语从句在复合句中作主句的主语,它的位置与陈述句基本结构中的主语相同。引导主语从句的关联词有从属连词 **that**, **whether**; 连接代词 **who**, **what**, **which**, **whom**; 连接副词 **when**, **where**, **why**, **how** 等。

**That** colours influence our moods has been proved.

颜色能影响我们的情绪这一点已经得到了证明。

**Whether** our team will win the match remains to be seen.

我们队能否赢得比赛还得等等看。

**What** they are looking for is their missing dog.

他们正在寻找的是他们失踪的狗。

**Who** will take the place of Mr Yang is still unknown.

谁将代替杨先生尚不清楚。

**When** they are leaving for Kunming by plane has been decided.

他们什么时候乘飞机去昆明已经定下来了。

(2)为了保持句子平衡,可用 **it** 作形式主语,真正的主语从句放后面。

常见的 **it** 作形式主语的结构:

① **it** + **be** + 形容词 + **that** 从句。常用于这种结构的形容词:

important 重要的	necessary 必要的
right 正确的	wrong 错误的
strange 奇怪的	(un)likely(不)可能的
certain 明确的	clear 清楚的
obvious 明显的	natural 自然的

**It's not immediately clear whether** the financial crisis will soon be over.

财政危机是否能很快过去还不能立刻清楚。

② **it** + **be** + 名词 + **that** 从句。常用于这种结构的名词:

a pity 遗憾	a shame 遗憾
a fact 事实	an honour 荣誉
a wonder 奇迹	

**It is a great pity that** you can't go abroad for



further education.

你不能去国外深造真是遗憾。

③it + be + 过去分词 + that 从句。常用于这种结构的过去分词:

said 说	believed 认为;相信
reported 报道	hoped 希望
decided 决定	suggested/advised 建议
ordered 命令	thought 认为
announced/declared 宣布	

**It is said that** the boy has a great gift for language.

据说这个男孩在语言方面很有天赋。

④it + 不及物动词 + that 从句。常用于这种结构的动词:

happen 发生	occur 发生
-----------	----------

**It happens that** he has heard of the story.

他碰巧听说过这个故事。

## 2. 宾语从句

(1)在句子中起宾语作用的从句称为宾语从句。宾语从句的从属连词有 that, whether, if;连接代词主要有 who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whomever, whatever, whichever 等;连接副词主要有 when, where, why, how, whenever, wherever, however 等。

Many people **believe that** teaching children music makes them smarter, better able to learn new things.

许多人都认为教孩子音乐使他们更聪明,能更好地学新东西。

### 名师点拨

动词短语后的宾语从句

有些动词短语后可以带宾语从句,如 find out, point out, work out, turn out, make sure, make up one's mind, keep in mind 等。

Have you **found out when** the next train to Beijing will leave?

你已经弄清楚下一趟去北京的火车什么时候离开了吗?

(2)为了平衡句子,可用 it 作形式宾语,真正的宾语从句放后面。常用的结构:

① make it possible/easy/difficult... that... 使……可能/容易/难……

② find/feel it necessary... that... 发现/觉得……有必要

③ make it clear that... 说清楚……

④ make it a rule that... 使……成为习惯

⑤ take it for granted that... 认为……是理所当然的

⑥ bring it to one's attention that... 使……注意……

⑦ see to it that... 务必/一定……

The Internet **makes it possible that** we can work at home.

因特网使我们在家里工作成为可能。

(3)不可省略 that 的宾语从句。

①宾语从句被其他成分分隔时。

We don't doubt, in any case, **that** he keeps his promise.

我们相信在任何情况下他都会遵守自己的诺言。

②当有两个或两个以上的宾语从句时,第一个 that 可以省略,但后面的 that 不能省略。

Scientists **find (that)** the number of wild goats has increased and **that** a new species has appeared. 科学家们发现野山羊的数目增加了,而且出现了一个新种群。

## 3. 表语从句

在句子中起表语作用的从句称为表语从句。

(1)表语从句的连接词有从属连词 that, whether; 连接代词 who, whom, which, what, whoever, whomever, whatever, whichever;连接副词 when, where, why, how 等。

The trouble **is that** I have no one to ask for help. 问题是我无人可求助。

(2)系动词 be + 表语从句。

表语从句多用在系动词 be 的后面。

The problem **is that** so many people don't have enough water to drink in Africa.

问题是在非洲有那么多人没有足够的水喝。

(3)连系动词 + 表语从句。

连系动词 seem, look, appear, sound, taste, feel, remain 等后接表语从句。

The black clouds are gathering. It **looks as if** it is going to rain.

乌云密布。看起来要下雨了。

## 4. 同位语从句

在句子中起同位语作用的从句称为同位语从句。它用以说明或解释所修饰的名词的内容。

(1)that 引导的同位语从句。

从属连词 that 引导同位语从句,其所修饰的常见名词:

belief 信念,相信	doubt 怀疑
explanation 解释	hope 希望
wish 愿望	idea 想法,主意
dream 梦想	news 新闻;消息
message/information 信息	truth 事实
possibility 可能性	statement 论断
thought 想法	promise 承诺
question/problem 问题	reason 原因
suggestion/advice 建议	order 命令
fear 恐惧	warning 警告

There is **no doubt that** human activity caused global warming.

毫无疑问的是人类活动导致了全球变暖。

**The news that** he resigned got around.

他辞职的消息传开了。

(2)可用 whether, what, how, when, why 等引导同位语从句。

They're talking about **the problem whether** we can land on the moon.

他们正在讨论我们能否登上月球这个问题。

### 名师点拨

①that 引导的名词性从句

从属连词 that 在主语从句中不作任何成分,只起连接作用,无意义,不能省略。

②whether 引导的主语从句

从属连词 whether 在主语从句中不作成分,只起连接作用,意为“是否”。

③连接代词 what, who, which, whom 在名词性从句中常作主语、宾语、表语,起连接作用,有意义。

④连接副词 when, where, why, how 等引导的名词性从句,连接副词在从句中常作状语,起连接作用,有意义。

## 「语法冲关」

### I. 用适当的连接词填空

1. That she gets on well with her classmates is known to us all.
2. What impressed me most during the trip to Guilin

was its beautiful scenery.

3. It is hoped that the measures will improve air quality in our city.
4. A huge advantage of digital books is that they can be continually updated.
5. It's clear that an equal distribution of the educational resources is what the public need badly nowadays.
6. Shirley looks very upset. This is because she failed in the maths examination this morning.
7. There is growing evidence that smoking does harm to smokers and the people around them.
8. Then arose the question where we were to get the machines needed.
9. Suddenly it hit me how difficult it was for a woman to get a medical education at that time.
10. The news excited all of us that our son was admitted to Peking University.

### II. 句型转换

1. At that time, his discovery had a great effect on many people's lives. (改为主语从句)  
→ At that time, what he discovered had a great effect on many people's lives.
2. Because the weather was terrible, all the flights today were cancelled. (改为表语从句)  
→ All the flights today were cancelled. That was because the weather was terrible.
3. Martin promised to return my digital camera in good condition. (改为同位语从句)  
→ Martin made a promise that he would return my digital camera in good condition.
4. People hope that his dream of becoming a pilot will come true. (改为主语从句)  
→ It is hoped that his dream of becoming a pilot will come true.
5. He happened to be out when I visited him yesterday. (改为主语从句)  
→ It happened that he was out when I visited him yesterday.

## 课后素养评价(二十三)

### I. 词语填空

make a getaway; date back to; run for one's life;  
check out; steer clear of; set out; amount to;  
throw oneself into; shrink from; look into

- We ran for our lives when we heard that a lion had escaped from its cage.
- You'd better steer clear of being associated with such people.
- He is involved in stealing the vase dating back to the Ming Dynasty.
- The state announced a clear-cut policy and set out to carry it through.
- The government has set up a commission (委员会) to look into those crimes.
- The four jumped into a car parked outside the bank and made a getaway.
- Consumer spending on sports-related items amounts to \$9.75 billion.
- He is not the sort of person to shrink from taking risks.
- During the war, some people threw themselves into this country's liberation actively.
- Could you keep your room key until you check out?

### II. 单句语法填空

- The young man longs to explore (explore) the creatures undersea.
- It seems that he is interested in the robot shown in the shop.
- The patients depend on the doctors to give them a better treatment.
- What they really need is understanding after they lost the final match.
- At present, we still have difficulty in working out a better plan for the project.
- The problem is how we can persuade our father to give up smoking.
- It is likely that he will realise his dream of becoming a diver.
- The fact that the epidemic (流行病) had been controlled made us feel relaxed.
- After the investigation (investigate), they drew

the conclusion that the man was innocent.

- You are not able to buy whatever you want for lack of money.

### III. 阅读理解

What if we had the power to control time, instead of moving from the past to the present to the future? What if we could jump, loop and travel through time in a machine? What if we could go wherever and whenever we pleased?

This ability would allow us to witness historic wonders, change decisions and see people from the past. We could right wrongs and stop wars from starting.

The mysterious puzzle of time has kept people debating its nature for hundreds of years. Science fiction writers have turned it into imaginative stories. Some scientists have even attempted to explain it using maths. This maths tries to make the dream of time travel come true.

The scientist Albert Einstein said that time and space are one thing. He called it "spacetime". Einstein said that there are three dimensions in space: height, width and depth. A scientist named Hermann Minkowski added time as a fourth dimension.

Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel. The first is relativity. The idea of relativity is that the force of gravity causes space to bend, which causes time to twist. The second idea focuses on special relativity. The idea is that a traveller moving super-fast through flat spacetime will enter the future. Einstein considered time "relative" because it is measured based on where we are on Earth or in space.

Stephen Hawking is a famous scientist. He believes that a time machine will never be built. If it were possible, he thinks we would already know. If a time machine could be built, how come no one from the future has invaded us?

The first science fiction story with this theme is *The Clock That Went Backward* by Edward P. Mitchell, which was published in 1881. Since then, thousands of books, films and television shows have

explored the idea of time travel, in which some tools such as phones, watches, photographs and old books take travellers backward and forward.

Will time travel ever happen? Who knows? The most important is to keep your eyes open and have a sense of wonder.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了关于时间旅行的一些情况。

1. What is the author's purpose in writing the first paragraph?

- A. To show time and space are connected.
- B. To show people's interest in time travel.
- C. To draw readers' attention to time travel.
- D. To make people believe time travel is possible.

**C 写作意图题。**第一段提到,如果我们有能力控制时间,而不是从过去到现在再到未来会怎么样?如果我们可以在机器中跳跃、循环和穿越时间会怎么样?如果我们无论何时想去就可以去任何地方会怎么样?由此可知,本段的目的是吸引读者关注时间旅行。故选 C。

2. Which of the following statements could Einstein agree with?

- A. Time travel is possible in the future.
- B. People can't move faster than light.
- C. Time travel is against scientific rules.
- D. Spacetime is not a real thing in theory.

**A 细节理解题。**根据第五段中的“Einstein introduced two ideas that have led to theories about the possibility of time travel.”可知,爱因斯坦介绍了两个促成时间旅行可能性理论的想法,据此可推断,爱因斯坦可能同意某天时间旅行会成为现实。故选 A。

3. What is the last but one paragraph mainly about?

- A. The first science fiction story.
- B. Some tools used in time travel.
- C. Edward P. Mitchell, the pioneer.
- D. Different works about time travel.

**D 段落大意题。**根据倒数第二段的内容可知,时间旅行主题的第一部科幻故事是由 Edward P. Mitchell 写的,于 1881 年出版。从那以后,成千上万的书籍、电影和电视节目探索了时间旅行的概念。由此可知,本段主要介绍了关于时间旅行的不同作品。故选 D。

4. What is the writer's attitude towards time travel?

- A. Cautious.
- B. Approving.
- C. Doubtful.
- D. Hopeful.

**D 观点态度题。**最后一段提到,时间旅行会不会发生?谁知道?最重要的是要睁大眼睛,并有一种奇迹感。由此可知,作者对于时间旅行是充满希望的。故选 D。

### 【微点写作】科技说明文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 印刷术是许多年前在中国发明的,它使得中国文化传播遍世界成为可能,这也是那时对世界的巨大贡献。

The printing was invented in China many years ago, making it possible for the Chinese culture to be spread all over the world, which was also a great contribution to the world at that time.

2. 这项发明以及其他三项发明正在中国博物馆展出,每个人都可以在那里看看它们。

This invention as well as the other three ones is being displayed in the Chinese Museum, where everyone can have a look at them.

3. 此外,如果使用得当,该机器人能够很好地照顾老人和病人。

Additionally, if used appropriately, the robot is capable of taking good care of the elderly and the sick.

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，理解课文内容，了解人类深海探索的历史、发现以及中国在深海探索方面取得的成就；
3. 阅读和理解马塞尔·普鲁斯特关于探索世界的方式的名言，对探索世界的方式形成自己的理解。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

##### (一)核心词汇

1. drilling *n.* 钻探；勘探
2. vol *n.* (书的)卷，册
3. substance *n.* 物质
4. be equivalent to 等于；相当于
5. continue to do 继续做

##### (二)阅读词汇

1. shipwreck *n.* 失事的船；沉船
2. archaeological *adj.* 考古学的；考古的
3. furthermore *adv.* 此外；而且；不仅如此
4. notable *adj.* 显要的；显著的；值得注意的
5. millimetre *n.* 毫米

6. upwards *adv.* 向上，朝上
7. coral *n.* 珊瑚
8. barreleye *n.* 管眼鱼
9. trench *n.* 海沟
10. stack *v.* (使)整齐地堆起；摞起
11. vessel *n.* 船；舰
12. hold a record of 保持……的纪录
13. beyond the reach of …… 够不到；超出……的能力
14. set sail 启航
15. open up 打开；开放；使(机会、可能性)等出现，使产生
16. as with 跟……一样
17. offer a window into 为……打开一扇窗
18. final frontier 最后疆域

#### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	Little land on Earth is left unexplored.	Three million <b>1. shipwrecks</b> under waters represent that over the centuries humankind has explored Earth's furthest <b>2. corners</b> . There is little land on our planet left unexplored.
Part 2 (Para. 2 — Para. 4)	Exploration of the oceans leads to <b>3. discoveries</b> in various scientific fields.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Many <b>4. archaeological finds</b> are made in shallow waters near the coast like the ancient Roman city of Neápolis.</li> <li>• Amazing <b>5. biological discoveries</b> are also being made. Extraordinary creatures in the deep ocean like bone-white <b>6. coral</b> and the barreleye have been found.</li> <li>• <b>7. Natural resources</b> have also been found in the oceans like “fire ice”. The exploration is giving scientists a greater understanding of how the sea bed was formed, as well as helping identify areas for <b>8. deep-sea drilling</b>.</li> </ul>
Part 3 (Para. 5)	Humankind is entering a new age of <b>9. oceanic</b> discovery.	Through closer international scientific, economic and cultural cooperation, humans are working together to open up our planet's final <b>10. frontier</b> .

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- According to Paragraph 1, what can we learn?
  - We have more detailed maps of the ocean.
  - Long ago, Europeans had the detailed maps of the ocean.
  - We haven't fully explored the ocean.
  - We are not interested in exploring the ocean.
- Which of the following limits our exploration of the ocean?
  - Our limited knowledge.
  - Lack of curiosity.
  - Our limited money.
  - Lack of the government's support.
- How deep can light reach beneath the waters?
  - Less than 100 metres.
  - More than 300 metres.
  - More than 500 metres.
  - Less than 200 metres.
- What did China find under the South China Sea?
  - The barreleye.      B. Fire ice.
  - The *Esmeralda*.      D. A ruin of a city.

答案: 1~4 CADB

### II. 课文语法填空

Over centuries, humankind has explored almost all land of the earth, **1. including** (include) the oceans. The exploration of the oceans leads to discoveries in various **2. scientific** (science) fields.

Many archaeological finds **3. are made** (make) in shallow waters near the coast like the ancient Roman city of Neápolis. There are extraordinary creatures in the dark zones of the oceans. There is still life **4. to be found** (find), even around the deep-sea volcanic openings. The oceans are **5. a** valuable source of natural resources, some of **6. which** are completely new to us. For example, China has discovered an ice-like substance, known **7. as** "fire ice" under the South China Sea. Besides, China's underwater vessels **8. have been exploring** (explore) waters at depths of thousands of metres. The ocean **9. depths** (deep) are hard to reach due to the tough environment. However, through international **10. cooperation** (cooperate), humankind is bound to open up our planet's final frontier.

### III. 阅读升华

- Why are the creatures in the deep oceans strange?
 

Because light can't reach the deep zones of the oceans, pressure is enormous and it is extremely cold.
- Why do you think humankind has been exploring the oceans though it is tough?
 

Because there are enormous extraordinary creatures and valuable resources which can benefit humankind a lot in the long run. (回答合理即可)

## 课后素养评价(二十四)

### I. 单词拼写

- Although the coral (珊瑚) is motionless, it is alive.
- The system can print electronic features smaller than a hundredth of a millimetre (毫米) wide from a variety of materials.
- Try stretching your legs and pulling your toes upwards (向上).
- I don't want to go there, and furthermore (而且), I have no time to do so.
- My immune system isn't sensitive because it has got used to the substance (物质).
- It took me about half an hour to stack (摞起) the

boxes in the corner of the room.

- Is that vol (册) still in print?
- Is there a French word that is exactly equivalent (等同的) to the English word "home"?
- This book had a notable (显著的) impact on American modern literature and art.
- After months of drilling (钻探), oil was found off the coast.

### II. 短语填空

be familiar to; as with; in addition; be known as; set out; lead to; more than; up to

- The heroes and their deeds that he described in his report are familiar to us.

2. As with all new ideas, this one met with many people's opposition.
3. His income totalled up to 10,000 *yuan* this month.
4. We're sure you'll be known as an artist in the near future.
5. They set out on the last stage of their journey.
6. It had been raining three days in a row, leading to a serious flood.
7. There are many shops around the railway station. In addition, there are some newly-built hotels there.
8. More than two hundred teachers volunteered to go to the remote mountainous areas to teach.

### III. 完成句子

1. Present at the meeting were some experienced teachers.  
出席这次会议的是一些有经验的老师。
2. The house looked as if it was about to fall down.  
这房子看起来好像就要倒塌似的。
3. Given his age, he was remarkably active in the activity.  
考虑到他的年龄,在这次活动中他已是相当活跃了。
4. There are 50 students in our class, most of whom are from the country.  
我们班有 50 名学生,大部分来自农村。
5. It is hoped that the terrible disease will soon be controlled.  
人们希望这种可怕的疾病会尽快得到控制。

### IV. 七选五

If you dream of mastering two languages, make the process more fun and more successful with these tips:

Find your motivation. Wish you had paid more attention in high school Spanish classes? 1 Perhaps all you wanted out of the class was a good grade, or to meet a graduation requirement. These factors are “extrinsic (外在的) motivators”, but the most successful language students are “intrinsically” motivated, sincerely devoted to their own learning. So pick a language you are excited to use, whether on a vacation in Spain or on your couch watching Spanish soap operas.

2 It might take some trial and error, but you'll figure out which resource works best for you. Mobile apps combine your learning with games, so if you could easily spend hours playing on your

phone, you'll likely find learning similarly addictive.

3 Excellent textbooks, grammar guides, and workbooks with answer keys let you see how you're doing.

Don't sweat your mistakes. Kids get it wrong all the time. They'll say, for instance, that they “goed” to school and played with other “childs”. Although kids often misapply the general rules, they gradually pick up on the patterns and use them in new situations. 4

Try less. It seems contrary to common sense. 5 So rather than stare fixedly at a vocabulary list, run your eyes over the words while you listen to pure music. Or turn on subtitles (字幕) in the language you're learning even as you watch TV in English. But don't devote your full attention to them—just enjoy the show and absorb what you can. The less you stress, the more you'll be able to learn.

- A. Pick your tools.
- B. Do experiments.
- C. And don't forget books.
- D. Consider why you didn't.
- E. That is what successful language learners do.
- F. But bury yourself in your chosen language as much as you can.
- G. But you're more likely to pick up a language when you aren't highly focused.

答案:1~5 DACFG

### 【微点写作】科技说明文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 没必要担心机器人的应用会让人类变得懒惰。

It's unnecessary to worry that the application of robots will get human beings lazy.

2. 毫无疑问,这种智能机器人的发明显示了我国科学技术的飞速发展。

There's no doubt that the invention of this kind of intelligent robot shows the rapid development of science and technology of our country.

3. 人们使用互联网的时间越多,他们与其他人相处的时间就越少。

The more time people use the Internet, the less time they spend with other people.

# Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

## 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 在理解课文内容的基础上,加深对单元主题意义的认识,拥有敢于探索未知、科学求真的积极态度;
3. 通过学习范文,掌握书面介绍某个未解之谜的文体结构和写作特点,并运用本单元所学语言知识,通过调查描述一个未解之谜。

## 自主式预习

### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. There's absolutely no regulation of cigarettes to make sure that they don't include poisonous **substances**.  
物质
2. He said he had not discussed the matter with her. **Furthermore**, he had not even contacted her.  
此外,而且,不仅如此
3. **Vol Two**, subtitled "The Lawyers", will also attract considerable attention. (书的)卷,册
4. Eight kilometres is roughly **equivalent** to five miles.  
等同的;等值的;相当的
5. Oil pollution could damage the ecology of the **coral** reefs. 珊瑚
6. One second of arc (弧) movement is one thirtieth of a **millimetre**. 毫米
7. Place your hands on the table with the palms (手掌) facing **upwards**. 朝上
8. There is a five-thousand-mile **trench** at the bottom of the ocean. 海沟
9. There are several pill bottles **stacked** on top of the fridge. 摞起
10. The **vessel's** safety equipment was not in good order. 船

### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
archaeological <i>adj.</i> 考古学的;考古的	archaeology <i>n.</i> 考古学;考古
	archaeologist <i>n.</i> 考古学家

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>notable</u> <i>adj.</i> 显要的;显著的;值得注意的	note <i>n.</i> 笔记;便条;注释 <i>v.</i> 注意;特别提到;指出
	noted <i>adj.</i> 知名的
	notably <i>adv.</i> 特别;尤其
<u>drilling</u> <i>n.</i> 钻探;勘探	drill <i>v.</i> 钻(洞),钻(孔); 训练;练习 <i>n.</i> 钻;操练; 训练

### III. 补全短语

1. be equivalent to 等于;相当于
2. open up 打开;开放;使(机会、可能性)等出现,使产生
3. hold a record of 保持……的纪录
4. beyond the reach of ……够不到;超出……的能力
5. as with 跟……一样
6. at the rate of 以……的速度
7. more than 多于,超过;不仅仅
8. be known as 作为……出名
9. continue to do 继续做
10. set sail 启航

### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:介词短语位于句首引起的完全倒装  
Among these is the Esmeralda, the earliest wreck from the age of the European exploration of Asia.  
其中就包括“埃斯梅拉达”号,它是欧洲国家探索亚洲时代留下的最早的沉船。
2. 句型公式:given...; it+be(+a/an)+n.+that...  
Given our limited knowledge, it is perhaps no



surprise that exploration of the oceans continues to lead to discoveries in various scientific fields. 鉴于我们的知识有限,探索海洋可以继续带来许多科学领域的新发现也许就不奇怪了。

### 3. 句型公式: wait to be done

Fragments of the past lying deep beneath the oceans are still waiting to be discovered.

过去的碎片深深地埋在海洋的下面,仍在等待着被发现。

### 4. 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句

In these waters, more than 200 metres deep, where light cannot reach, are extraordinary creatures that appear as if they are straight out of science fiction.

在200多米深、阳光照不到的水域里,有很多非同寻常的生物,它们看起来就像是从小说中走出来的。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. equivalent *adj.* 等同的;等值的;相当的

(教材原文) In the very deepest ocean trenches that are more than 8,000 metres below the surface, the pressure is **equivalent** to 50 aeroplanes stacked one on top of another.

在海平面以下8 000多米的最深的海沟里,压强相当于50架飞机相互堆叠在一起。

#### 一感 / 读句子感悟用法

Breathing such polluted air **is equivalent to** smoking ten cigarettes a day.

呼吸这种被污染的空气等于每天抽十支烟。

Two plus three **is equal to** five.

二加三等于五。

Don't you believe in **equality** between men and women?

难道你不相信男女平等吗?

We agreed to divide the money **equally** between everyone.

我们同意把钱平分给每个人。

#### 二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be equivalent _____ 等于;相当于
	(2) equal <i>adj.</i> 相同的;能胜任的 <i>n.</i> 同等的人;相等物 <i>v.</i> 等于;比得上
	be equal to (doing) sth. 等于/能胜任(做)某事
	A equal(s) B in... A在……方面比得上B/与B相匹敌
	have no equal / without equal } 无人可比,无可匹敌
	(3) equality <i>n.</i> 平等;相等
	(4) equally <i>adv.</i> 相等地;相同地;均等地,平均地

续表

探究结论	(1) to
------	--------

#### 名师点拨 ■■■■

表示“能胜任……”的其他常见表达方式:

be up to, be fit for, be qualified for.

#### 三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 语法填空

① One kilometre is equivalent to two *li*.

② You should be positive and cheerful, for your mental health is equal to your physical health.

③ In my opinion, he is equal to accomplishing (accomplish) the tough task, for no one equals (equal) him. In other words, he is without equal.

④ He believes that everyone should fight for liberty and equality (equal).

⑤ All these techniques are equally (equal) effective.

(2) 一句多译

我可以作为一名志愿者带领参观者参观画廊,我确信我能胜任这项工作。

① I can serve as a volunteer to guide the visitors around the gallery and I am convinced that I'm equal to the job. (equal)

② I can serve as a volunteer to guide the visitors around the gallery and I am convinced that I'm fit for the job. (fit)

③ I can serve as a volunteer to guide the visitors around the gallery and I am convinced that I'm qualified for the job. (qualified)

④ I can serve as a volunteer to guide the visitors around the gallery and I am convinced that I'm up to the job. (up to)

## 2. notable adj. 显要的;显著的;值得注意的

(教材原文) Most **notable** of these is China's discovery of an ice-like substance, known as "fire ice", under the South China Sea.

其中最引人瞩目的是中国在南中国海下发现的冰状物质,被称为“可燃冰”。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The town **is notable for** its ancient harbour.

这座小镇因其古老的港口而出名。

He sat there **taking notes of** everything that was said.

他坐在那里,记下了被说的每一件事。

It should be **noted** that essays submitted late will not be accepted.

应该注意的是迟交的论文将不予接收。

Please **note down** what the teacher said.

请把老师说的话记下来。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be notable _____ 因……出名 (2) note <i>n.</i> 笔记;便条;注释 take notes of 记下 (3) note <i>v.</i> 注意;特别提到;指出 note _____ 写下,记下
探究结论	(1) for (3) down

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The village is notable for its eight-hundred-year-old tree.

② The points he made in the speech are all quite notable (note).

(2) 完成句子

Look around and note down/take notes of everything you can see.

四处看看,记录下你能看到的一切。

## 3. given... 鉴于,考虑到

(教材原文) **Given our limited knowledge**, it is perhaps no surprise that exploration of the oceans

continues to lead to discoveries in various scientific fields.

鉴于我们的知识有限,探索海洋可以继续带来许多科学领域的新发现也许就不奇怪了。

[句式分析] 本句中的 Given our limited knowledge 是介词短语。given 意为“鉴于,考虑到”。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

**Given the present situation**, you'd better not go to crowded places.

鉴于目前的情况,你最好不要去人多的地方。

**Given that conflict is inevitable**, we need to learn how to manage it.

鉴于冲突是不可避免的,我们需要学习如何处理它。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) given _____ ... 意为“鉴于,考虑到”,其后接句子。 (2) 类似的结构有: seeing (that) 因为,由于;鉴于 supposing that 假如 providing/provided that 假定,假如
探究结论	(1) that

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Given (give) her health, I didn't invite her to the get-together.

② Given (give) that motivation is so central to our lives, what do we truly understand about how it operates and about its role in our lives?

③ Maybe we should throw a party, seeing (see) that it's Helen's birthday party.

(2) 完成句子

Given their lack of experience, they've done a good job.

鉴于他们缺乏经验,他们已经做得不错了。

## 写作探究

### 科技说明文

#### 一、写作指导

写科技说明文要把握好以下几点:

- 1. 标题。**(1)语言简明。标题一般只需要点明所介绍的对象,有时也可兼及它的特点、作用、意义、价值等。(2)生动新颖。标题要尽力做到生动新颖,以增强趣味性和吸引力。
- 2. 结构。**科技说明文由三大部分组成:开头、主体、结尾。开头是总体介绍,先引出说明对象,然后概括介绍它的特征、作用、意义、价值。主体篇幅最长,是科技说明文的核心部分,有关说明对象的各种知识就是在这一部分充分展开的。结尾或指出当前存在的问题,或展望未来的发展前景,或提醒人们注意吸收新的知识。
- 3. 表达方式。**科技说明文要大量运用“说明”这种表达方式,有时兼及叙述、描写、抒情、议论。“说明”这一表达方式具体包含举例说明、定义说明、诠释说明、分类说明、比较说明、比喻说明、图表说明等多种技巧。写作时要选择合适的表达方式和技巧展开描述。
- 4. 语言。**科技说明文的语言要准确、简明扼要、通俗易懂,避免夸张华丽的辞藻,要把真实的一面展现在读者面前。可适当运用一些比喻、拟人等修辞手法增强短文的可读性。

#### 二、典题示例

党的二十大报告强调,完善科技创新体系,坚持创新在我国现代化建设全局中的核心地位。为了提高大家的科技创新意识,请根据下列材料,以“Five-hundred-meter Aperture Spherical radio Telescope”为题,写一篇英文短文。

500米口径球面射电望远镜(Five-hundred-meter Aperture Spherical radio Telescope, FAST),位于中国贵州省平塘县的天然盆地大窝凼。FAST的反射面由4 450个三角形面板制成,每个面板都可以调整,可用于各种观测活动。FAST索网是世界上跨度最大、精度最高的索网结构,也是世界上第一个采用变位工作方法的索网体系。

注意:1. 词数80左右;

2. 可适当增加细节以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:panel 面板;span 跨度;displacement 变位

#### 三、审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 介绍 FAST 的一些背景信息 2. 介绍 FAST 的一些优势 3. 介绍 FAST 的用途及未来的情况

#### 四、遣词造句

##### (一)核心词汇

- ① be located in 位于
- ② consist of/be composed of/be made up of 由……组成
- ③ be capable of 能够
- ④ adopt the working method of 使用……的工作方法
- ⑤ individual 单独的
- ⑥ adjust 调整;调节
- ⑦ sensitive 灵敏的
- ⑧ accuracy 准确性;精确度

##### (二)完成句子

- ① The telescope is called (被叫作) FAST.
- ② It is located in a natural basin called the Dawodang (坐落在一个叫大窝凼的天然盆地), in Pingtang County, Guizhou Province, China.
- ③ FAST consists of 4,450 individual triangular-shaped panels (由4 450个单独的三角形面板组成), each capable of being adjusted (能被调整) for various observations.
- ④ It's not only the world's most sensitive listening device (不仅是世界上最灵敏的收听设备), but also the world's largest single-dish radio telescope.
- ⑤ It is the first one to adopt the working method (第一个采用工作方法)—displacement.

##### (三)句式升级

- ① 用过去分词短语作后置定语连接(二)中句①②  
The telescope called FAST is located in a natural basin called the Dawodang, in Pingtang County,

Guizhou Province, China.

②用 not only 位于句首引起的部分倒装升级(二)中句④  
Not only is it the world's most sensitive listening device, but also it is the world's largest single-dish radio telescope.

(四)连句成篇

### Five-hundred-meter Aperture Spherical radio Telescope

China's new radio telescope called FAST is located in a natural basin called the Dawodang, in Pingtang County, Guizhou Province, China.

FAST consists of 4,450 individual triangular-shaped panels, each capable of being adjusted for various observations. Not only is it the world's most sensitive listening device, but also it is the world's largest single-dish radio telescope. In the world, its cable-net structure enjoys the largest span and highest accuracy. The structure is also the first one to adopt the working method—displacement.

It can be used for observation of pulsars as well as exploration of interstellar molecules and interstellar communication signals.

### 五、学以致用

“蛟龙号”是我国自行设计、自主研制的第一台作业型深海载人潜水器,它的下潜能力目前位居世界前列。先进的近底自动航行功能和悬停定位功能、高速

水声通信功能、充油银锌蓄电池容量被誉为“蛟龙号”的三大技术突破。“蛟龙号”对于开发利用深海资源有着重要的意义。请据此写一篇英文短文。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:近底自动航行功能 near-bottom automatic navigation function; 悬停定位功能 hovering positioning function; 高速水声通信功能 the high-speed underwater acoustic communication function; 充油银锌蓄电池 oil-filled silver-zinc battery

### [参考范文]

The Jiaolong is the first operational deep-sea manned submersible independently designed and developed by China and its submergence capability is among the greatest in the world.

The Jiaolong has three leading advantages in technology. First, it has advanced near-bottom automatic navigation function and hovering positioning function. The second one is the high-speed underwater acoustic communication function. The third one is that its equipped oil-filled silver-zinc battery is very powerful, ensuring underwater operation time.

The Jiaolong plays an important role in exploring and making use of marine resources.

## 课后素养评价(二十五)

### I. 单句语法填空

- It's clear that this book has a notable (note) impact on literature and art.
- The workers drilled (drilling) two holes in the wall to put up the painting.
- All the athletes threw themselves (they) into preparing for the coming sports meeting.
- After the fight, our teacher set out to look (look) into it.
- We should shrink from making (make) the same mistake.
- Eight kilometres is roughly equivalent to five miles.
- Yuan Longping, the person who I respect most, is known as “Father of Hybrid Rice”.
- After he finished reading a novel, he continued to play (play) games with his friends.

### II. 完成句子

- Given the weather, we've decided to put off the sports meet.  
考虑到天气,我们决定推迟运动会。
- Inside his suitcase were some clothes and daily necessities.  
他的行李箱里装着几件衣服和日用品。
- I met the fruit-pickers, several of whom were university students.  
我遇到了摘水果的人,其中有几个是大学生。
- It is thought that the methane eventually contributed to climate change.  
人们认为,正是这种甲烷最终导致了气候变化。

### III. 语法填空

Hakka Earth Building is a bright pearl of Chinese civilisation. It is praised as a magnificent architectural work of village houses in **1**. the world

for its long history, unique style, smart structure and magnificent scale, which is **2. closely** (close) related to the history of Hakka people in the mountainous areas of Fujian.

Earthen houses are made **3. of** earth, stone, bamboo and wood, all readily available materials which are used **4. to form** (form) walls up to 6 feet thick. The end result is a windproof, quakeproof building that is warmer in winter and cooler in summer **5. than** others. The top has gun holes for defensive purposes. In addition to the unique function of defending against the **6. enemies** (enemy), the earth building also has the characteristics of fire prevention, guarding against wild animals and good lighting. What is amazing about these earth buildings **7. is** (be) the fact that some of them are over 700 years old, surviving through natural elements, including earthquakes.

In 2008, a total of 46 Fujian earth buildings **8. were listed** (list) as World Heritage Site by UNESCO. They're exceptional examples of a building tradition and function **9. representing** (represent) a particular type of group living and defensive organisation in a **10. harmonious** (harmony) relationship with their environment.

#### IV. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你的英国笔友 Peter 在孔子课堂 (Confucius Classroom)了解到中国四大名著 (China's four great classic novels)的知识并写信与你交流。作为一名古典文学爱好者,你读过信之后很高兴。现在请你用英语给他回信,介绍你最爱的四大名著中的某个人物 (character)以及原因。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

##### [参考范文]

Dear Peter,

How are you going? Thanks for sharing with me your experience of learning China's four great classic novels in Confucius Classrooms. I'm glad to tell you my favourite character Sun Wukong in Journey to the West.

In the novel, Sun Wukong, also known as Monkey King, is a monkey born from a stone who has the supernatural power of transforming into

various animals and objects. That's why I consider him as my favourite character.

I do hope Chinese classic literature helps you understand China better.

Yours,

Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

"It doesn't look too good, darling. I think you'd better pack a few things and go to your mother's place. And you'd better take Rosie and Monty with you."

Putting down the phone, Sara sighed. Tomorrow was her husband Tony's birthday. She had planned to cook him a nice meal and then surprise him with the new mountain bike she'd bought for him. If she went to her mother's house, Tony wouldn't get his present for days.

However, her mother's house was the best place to be right now. Being on higher land, it would be safe from the floods. It had been raining heavily for almost two weeks and the river near Sara and Tony's house was rising higher and higher all the time. Tony and others from the village had spent the past two days putting sandbags along the side of the river to stop it from overflowing. Now they feared that their hard work had been useless and soon the whole valley would be flooded.

Sara dressed baby James in warm clothes and collected the things she would need for him over the next few days. She put the lead on the dog and went in search of Monty, the cat. It took her a long time, but eventually she found him safe and warm under the covers on her bed. She placed him in his cat basket and took him into the kitchen where James and the dog, Rosie, were waiting.

Just as she was reaching for the car keys, Sara heard a sound like the noise bath water makes when you pull out the plug. She looked at the backdoor, and saw water was flowing in underneath. Turning around, she saw dirty brown water fountaining out of the drain and filling the sink. Realising that they were trapped by the flood and that it became impossible for her to drive out, quickly she put James into her

backpack and pulled onto her back. Calling to Rosie, she picked up the cat basket and ran to the front of the house and out into the front garden, where the car was parked.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*The water was already up to her knees, and Rosie was swimming beside her. Knowing the water would soon be much deeper, Sara gave up driving away. She threw the cat basket onto the roof of the car and pushed Rosie up beside it. She climbed first onto the front of the car and then onto the roof of the house with the dog and the cat. James, safely attached to her back, made no sound at all. Sara*

*stared down at the water which was rushing past the car. It was already halfway up the doors, and still rising.*

*Sara, together with James, Rosie and Monty, was hungry and frightened on the roof of the house when a boat appeared in the distance. Sara was extremely happy and shouted to the boat, "Here! Here!", but the boat seemed not to head for their direction. Sara was worried and anxious, and then she shouted to the boat harder, "Help! Help! Here we are." Luckily, the people on the boat replied to her. They were rescued and the warm-hearted people sent them to Sara's mother's place.*

## 读后续写技能养成

### 「技能概述」

1. 首尾呼应:指文章的结尾与所给文段的开头在内容上互相呼应的结尾方式。
2. 续写技巧:仔细阅读所给文段的开头,留意故事主要人物的性格特点。在设计结尾时,可以复现人物的性格、某个特殊事件或故事主题。

### 「范例体悟」

(开头) I had an interesting childhood. It was filled with surprises and amusements, all because of my mother—loving, sweet, yet **absent-minded and forgetful**.

(结尾)... Despite Mum's being **absent-minded and forgetful**, she was still a kind and nice mum.

分析文中结尾设计的特点:

本例属于首尾呼应式结尾。结尾叙述了妈妈是一个心不在焉且健忘的人,这正好与开头部分提到的妈妈的性格描写一致。

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. trip/journey *n.* 旅行
2. holiday/vacation *n.* 假期
3. smile *v.&n.* 微笑
4. compete *v.* 比赛
5. competition *n.* 比赛
6. funny/interesting *adj.* 有趣的

## 精彩结尾之首尾呼应

7. present/gift *n.* 礼物

8. experience *n.&v.* 经历

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. (开头) It was summer and my dad wanted to treat me to a vacation like never before. He decided to take me on a **trip to the Wild West**.

(结尾)... Never had I had such a thrilling yet dangerous vacation before. **The special trip to the Wild West** was deeply engraved in my mind.

我从没有过这么刺激而又惊险的假期。那次特别的狂野西部之旅,深深地印在我的脑海里。

2. (开头)... He was small for ten years old. **His usual big toothy smile** was absent today.

(结尾)... Then for the first time that day **his big toothy smile** broke across his muddy face as he was surrounded by his team.

那一天,当他的队员们围在他身边时,他沾满泥浆的脸上第一次露出了灿烂的露齿笑容。

3. (开头) **Pumpkin carving** is a favourite tradition in Autumn. We visit a local farm every October. In the pumpkin field, I **compete with my three brothers** and sister to seek out the biggest pumpkin.

(结尾)... "Isn't it a good idea to share stories online to choose the funniest?" I told Jason, jumping with joy. "Amazing! Let's call it **Pumpkin's Competition**," Jason giggled.

"在网上分享故事,再从中选出最有趣的,这不是

一个好主意吗?”我对杰森说道,同时高兴得跳了起来。“太棒了!我们就叫它南瓜竞赛吧。”杰森咯咯地笑道。

## 「技能达标」

### I. 完成句子

1. (开头) **A funny thing** happened to Arthur when he was on the way to work one day.

(结尾)... What a funny day! Arthur couldn't stop laughing whenever he looked back on this pleasant experience.

多么有趣的一天啊! 每当亚瑟回想起这次欢乐的经历,他就忍不住笑个不停。

2. (开头) **A holiday in Penang** is an annual affair for my family. My parents grew up in Penang and are very fond of Penang food.

(结尾) Never had I had such an exciting and wonderful vacation before. The special trip to Penang was deeply impressed in my mind.

我以前从未有过如此令人兴奋而又美好的假期。特别的槟城之行给我留下了深刻的印象。

3. (开头)... **Mum cherishes everything from Dad**, especially the thing that gives her a beautiful memory.

(结尾)... Though stuck together, the places with cracks were still visible in the glass rose. Then she softly said, "My rose is truly unique."

虽然粘在一起,但玻璃玫瑰上有裂缝的地方仍然清晰可见。然后她轻声说:“我的玫瑰真的很特别。”

### II. 用首尾呼应的技巧完成语段

(开头) When I was a boy of nine, I used to help Mrs Long, a retired art teacher who lived across my home. She paid me very little for the help, but she taught me how to paint and promised me, "When New Year's Day comes, I shall have a **present** for you."

(结尾)... But the great present Mrs Long gave me opened a window to a totally new world. (设计一个首尾呼应式结尾) Her gift was exactly what I needed, and it reached me at the time when I was best able to comprehend it.

## 第五单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

### I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

#### A

Go on a visit to a garden made by an artist and you will get a sense of that person and their inspirations. The choice of plants and landscaping reveals much about their life and what drove their creativity.

#### Giverny

Monet redirected a stream and dug a pond to create this fantastic landscape. The scene with its curved Japanese bridge was the subject of some of Monet's best-known and most-loved paintings, and visitors can stand where he once did and try to see it through his eyes.

[www.giverny.org](http://www.giverny.org)

#### Caza Azul

Frida Kahlo was born and died in this garden.

Local trees and plants sit beside Mexican folk works of art and an Aztec pyramid designed by her husband Diego Rivera. All of these elements reflect the character and style of this influential artist.

[www.museofridakahlo.org](http://www.museofridakahlo.org)

#### Little Sparta

Two hectares of exposed land were turned into an outdoor exhibition of 270 artworks by Ian Hamilton Finlay. He also built two temples from outbuildings and a pool with a fountain. It's best to visit in June, July and August when trees and plants related to the work look their best.

[www.littlesparta.org.uk](http://www.littlesparta.org.uk)

#### O'Keeffe Museum

The modernist, Georgia O'Keeffe, installed large windows into the adobe (土坯) house where she lived and worked so that she could have a

connection with the expansive landscape all around. She said that she was surprised to find “what a difference a garden can make in one’s creation”.

[www.okeeffemuseum.org](http://www.okeeffemuseum.org)

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四处由著名艺术家设计的花园,让读者去品味各位艺术家的风格和创作灵感。

1. What scene made some paintings of Monet best known?

- A. A large fountain.
- B. A curved bridge.
- C. An ancient temple.
- D. An influential pyramid.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Giverny** 部分中的“The scene with its curved Japanese bridge was the subject of some of Monet’s best-known and most-loved paintings”可知,Monet 作品中弯曲的桥的风景使他的作品出名。故选 B。

2. Which website will you check as a Mexican culture enthusiast?

- A. [www.giverny.org](http://www.giverny.org).
- B. [www.littlesparta.org.uk](http://www.littlesparta.org.uk).
- C. [www.okeeffemuseum.org](http://www.okeeffemuseum.org).
- D. [www.museofridakahlo.org](http://www.museofridakahlo.org).

D 细节理解题。根据 **Caza Azul** 部分中的“Local trees and plants sit beside Mexican folk works of art and an Aztec pyramid designed by her husband Diego Rivera.”可知,喜爱墨西哥艺术作品的人可以来 Caza Azul 花园参观,它的访问网址是 [www.museofridakahlo.org](http://www.museofridakahlo.org)。故选 D。

3. Why did Georgia O’Keeffe fit windows to the adobe house?

- A. To beautify her dull garden.
- B. To kill her boring time.
- C. To improve her poor eyesight.
- D. To increase her creative inspiration.

D 细节理解题。根据 **O’Keeffe Museum** 部分中的“The modernist, Georgia O’Keeffe, installed large windows into the adobe (土坯) house where she lived and worked so that she could have a connection with the expansive landscape

all around. She said that she was surprised to find ‘what a difference a garden can make in one’s creation’.”可知,她在土坯房上安装大窗户,目的是能与周围广阔的风光有联系,激发自己的创作灵感。故选 D。

## B

Many ancient populations used inscriptions (铭文) to document different parts of their lives. But the objects containing such inscriptions have been damaged over the centuries.

The researchers, led by Alphabet’s AI company DeepMind, developed a new AI-based method which serves as a technological tool to help researchers repair missing inscriptions and estimate the true origins of the records. They call their tool Ithaca. The system is the first deep neural (神经的) network that can restore the missing text of damaged inscriptions. The researchers said it trained Ithaca on the largest collection of data containing Greek inscriptions from the non-profit Packard Humanities Institute in California. Feeding this data into the system is designed to help the tool use past writings to predict missing letters and words in damaged inscriptions.

The researchers reported that in experiments with damaged writings, Ithaca was able to correctly predict missing inscription elements 62% of the time. In addition, the tool was 71% correct in identifying where the inscriptions first came from. And when historians work on their own, the success rate for restoring damaged inscriptions is about 25%. But when humans teamed up with Ithaca to assist in their work, the success rate jumped to 72%.

Thea Sommerschild from Ca’ Foscari University of Venice said the system had already provided new information to help researchers reexamine important periods in Greek history. In one case, Ithaca confirmed new evidence presented by historians about the dating of a series of important Greek decrees (法令). The decrees were



first thought to have been written before 446/445 BCE. But the new evidence suggested a date in the 420s BCE. Ithaca predicted a date of 421 BCE. The date change may seem small but it has significant implications for our understanding of the political history of Classical Athens.

The team is currently working on other versions of Ithaca trained on other ancient languages. DeepMind has launched a free, interactive tool based on the system for use by researchers, educators, museum workers and the public.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一种 AI 工具,它可以帮助科学家修复受损铭文的文字。

4. What is the function of Ithaca?

- A. Restoring and identifying damaged inscriptions.
- B. Interpreting and protecting historical documents.
- C. Exploring and tracing the origins of Greek letters.
- D. Collecting and translating past writings into English.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The researchers, led by Alphabet’s AI company DeepMind, developed a new AI-based method which serves as a technological tool to help researchers repair missing inscriptions and estimate the true origins of the records. They call their tool Ithaca. The system is the first deep neural (神经的) network that can restore the missing text of damaged inscriptions.”可知, Ithaca 可以复原受损铭文的缺失文本、判断铭文的真实来源,由此可知, Ithaca 的主要作用是修复受损的铭文。故选 A。

5. What do the numbers in Paragraph 3 mainly indicate?

- A. The inscriptions are of great value to humans.
- B. Ithaca helps researchers work more effectively.
- C. The demand for reading ancient records is increasing.
- D. The process of repairing damaged writings is complicated.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,研究人员使用了 Ithaca 协助工作后,复原受损铭文文本的准确率从 25% 提高到了 72%,由此可知,第三段中的数字表明 Ithaca 能帮助研究人员更有效地工作。故选 B。

6. Why does the author mention the case in Paragraph 4?

- A. To show the limitations of Ithaca.
- B. To support Sommerschild’s statement.
- C. To explain the history of Greek decrees.
- D. To prove the importance of dates to historians.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,该段第一句提到,学者 Sommerschild 说该系统已经提供了新的信息,帮助研究人员重新审视希腊历史上的重要时期,接着就给出了具体的示例来佐证。因此,此段中的案例是为了支持 Sommerschild 陈述的观点。故选 B。

7. What is the passage mainly about?

- A. The achievements of Greek historians.
  - B. The disappearance of ancient Greek culture.
  - C. A rising trend of studying ancient languages.
  - D. An AI system for repairing missing writings.
- D 主旨大意题。根据第一段的内容和第二段中的“The researchers, led by Alphabet’s AI company DeepMind, developed a new AI-based method which serves as a technological tool to help researchers repair missing inscriptions and estimate the true origins of the records. They call their tool Ithaca.”以及下文对 Ithaca 的具体介绍可知,本文介绍了一种可以帮助科学家修复受损铭文文字的 AI 工具——Ithaca。D 选项能够概括文章主旨。故选 D。

### C

According to new studies, many birds in the Amazon rainforest have become smaller as temperatures have increased. The difference hasn’t been obvious, but it has been significant enough that some scientists have suggested it’s a universal response to climate change.

But new research finds that the body size reductions aren't happening across the board with some large-brained birds having much less significant changes.

For the study, researchers studied some data on about 70,000 birds that had died when they crashed into buildings in Chicago from 1978 to 2016. They added data on brain volume and lifespan (寿命) for 49 of the 52 species of migratory birds (候鸟) in the original study.

They found that birds with very large brains had reductions in overall body size that were about one-third of the reductions noted in birds with smaller brains. They thought that in birds, the species with big brains are the ones that build tools, manage to survive in tough environments, live longer, invest more time and energy into raising babies, and end up surviving better in the wild.

Researchers aren't certain exactly how warmer temperatures might lead to decreasing body size in birds, but they are considering two possible explanations, which could even be happening at the same time. First, natural selection might be favouring birds that can dissipate heat better. This is because smaller birds have higher ratios (比例) of surface area to volume, so being small can help birds stay cool. Second, warmer summers might have less food available for birds at the time when they are feeding their babies. In that case, birds might be getting smaller because of decreased food over the years.

The findings don't suggest that climate change is having zero impact on bigger-brained birds, but researchers believe these findings can inform us of climate change and help set conservation priorities.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。新的研究发现,随着气温升高,亚马孙雨林中的许多鸟类体型变小了,但是体型的缩小并不是全面发生的,一些脑容量较大的鸟类的变化要小得多。

8. How does climate change affect birds?

A. Their body size shrinks.

B. Their lifespan becomes shorter.

C. Their body temperature rises.

D. Their habit changes quicker.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“According to new studies, many birds in the Amazon rainforest have become smaller as temperatures have increased.”可知,气候变化使鸟的体型缩小了。故选 A。

9. How did the scientists do the research?

A. By studying the bird death rate.

B. By observing the birds in nature.

C. By analysing previous information.

D. By comparing different bird species.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“For the study, researchers studied some data on about 70,000 birds that had died when they crashed into buildings in Chicago from 1978 to 2016.”可知,科学家们是通过分析之前的信息来做这项研究的。故选 C。

10. Which word can best replace the underlined word “dissipate” in Paragraph 5?

A. Use.

B. Hold.

C. Absorb.

D. Lose.

D 词义猜测题。根据倒数第二段中的“This is because smaller birds have higher ratios (比例) of surface area to volume, so being small can help birds stay cool.”可知,保持凉爽就是可以更好地散热,故画线词所在的句子意思是“首先,自然选择可能偏爱那些能够更好地散热的鸟类”,因此画线词的意思是“使……消散”,和 lose 意思相近。故选 D。

11. What can be the best title for the text?

A. Birds' Body Sizes Vary

B. Brain Size Matters for Birds

C. Bird Brain Develops Sharply

D. Temperature Rises Globally

B 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第一段中的“According to new studies, many birds in the Amazon rainforest have become smaller as temperatures have increased.”和第二段的内容可知,本文主要介绍的是,新的研究发现,随着气温

升高,亚马孙雨林中的许多鸟类体型变小了,但是体型的缩小并不是全面发生的,一些脑容量较大的鸟类的变化要小得多,因此最佳标题是 B 选项“Brain Size Matters for Birds”。故选 B。

#### D

Researchers have studied how birth order affects kids' personalities in the past, but one study out of the United Kingdom has found that firstborns may have an educational advantage over their younger siblings (兄弟姐妹).

Researchers at the University of Essex's Institute for Social and Economic Research surveyed 3,553 individuals and 1,503 groups of siblings, and discovered that firstborn children tended to have higher educational aspirations and attainment. Only children and firstborn twins were not included in the study.

For each family involved in the study, the researcher Feifei Bu examined sibling birth order, the number of children in the family, age spacing, sex, health, relationships with one another and educational aspirations. She found that firstborns had a greater probability—16 percent higher—of attending further education, compared with later-born siblings.

“The advantage of firstborns in educational outcomes may be partially explained by the fact that firstborns tend to have higher aspirations which push them towards high education levels,” Bu wrote in the published study.

She further explained to *The Guardian* that parenting could play a role. “It could be that the parents simply devote more time and energy to them; it could be that they are actually more intelligent. For me, I tend to lean towards the theory that the amount of time, energy and involvement that parents put into caring for their children is possibly at work here,” she said.

She also found age spacing to be a contributing factor. The further apart in age the siblings—for

example, a six-year instead of one-year difference—the more likely both kids were to be successful. The idea is that with widely spaced siblings, parents have the ability to spread out their resources. In other words, they have time to give each child more time and money.

But younger siblings shouldn't worry. The world is full of successful middle and youngest children willing to prove this study wrong.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。研究人员调查了 3 553 名个体和 1 503 组兄弟姐妹,发现长子往往有更高的教育抱负和成就。

12. Who are more likely to complete higher levels of education according to Paragraphs 1 and 2?

- A. Only children.                      B. Firstborn twins.  
C. Younger siblings.                D. Firstborn siblings.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,第一胎生的兄弟姐妹更有可能完成更高层次的教育。故选 D。

13. What is possibly important for kids' educational achievements according to Bu?

- A. Parental investment.  
B. Parents' intelligence.  
C. Kids' native intelligence.  
D. Kids' school environment.

A 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“‘For me, I tend to lean towards the theory that the amount of time, energy and involvement that parents put into caring for their children is possibly at work here,’ she said.”可知,Bu 认为,父母的投入可能对孩子的教育成就很重要。故选 A。

14. What is the influence of wider age spacing between two siblings?

- A. It may cause conflicts between them.  
B. It may place more pressure on parents.  
C. Both of them are more likely to succeed.  
D. They are likely to be different from each other.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“The further apart in age the siblings—for example,

a six-year instead of one-year difference—the more likely both kids were to be successful.”可知,兄弟姐妹之间的年龄差距越大,他们成功的可能性越大。故选 C。

15. How is the text mainly developed?

- A. By listing examples.
- B. By giving descriptions.
- C. By setting down general rules.
- D. By presenting research findings.

D 写作手法题。分析文章结构可知,第一、二段主要说明了“兄弟姐妹中的长子更有可能完成更高层次的教育”的研究发现;第五段说明父母的投入可能对孩子的教育成就很重要;第六段第一句“*She also found age spacing to be a contributing factor.*”说明兄弟姐妹之间年龄差距越大,他们成功的可能性也就越大。由此可知,本文主要通过展示研究成果来展开。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

To achieve something, you need the right mindset. You need a mindset that knows you can succeed in what you are aiming for. 16 Below are some pointers.

**You complain about life.**

17 Do you find yourself complaining about your situation, or what other people have said or done? If you do, it means that you do not accept the reality of your situation or past. That causes stress. Rather than complain, if you have the power, you should change your situation. If you cannot change your situation, then you need to accept it. If something cannot be changed, then you must change your attitude towards it.

**You want a pain-free life.**

Don't fear pain. Pain is a part of living. You cannot travel new paths and attain success without the pain of hard work, taking risks and making mistakes. Finally, pain makes you stronger. 18 Rather be pleased that you have the opportunity to learn new lessons.

**You blame others for your problems.**

If you feel anger and resentment against others, blaming them for your problems, then you need to change your mindset. 19 They only make you bitter. Instead of being angry, choose to learn and grow from negative experiences, and then let them go. From today, you can choose your own path and it starts with choosing your thoughts.

An effective mindset is one that makes the best use of your time, energy and skills to make positive change. 20

- A. Don't complain or worry about pain.
- B. Watch what you say to yourself and others.
- C. Your mindset will determine your future path.
- D. Do you know how to have the right mindset?
- E. You will see it doesn't serve to benefit your progress.
- F. These negative thoughts will not change other people.
- G. How do you know if you need to change your mindset?

答案:16~20 GBAFC

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

When I was young, my father used to grow carnations (康乃馨)—a kind of flower that was red, pink or white. He 21 them with much love and devotion. Every day he came home from work, he would 22 watching them. And he used to tell us, “No one should touch my flowers.”

One day, my younger sister Clemence, who loved Dad very much, wanted to help him. So she cut the carnations from their stems (枝干) one by one and 23 them on the ground. She believed that Dad would be very 24 to see them that way.

When Mum and I realised what my sister had done, we became completely 25. However, my sister had no 26 why no one showed her any 27. When Dad returned, he went as usual straight to watch the flowers. Seeing his flowers

28 on the ground like dead animals, he was 29 at first. He looked towards the 30 to see if it was any of the neighbours' children who could have done it. Then he looked at Mum in 31. Finally, Mum, who always taught us to tell the 32 no matter what happened, said, "No bad neighbours did this great job, only your lovely daughter Clemence."

Dad's face changed into a(n) 33 and then he said, "Do I have a better flower than my 34 daughter?" My younger sister smiled and hugged Dad 35.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的爸爸非常喜欢康乃馨,妹妹为了帮助爸爸,自以为是地把这些花剪下来放在地上。作者和作者的妈妈以为情况不妙,可爸爸知道实情后却说:没有比女儿更好的花了。作者通过这个故事想告诉我们:爸爸爱花,但更爱女儿。女儿就是爸爸最好的花。

21. A. fed    B. took care of  
C. bought                                        D. used

B 根据上文内容可知,花已经种在了家里;再根据下文"Every day he came home from work, he would 22 watching them."可知,作者的爸爸每天下班回到家都要去看他的花,是去“照料”它们。故选 B。

22. A. stop                                        B. admit  
C. enjoy                                         D. avoid

C 根据下文"And he used to tell us, 'No one should touch my flowers.'"可知,爸爸不叫任何人碰花,这说明他很爱自己种的花,所以此处是指“喜爱”它们。故选 C。

23. A. dried                                        B. piled  
C. threw                                         D. arranged

D 根据上文"One day, my younger sister Clemence, who loved Dad very much, wanted to help him."可知,妹妹因为爱爸爸,所以想帮助爸爸做事情,她把花剪下后就排列在地上,用“排列”能表现出妹妹很用心地摆放这些花。故选 D。

24. A. pleased                                    B. surprised

- C. disappointed                                D. embarrassed

A 根据上文"And he used to tell us, 'No one should touch my flowers.'"可知,爸爸很爱自己种的花,不叫别人碰,再根据"One day, my younger sister Clemence, who loved Dad very much, wanted to help him."可知,妹妹很爱爸爸,她把花剪下来是想帮助爸爸,所以妹妹认为她所做的就是爸爸要做的事,所以她相信爸爸会“高兴的”。故选 A。

25. A. blind                                        B. lost  
C. hopeless                                      D. speechless

D 根据上文内容可知,爸爸对他自己种的康乃馨非常喜爱,不许任何人碰,而现在妹妹把爸爸挚爱的这些花全部都剪下来了,作者和妈妈觉得这件事会让爸爸彻底崩溃,所以她们两人吃惊得“说不出话”。故选 D。

26. A. guess                                        B. idea  
C. way     D. words

B 根据上文"One day, my younger sister Clemence, who loved Dad very much, wanted to help him."和"we became completely 25"可知,妹妹爱爸爸、想帮助爸爸才把花剪下来摆放在地上,她原以为别人会赞扬、感谢她所做的事,但作者和妈妈是无言以对的,所以她不知道为什么没有人欣赏她所做的事。have no idea 表示“不知道,不清楚”,为固定用法。故选 B。

27. A. appreciation                            B. friendship  
C. favour                                        D. interest

A 根据上文"One day, my younger sister Clemence, who loved Dad very much, wanted to help him."可知,妹妹爱爸爸、想帮助爸爸才把花剪下来摆放在地上,原以为别人会“欣赏”她所做的事。故选 A。

28. A. standing                                    B. placing  
C. sitting                                         D. lying

D 根据上文"23 them on the ground"可知,花是被排列在地上的,设空处的逻辑主语是 his flowers,所以花是躺在地上。故选 D。

29. A. sad    B. shocked

C. satisfied D. amused

B 根据上文内容可知,爸爸非常喜爱自己种的康乃馨,不许任何人碰,而现在看到地上被剪下来的花,像死了的动物一样,爸爸的第一反应是“震惊”。故选 B。

30. A. windows B. school  
C. house D. street

D 设空处后跟的是“see... neighbours' children”,看邻居的孩子们,邻居当然是住在这条“街”上的。故选 D。

31. A. agreement B. return  
C. silence D. thought

C 根据上文内容可知,爸爸先是看向街道,想知道是不是邻居的孩子们做了这些,但没有结果,所以他默默地看着妈妈,在等妈妈告诉他是怎么回事。故选 C。

32. A. truth B. story  
C. matter D. apology

A 根据设空处后面提到的妈妈实话实说的表现可知,妈妈教育孩子们实话实说,要讲“真相,实情”。故选 A。

33. A. fear B. smile  
C. cry D. anger

B 根据下文“My younger sister smiled and hugged Dad”可知,爸爸没有生气,再由爸爸所说的话可知,在爸爸心目中女儿的爱更重要,所以爸爸应该是“笑”了。故选 B。

34. A. naughty B. special  
C. lovely D. curious

C 根据上文内容可知,爸爸爱花,妹妹爱爸爸,爸爸知道了妹妹做这些是因为爱,所以他认为女儿才是最好的花,女儿是“可爱的”。故选 C。

35. A. heavily B. suddenly  
C. deeply D. firmly

D 根据上文爸爸所说的“Do I have a better flower than my 34 daughter?”可知,在爸爸心目中女儿才是最好的花,所以妹妹感觉到爸爸对自己的爱,“紧紧地”拥抱爸爸。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Today our knowledge of food and what it does for our body is far **36. more** advanced than that of the old times. Now we know about vitamins and

how each kind of vitamin helps in the **37. growth** (grow) of a particular part of our body. There are on the market all kinds of vitamins which one can take **38. to make** (make) up for one's lack of certain important things. Of course, if we eat properly, the food that we eat will take care of **39. our** (we) body and so there is no need to take any kinds of vitamins.

Generally **40. speaking** (speak), everything we eat **41. does** (do) some good to our body, but if we eat too much of one kind of food and pay too little attention to others, we may have too much of one kind and not enough of others. Then we may be **42. in** trouble. We are often told that we must eat some meat at each meal in order to get the necessary proteins (蛋白质). That is only **43. partly** (part) true, for proteins are not found only in meat. They can also be got from some **44. vegetables** (vegetable). The best advice about what to eat is that we should eat all kinds of food **45. but** never too much of any.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

某英文新闻网站拟开设“中国城市介绍”栏目,目前正在征集文章,请你根据以下要点写一篇 80 词左右的介绍西安的短文进行投稿。要点包括:

1. 西安是陕西省的省会;
2. 西安的美食;
3. 西安是现代化的城市。

[参考范文]

Xi'an, the capital of Shaanxi Province, has a long and rich history. It has many charming tourist attractions. Besides, you may also find various delicious local food there, of which the most famous are steamed rice, noodles, bread pieces with mutton soup, etc.

At the same time, Xi'an is also a modern city, taking on a new look. Many high and advanced buildings have been put up in recent years. In addition, every year, millions of visitors, both at home and abroad, come to visit this city.

In a word, it really deserves to be visited.

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When I arrived at 6 am at the large hospital kitchen, Rose was already checking name tags on the trays (托盘). “Hi, I’m Janet.” I tried to sound cheerful, although I already knew Rose’s reputation for being impossible to work with. “I’m scheduled to work with you this week.”

Rose stopped what she was doing and peered over her reading glasses. I could tell from her expression that she wasn’t pleased to see a student worker. “What do you want me to do? Start the coffee?” I asked. Rose coldly nodded and went back to checking name tags.

I filled the 40-cup pot with water and began making the coffee when Rose yelled, “That’s not the way to make coffee.” She stepped in and took over.

Nothing I did pleased her. All morning, her eagle eyes missed nothing and her sharp words hurt.

Totally exhausted, I trudged the six blocks home late that June afternoon. As a third year university student working my way through school, I had never before met anyone like Rose.

Fighting back tears, I wrestled with my dilemma alone in my room. “What shall I do?” The answer caught me completely by surprise. I needed to love Rose.

Working with Rose the next morning, I ignored the hurtful remarks thrown in my direction and did things Rose’s way as much as possible. As I worked, I silently began to surround Rose with a warm blanket of love.

Over the next few days, an amazing thing began to happen. My focus shifted from what she was doing to me and I started seeing Rose as the

hurting person she was. Then her icy tension began to melt away.

Throughout the rest of the summer, we had numerous opportunities to work together. Each time, she seemed truly happy to see me. Her bitterness gave way as she started opening up. As I worked with this lonely woman, I listened to her, something no one else had done. I learned that she was burdened by elderly parents who needed her care and her own health problems.

The days slipped by quickly as I finished the last several weeks of my summer job. I soon would be returning as a full-time university student and say goodbye to Rose.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

## [参考范文]

One day, while I was working alone in one of the hospital kitchens, Rose entered the room. Instead of her blue uniform, she was wearing street clothes. I looked at her in surprise. “Aren’t you working today?” “I’ve got another job and won’t be working here any more,” she said as she walked over and gave me a quick hug. “I just come here to say goodbye. You are the one person I will truly miss. You are the one person I wish I could take with me.” Then she turned abruptly and walked out of the door.

Although I never saw Rose again, I still remember her vividly. That summer, I learned a lesson I’ve never forgotten. The world is full of people like Rose: annoying, demanding, unlovable on the outside, yet hurting inside. Just as the saying goes, every rose has its thorn, and every man’s character has a part of you that you can’t stand. I’ve found that a warm blanket of love is the best way to nurture a rose.

# Unit 6

## Space and beyond

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 阅读课文，获取课文的主要信息，了解“挑战者”号航天飞机失事的过程及其对人类航天史的重大影响；
3. 观看视频，了解太阳系的相关知识；
4. 观看图片和文字，了解中国航天事业取得的重大成就及中国下一步的太空探索计划，并初步思考“探索宇宙奥秘”这一主题。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

1. scream *v.* (因疼痛、惊恐、兴奋等)尖声大叫
2. unexceptional *adj.* 平常的
3. shadow *n.* 坏影响, 阴影
4. suspend *v.* 暂停, 中止
5. become accustomed to 习惯于(做)某事
6. take off 起飞
7. go wrong 出错; 出故障
8. cast a shadow on 给……蒙上阴影
9. turn into 变成
10. no longer 不再
11. make it 获得成功
12. be sure of 确定……

13. set foot on 踏上

#### (二)阅读词汇

1. crew *n.* (飞机上的)全体机组人员
2. notion *n.* 概念; 观点; 看法
3. excursion *n.* (有特定目的的)短途出行
4. hazardous *adj.* 危险的, 不安全的
5. rekindle *v.* 重新激起, 重新唤起
6. tragically *adv.* 悲惨地, 不幸地
7. instantaneously *adv.* 瞬间地
8. shuttle *n.* 航天飞机
9. tune in 收听, 收看
10. call to 召唤
11. go into shock 陷入震惊
12. blast off (火箭、航天飞机等的)点火起飞, 点火升空

#### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	The first moon landing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Neil Armstrong set foot on the Moon and returned safely on <b>1. 20 July 1969.</b></li> <li>• Millions watched that first lunar landing on black and white television sets.</li> <li>• Guided by <b>2. an ordinary computer</b>, all three astronauts of the Apollo 11 mission made it safely back to Earth.</li> </ul>



续表

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2 (Para. 2)	3. <u>Space travel</u> became unexceptional to the public.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On 28 January 1986, 4. <u>the Challenger</u> space shuttle took off with seven astronauts, including a woman teacher, who would give two 15-minute lessons from orbit.</li> <li>• The world seemed to have lost its 5. <u>wonder</u> at the amazing achievements of the astronauts involved when the <i>Challenger</i> space shuttle took off.</li> </ul>
Part 3 (Para. 3 — Para. 5)	The 6. <u>disaster</u> of the <i>Challenger</i> and its influence.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>Challenger</i> exploded in mid-air just over a minute after taking off, and all seven astronauts 7. <u>on board</u> were killed. It was the most disastrous space accident ever.</li> <li>• Following the shock of the <i>Challenger</i> disaster, space shuttle flights were 8. <u>suspended</u> for nearly three years.</li> <li>• On 29 September 1988, the space shuttle programme 9. <u>resumed</u> with the successful launch of <i>Discovery</i>.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 6)	The exploration of the universe will be continued.	In spite of the disasters, we will continue to 10. <u>reach for</u> the universe.

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Who is the first person in the world to land on the Moon?  
A. Yang Liwei.            B. Neil Armstrong.  
C. Tereshkova.            D. Yuri Gagarin.
- How did the world feel after the *Challenger* exploded?  
A. Tired.                    B. Disappointed.  
C. Depressed.            D. Shocked.
- What can we learn from the *Challenger* disaster?  
A. Full preparations are of great importance to success.  
B. The take-off should not be broadcast live.  
C. There is a long way to go in space exploration.  
D. Spending too much money on space exploration isn't worth it.
- Which of the following marked that the space shuttle programme resumed?  
A. The appearance of the space shuttle.  
B. The successful launch of *Discovery*.  
C. The real causes of the loss of the *Challenger*.  
D. The rapid development of technology.

答案: 1~4 BDCB

### II. 课文语法填空

People have become accustomed 1. to the notion of space travel since Neil Armstrong first set foot on the Moon back on 20 July 1969. Guided by a computer 2. that/which was much less powerful than the ones used by today's average school students, the first Moon landing and return was 3. a great success.

Following the Moon landings, space travel rapidly became 4. unexceptional (exceptional) to the public, as innovations succeeded each other. When the *Challenger* space shuttle took off on 28 January 1986, the world seemed 5. to have lost (lose) its wonder at the amazing achievements of the astronauts involved. But this was going to be a special excursion, because one teacher was about 6. to become (become) the first civilian in space. Millions of people tuned in to witness the take-off on TV.

7. Tragically (tragic), the *Challenger* exploded in mid-air just over a minute after taking off in Florida, and all seven astronauts on board were 8. killed (kill). The world was shocked, most people 9. having assumed (assume) that the space

flight would be no more dangerous than travelling in an aeroplane. The disaster cast a shadow on people's hearts. Space shuttle **10. flights** (fly) were suspended for nearly three years and the space shuttle programme resumed with the successful launch of *Discovery*.

Despite disasters and difficulties, we will continue to reach for the universe.

### III. 阅读升华

1. What were people's feelings before and after the *Challenger* disaster?

Before the disaster, people were excited and optimistic. After the disaster people became frightened and frustrated.

2. Would you like to go to space? Give your reasons.  
略

## 课后素养评价(二十六)

### I. 阅读理解

The fish eggs, all 200 of them, were settled and ready to go. The ground crew had counted the eggs carefully, and sealed them tightly within a plate filled precisely to the edge with seawater.

The countdown, and then—ignition (点火)! For two full minutes, the precious eggs suffered a violent shaking as the rocket's engines exploded to life, and then rose to the heavens. These eggs were on their way to the low Earth orbit. Next stop: the moon.

Well, they haven't actually left yet. But after a recent simulation (模拟) designed to re-create the intense shaking of a typical takeoff, researchers in France found that the eggs survived. It's a crucial discovery in the progress of the Lunar Hatch, a programme that aims to determine whether astronauts could successfully raise fish on a future moon base.

Finally, Cyrille Przybyla, an aquaculture (水产养殖) researcher at the French Research Institute for Exploitation of the Sea who led the research, dreams of designing a lunar fish farm that uses water already on the moon to help feed residents of the future Moon Village set to be established by the European Space Agency (ESA).

Przybyla's hope is to offer lunar residents fresh, inviting, protein-rich fish—not just packets of freeze-dried food. “I proposed the idea to send eggs, not fish, because eggs are very strong,” he says.

Besides, Przybyla suggests there will be other benefits for astronauts who may one day find themselves raising animals in space. “From the psychological point of view, it's better to have a

reminder of Earth—you have a garden; you have a tank with fish,” he says.

“Designing self-contained and self-supporting systems for food production beyond Earth will be crucial for future space exploration programmes,” says Luke Roberson, a researcher at Kennedy Space Center in Florida. And he says Przybyla's study is “a great first step” towards showing that aquaculture is a practical part of that future.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍的是太空养鱼计划。

1. What is Paragraph 2 about?

- A. An imagination.
- B. An experience.
- C. An experiment.
- D. An adventure.

C 段落大意题。根据第二段的内容可知,第二段主要介绍了一次实验。故选 C。

2. Why do the researchers want to send the eggs to the moon?

- A. To offer eggs to astronauts as food.
- B. To test whether the eggs are strong.
- C. To promote aquaculture on the earth.
- D. To see the possibility of raising fish on the moon.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“‘It's a crucial discovery in the progress of the Lunar Hatch, a programme that aims to determine whether astronauts could successfully raise fish on a future moon base.’”可知,研究人员想把这些卵送到月球上,看看在月球上养鱼的可能性。故选 D。

3. What's the psychological advantage of raising animals in space?

- A. It can get rid of loneliness.

- B. It diversifies the space food.  
C. It gives astronauts something to do.  
D. It helps astronauts remember Earth.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“‘From the psychological point of view, it’s better to have a reminder of Earth—you have a garden; you have a tank with fish,’ he says.”可知,在太空中饲养动物的心理优势在于,它能帮助宇航员记住地球。故选 D。

4. What’s Luke Roberson’s attitude to the plan to raise fish on the moon?

- A. Doubtful.            B. Favourable.  
C. Disapproving.      D. Neutral.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可推知, Luke Roberson 对在月球上养鱼的计划是支持的。故选 B。

## II. 七选五

### Making a High School Graduation Speech

We know giving a graduation speech can make you nervous and worried. 1 You can highlight the important moments that your class has experienced over the years. To make a high school graduation speech, you should write a speech that thanks your teachers, parents, and peers. Your speech will be more memorable if you include a few jokes, quotes, or words of advice.

#### Reflect on your time in high school.

2 You can talk about your first day of school together and how you have all changed over the years. For example, you could talk about lifelong friendships that were made, and lessons that were learned.

3

Did your class go on any big trips together? Were there any notable athletic or academic achievements? Did your class participate in a successful fundraising drive, or plan a major school event together? Try to think of a few memorable events that you can highlight. Tell a short story about one of these experiences. Be sure to choose a story that brings the entire class together.

#### Talk about the future.

After you have reflected on your time together in high school, you can talk about how these experiences have prepared you and your classmates for the future. 4

#### Create an impactful conclusion.

The conclusion can be one of the hardest parts to write. 5 For example, you can end by wishing your classmates the best of luck in high school. You can also choose to end with an inspirational quote.

- A. Highlight a few important moments.  
B. Tell stories about your study experiences.  
C. However, it is also an exciting opportunity to look back.  
D. You can leave the audience with something meaningful.  
E. Think back on the past school years and your time in high school.  
F. Focus on the lifelong friendship between you and your classmates.  
G. Mention your nervousness about entering colleges and meeting new people.

答案:1~5 CEAGD

### 【微点写作】太空生活日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我以一种不同的方式走路,这样我就不会摔倒。

I walked in a different way so that I wouldn't fall over.

2. 我发现在月球上来回走动十分困难。

I find it rather difficult to move around on the moon.

3. 起床后,我开始吃早餐。它包括一些面包和一袋果汁。

After getting up, I began to have breakfast, which consisted of some bread and a bag of fruit juice.

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

### Language points

#### 学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,关注课文的语言特点,体会人物的情感变化,感受这次空难带来的重大影响;
3. 在理解课文的基础上,感悟人类在太空探索过程中不畏艰难、勇往直前的意志品质。

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She had only a vague **notion** of what might happen.  
概念
2. The space **shuttle** returned safely to Earth.  
航天飞机
3. They've gone on an **excursion** to Hangzhou.  
短途出行
4. He covered her mouth to stop her from **screaming**.  
尖声大叫
5. Production has been **suspended** while safety checks are carried out.  
暂停
6. None of the passengers and **crew** were injured in the accident.  
全体机组人员

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>hazardous</u> <i>adj.</i> 危险的,不安全的	<u>hazard</u> <i>n.</i> 危险;危害 <i>v.</i> 使处于危险中
<u>unexceptional</u> <i>adj.</i> 平常的	<u>except</u> <i>prep.</i> 除……之外
	<u>exception</u> <i>n.</i> 例外
	<u>exceptional</u> <i>adj.</i> 特别的,罕见的;优秀的,卓越的
<u>tragically</u> <i>adv.</i> 悲惨地,不幸地	<u>tragic</u> <i>adj.</i> 悲惨的,不幸的
	<u>tragedy</u> <i>n.</i> 悲剧,惨案

#### III. 补全短语

1. become accustomed to 习惯于(做)某事
2. cast a shadow on 给……蒙上阴影
3. make it 获得成功
4. no longer 不再
5. take off 起飞
6. tune in 收听,收看
7. call to 召唤
8. go wrong 出错;出故障

#### IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: no + 比较级 + than  
The world went into shock, most people having assumed that this space flight would be no more dangerous than travelling in an aeroplane.  
全世界深感震惊,大多数人认为这次太空飞行不会比乘坐飞机更危险。
2. 句型公式: there is no doubt that...  
But there was never any doubt that manned flights would continue...  
但毫无疑问,载人飞行将继续下去……
3. 句型公式: “no matter + 疑问词”引导让步状语从句  
The sacrifice of the *Challenger* calls to us, reminding us that we must continue to reach for the stars, no matter how distant they might seem.  
“挑战者”号的牺牲召唤我们,提醒我们,我们必须继续去探索星空,无论它们看起来有多遥远。

### 任务型课堂

1. **become accustomed to (doing) sth.** 习惯于(做)某事  
(教材原文) Ever since Neil Armstrong first set

foot on the Moon back on 20 July 1969, people have **become accustomed to** the notion of space travel.

自从1969年7月20日尼尔·阿姆斯特朗首次登月以来,人们已习惯于太空旅行这个概念。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

I still haven't **got accustomed to living far** away from home.

我还不习惯住在离家太远的地方。

He **accustomed himself to the new job** as soon as possible.

他使自己尽可能快地适应新的工作。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)accustomed <i>adj.</i> 经常的;惯常的;习惯于 be/get accustomed _____ (doing) sth. 习惯于(做)某事 (2)accustom <i>v.</i> 使习惯于;使适应 accustom sb./oneself to (_____) sth. 使某人/自己习惯于(做)某事
探究结论	(1)to (2)doing

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①He is accustomed to walking (walk) to school rather than riding a bike.

②She is a person accustomed (accustom) to having eight hours' sleep a night.

③The students quickly accustomed themselves (they) to the new timetable, which excited the teachers.

(2)词汇升级

The foreigner **wasn't used to** the life there and eventually left.

→The foreigner wasn't accustomed to the life there and eventually left.

### 2. shadow *n.* 坏影响,阴影;影子;背光处;阴暗处 *v.* 遮蔽;尾随;(尤指)跟踪

(教材原文)It was the most disastrous space accident ever, and it cast a **shadow** on people's hearts.

这是有史以来最具灾难性的航天事故,给人们的心里蒙上了阴影。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

When Sandy was a child, he **lived in the shadow**

**of** his excellent brother.

当桑迪还是个孩子的时候,他生活在他优秀的哥哥的阴影下。

I **shadowed** him until I saw him enter a hotel.

我一直跟踪他直到我看到他进入一家旅馆。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)in shadow 在阴暗处 in/under the shadow of 在……的树荫下;在……的影响下;受……的控制 be/live in one's shadow = be/live in the shadow of sb. 处于/生活在某人的阴影中 beyond/without a shadow of a doubt 毫无疑问 cast a shadow _____ 给……蒙上阴影 (2)shadowy <i>adj.</i> 阴影中的;朦胧的
探究结论	(1)on/over

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①His disease cast a shadow on the whole family.

②My brother is in the shadow of Mr Smith, who is very strict.

③I know beyond/without a shadow of a doubt that something terrible has happened.

(2)完成句子

The two world wars cast a shadow on the people all over the world.

两次世界大战给全世界人民蒙上了阴影。

### 3. scream *v.* (因疼痛、惊恐、兴奋等)尖声大叫;(风)呼啸等 *n.* 尖叫

(教材原文)The *Challenger* had exploded in mid-air and we all started **screaming**.

“挑战者”号已经在半空中爆炸,我们都开始尖叫。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

All the fans **screamed** when the pop singer appeared on the stage.

当流行歌手出现在舞台上时,所有的歌迷都尖叫起来。

The wind was **screaming** outside.

外面的风在呼啸。

The little boy fell down from a chair and started **screaming with** pain.

小男孩从椅子上摔了下来,痛得尖叫起来。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)let out a scream of... 发出……喊叫 (2)scream for help 大喊救命 scream in fear 恐惧地大喊 scream _____ ... 因……而大喊大叫
探究结论	(2)with

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① Other boys ran round Philip, screaming (scream) with loud laughter.

② The lady screamed for help when she saw the fierce dog.

③ The fans screamed with excitement when they saw the well-known football player.

④ The operation went badly, so badly in fact, that Bob woke up screaming (scream) in pain.

(2)完成句子

She struck her head on the wall and let out a scream of pain.

她头撞到墙上,疼得大叫一声。

#### 4. no + 比较级 + than 跟……一样不,不比……更……

(教材原文) The world went into shock, most people having assumed that this space flight would be **no more dangerous than** travelling in an aeroplane.

全世界深感震惊,大多数人认为这次太空飞行不会比乘坐飞机更危险。

[句式分析] “no + 比较级 + than”意为“跟……一样不……,不比……更……”,否定前后两者。

### 一感 读句子感悟用法

It is **no thinner than** a piece of hair.

它不比一根头发细。

Mary is **no fatter than** Shirley.

玛丽和雪莉都不胖。

Your cellphone is **not more expensive than** mine.

你的手机不如我的手机贵。

Some people may think that a garden is **no more than** plants, flowers, patterns and masses of colours.

一些人可能认为花园只是植物、花朵、形状和大量的颜色。

The river was not high, so there was **not more than** a two- or three-mile current.

河水不高,所以只有不超过两三英里的水流。

Seeing what he is like now, I am **more than** angry sad.

看到他现在这个样子,与其说我难过,还不如说我生气。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)“not + 比较级 + than...”表示前者 _____ 后者。 (2) _____ more than 仅仅,不过 not more than 不超过,不多于 not more... than... 没有……那样…… more... _____ ... 比……更……;与其说……倒不如说…… more than 不仅仅;非常;多于
探究结论	(1)不如 (2)no; than

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① This dictionary is more (much) than a dictionary; it's like a grammar book.

② It's no more than ten minutes' walk from the station.

(2)翻译句子

① 这个新装置不比一块肥皂大。

The new device is no bigger than a soap.

② 有些竹子还没草高。

Some bamboo is no taller than grass.

③ 这本书跟那本书一样无趣。

This book is no more interesting than that one.

④ 我不如我的哥哥聪明。

I am not more intelligent than my brother.

⑤ 我认为与其说她不好,不如说她害羞。

I think she's more shy than unfriendly.

## 课后素养评价(二十七)

## I. 单词拼写

- There are dark shadows (阴影) under and around my eyes, which makes me look exhausted.
- Seeing the big fire, the girl started screaming (尖声大叫) out of fear.
- To our disappointment, the party was suspended (中止) because the power was off.
- Since then, Michael has lived an unexceptional (平常的) life.
- Tragically (不幸的是), one more medical worker passed away before they could be reunited with their families.
- Luckily, none of the passengers and crew (全体机组人员) were injured.
- Services don't come into being instantaneously (瞬间) and then exist forever.

## II. 短语填空

set foot on; add... to...; be sure of; turn into; no longer; become accustomed to; go wrong; be replaced by; take off; make it

- Most of the students have become accustomed to getting up early after entering senior high school.
- When the delayed flight will take off depends much on the weather.
- It is believed that teachers will never be replaced by computers in the classroom.
- The cost of advertising is added to the price of the article.
- It was the first time I had set foot on African soil.
- It's believed that little lies may turn into big lies.
- Why do I always get the blame for everything that goes wrong?
- Thanks to the new technology, food shortages are no longer a problem in this area.
- I don't think we'll make it, but let's try anyway.
- As we have been practising regularly, we are sure of winning the game this time.

## III. 完成句子

- No matter how hard it is, we should try our best to get accustomed to the new surroundings.  
不论多么艰苦,我们都应努力适应新环境。
- The terrible experience seemed to have cast a shadow on the little girl.  
这次可怕的经历好像已经给小女孩留下了阴影。

- In his opinion, playing the piano is no more difficult than playing the guitar.  
在他看来,弹钢琴并不比弹吉他难。
- No news announced, who will take Tom's place to be the manager is not clear.  
没有公布任何消息,谁将取代汤姆来做经理还不清楚。
- I'd like to fight him because he's undefeated and I want to be the first man to beat him.  
我想和他对阵,因为他从没有输过,而我想成为打败他的第一人。

## IV. 完形填空

We step out of the cold and into the warmth of the library. Before my children have even finished returning their books, my 2-year-old son has 1 the children's librarians down at the other end of the building.

"Ms Amie!" he shouts. "Ms Ann Marie!" He skip-hops (蹦蹦跳跳) the 2 of the library, past the cozy fireplace. My 8-year-old daughter 3 at me: We're both delighted by his love for the library.

When we arrive at the children's room, with a tree decorated with beloved children's-book characters, the two librarians bend down to 4 the kids, directing them to old favourites and brand-new 5. "I ordered this one just for you!" Ms Amie tells my son, 6 him a book about tow trucks.

The children settle in; this is their 7 place, and mine too.

We left the city chaos and noise of Los Angeles for a(n) 8 life on a remote island in Alaska. While we sometimes miss what big 9 have to offer, I've been able to 10 and enjoy life with my family here.

We don't have children's museums or a zoo. We don't have 11 ice cream shops or gyms or indoor play spaces that can be 12 for very expensive birthday parties.

But we didn't move here for any of those. I've 13 my life used to move so quickly that I was overlooking opportunities to even 14 all those options available to me. I was always looking ahead to the next thing. Now I look around me more and the 15 are impressive. I should have been doing that all along.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者从大城市移居到偏远的岛屿过慢生活的经历和感受。

- A. left                      B. spotted  
C. approached              D. passed  
B 根据语境可知,儿童图书馆管理员在图书馆的另外一头,所以这里只能选“发现”。故选 B。
- A. length                    B. lines  
C. fence                      D. ropes  
A 根据上文“my 2-year-old son has 1 the children’s librarians down at the other end of the building”以及下文“past the cozy fireplace”可推知,作者的儿子从图书馆的这一头走到另一头,走过了图书馆的整个“长度”。故选 A。
- A. shouts                    B. laughs  
C. stares                      D. smiles  
D 根据下文“We’re both delighted by his love for the library”可知,作者的女儿是对作者会心一笑,所以“微笑”符合语境。故选 D。
- A. touch                      B. teach  
C. greet                        D. praise  
C 根据上文“When we arrive at the children’s room”可知,作者和孩子们来到儿童阅览室,图书馆管理员是在“迎接”孩子们。故选 C。
- A. eras                        B. books  
C. start                        D. fashion  
B 根据上文“the two librarians”以及“directing them to old favourites and brand-new 5”可知,图书馆管理员带孩子们看图书馆里他们喜爱的旧书和新进的“书”。故选 B。
- A. buying                    B. reading  
C. showing                    D. ordering  
C 根据上文“I ordered this one just for you!”可知,图书馆管理员把新进的一本书“展示”给作者的儿子看。故选 C。
- A. lucky                      B. hopeful  
C. safe                         D. happy  
D 根据上文“old favourites”可知,孩子们可以看到喜欢的读物,他们喜欢图书馆,所以说这是他们的“快乐”之地。故选 D。
- A. quiet                      B. easy  
C. wealthy                    D. lonely  
A 根据上文“We left the city chaos and noise of Los Angeles”可知,作者离开了喧闹之地,到了阿拉斯加的一个“安静的”地方生活。故选 A。
- A. companies                B. cities  
C. libraries                    D. islands  
B 根据上文“We left the city chaos and noise of Los Angeles for a(n) 8 life on a remote island in Alaska.”可知,作者一家从城市搬到了偏远的岛屿上

生活。这两种生活是不一样的,故可推测作者一家有时候会怀念大“城市”提供的一切。故选 B。

- A. give up                    B. cheer up  
C. slow down                D. calm down  
C 根据上文“We left the city chaos and noise of Los Angeles”以及下文“We don’t have children’s museums or a zoo.”可知,作者把现在的慢节奏生活与城市里的快节奏生活作对比,因此“慢下来”符合题意。故选 C。
- A. fancy                      B. profitable  
C. free                         D. dirty  
A 根据语境和岛上简单的生活可知,用“精致的”一词形容城市里的冰激凌店合适。故选 A。
- A. removed                 B. separated  
C. rented                      D. exchanged  
C 根据常识可知,在城市里,人们会租用室内场地开生日派对,故“租用”符合题意。故选 C。
- A. forgotten                 B. realised  
C. regretted                  D. proved  
B 根据下文“my life used to move so quickly that I was overlooking opportunities”可知,这是作者“意识到”的事情。故选 B。
- A. use                         B. see  
C. recognise                  D. appreciate  
D 根据上文“my life used to move so quickly that I was overlooking opportunities”可知,城市的生活节奏快,作者会忽略一些事情,因此当时没能“领略”城市生活所提供的种种选择。故选 D。
- A. achievements            B. benefits  
C. stories                      D. views  
D 根据上文“Now I look around me more”可知,作者所见的“景象”让他印象深刻。故选 D。

**【微点写作】太空生活日记**

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 由于没有地心引力,地球上最简单的日常工作在太空中可能会非常困难。  
There being no gravity, the most straightforward daily tasks on Earth can be very difficult in space.
- 工作了两个小时后,我需要锻炼一段时间来保持肌肉强壮。  
Having worked for two hours, I need to work out for some time to keep my muscles strong.
- 到了睡觉的时候,我钻进睡袋,并且把它绑在墙上。  
When it was time to go to bed, I got into a sleeping bag and tied it to the wall.



## Section III Using language

## 学习任务及目标

1. 复习并总结情态动词在不同语境下的功能,并在真实语境中对其加以运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 关注语用功能,学会表达自己的观点和期望,并能够在实际生活中运用所学表达;
4. 学习并掌握与太空探索相关的词汇和表达,同时积累更多的相关词汇和表达,并在实际生活中对其进行运用。

## 自主式预习

## I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Our luggage was checked all the way through to our final **destination**. 目的地
2. If a **spacecraft** travels faster than 11 km a second, it escapes Earth's gravity. 航天器
3. The two leaders have worked together on **numerous** occasions. 许多的
4. The ozone (臭氧) layer protects Earth from the sun's **ultraviolet** rays. 紫外线的
5. His car **collided** with another car during a heavy rainstorm. 相撞
6. We have no option but to call off the **mission**. 任务
7. Last week we witnessed the first **lunar** eclipse in the new century. 月亮的
8. The airline's biggest headache is the increase in the price of **aviation** fuel. 航空
9. It did give me a **boost** to win such an important competition. 激励
10. According to the **observatory**, there will be a total solar eclipse tomorrow. 天文台
11. After the party, he had to **bid** farewell to the host. 向……告别
12. The horses he paints are extremely **lifelike**. 逼真的

## II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
simulator <i>n.</i> (用于人员训练的)模拟装置, 模拟器	simulate <i>v.</i> 模仿, 模拟
	simulated <i>adj.</i> 模仿的, 模拟的, 仿真的
	simulation <i>n.</i> 模拟; 仿真; 假装; 冒充

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
submit <i>v.</i> 提交	submission <i>n.</i> 提交的文件; 意见; 屈服
	submissive <i>adj.</i> 驯服的; 顺从的
awesome <i>adj.</i> 很好的, 了不起的	awe <i>n.</i> 敬畏; 惊叹

## III. 补全短语

1. set out 动身, 出发; 开始
2. according to 按照, 根据
3. take part in 参加
4. sign up for 报名参加
5. take in 吸收; 理解; 欺骗
6. be scared of 害怕
7. put on 穿上, 戴上
8. make contact with 与……接触/联系

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: so... that...(so...位于句首)

So great was the distance from Earth that it would need to travel for almost six years to reach its destination.

它到地球的距离如此之远,以至于它需要飞行近6年才能到达其目的地。

2. 句型公式: no wonder...

No wonder so many people took to social media to bid it goodbye, saying, "Farewell, dear Cassini! We shall never forget you!"

难怪如此多的人喜欢在社交媒体上跟它告别:“再见,亲爱的‘卡西尼’号!我们永远不会忘记你!”

3. 句型公式: as 引导定语从句

So, as Fermi said, "Where is everybody?"

所以,正如费米所说:“人都到哪里去了?”

4. 句型公式:so that 引导目的状语从句

Finally, on 15 September 2017, *Cassini* was

pointed towards Saturn so that it would meet a fiery end.

最后,在2017年9月15日,“卡西尼”号被定向土星的方向,以便它迎接一个引燃的结局。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. submit v. 提交,呈送,递交;(使)顺从,(使)服从,(使)屈服;建议,主张

(教材原文) **Submit** a three-minute video introducing yourself and saying why you would be an ideal space candidate.

提交一个三分钟的视频,介绍你自己,并说明为什么你会成为一个理想的太空候选人。

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

The representatives **submitted** many important problems for discussion.

代表们提交了许多重要问题以供讨论。

All important problems must be **submitted to** the committee.

所有重要问题都必须提交给委员会。

Never **submit to** a threat.

永远不要屈服于威胁。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)submit sb. sth. = submit sth. to sb. 把某物提交给某人 submit _____ 向……屈服/服从…… submit oneself to... 使某人自己服从…… submit that... 建议/主张……
	(2) submission <i>n.</i> 提交的文件;意见;屈服 (3)submissive <i>adj.</i> 驯服的;顺从的
探究结论	(1)to

#### 名师点拨

submit 的过去式、过去分词以及现在分词分别为:submitted, submitted, submitting。

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① Have you submitted (submit) your homework?

② (2023·新高考II卷) The researchers then

examined these submissions (submit), coding(编码) experiences into different categories.

③ I will submit the report to the chairman tomorrow.

④ Children at school must submit to the orders of the teachers.

(2)完成句子

We have to submit ourselves to the discipline of our school.

我们必须遵守学校纪律。

### 2. be scared of 害怕;担心

(教材原文)**Scared of** being space sick?

害怕患上太空病吗?

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

She **is scared of going** out alone.

她不敢一个人外出。

People **are scared to use** the buses late at night.

人们害怕在深夜乘坐公共汽车。

I'm **scared that** I'm going to fall off the bike.

我担心自己会从自行车上掉下去。

They told us that they didn't want to be lectured or made to feel guilty or **scared into eating** more fruit and vegetables.

她们告诉我们,她们不想被教训或产生负罪感或被恐吓吃更多的水果和蔬菜。

#### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)be scared _____ sth. 害怕做某事 be scared that... 害怕……,担心…… be scared to death 吓死
	(2)scare v. 使害怕,使担心 scare sb. into doing sth. 恐吓某人做某事
探究结论	(1)to do/of doing

#### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ① There's nothing for you to be scared of.  
 ② He was far too scared to tell (tell) anybody about it.  
 ③ She got so scared (scare) that she stood there dumbfounded.  
 ④ Local businesses were scared into paying

protection money.

(2) 句式升级

He was scared of the barking dog, so he dared not approach the house.

→ Scared of the barking dog, he dared not approach the house. (过去分词作状语)

## 语法探究

### 复习情态动词

#### 「语法感知」

- ① When she was young, she **could** dance very well.  
 ② **Could** you tell me more about it?  
 ③ He **can't** have slept through all that noise.  
 ④ An experienced teacher **can** make mistakes.  
 ⑤ **Might** I ask what you're doing here?  
 ⑥ The sacrifice of the *Challenger* calls to us, reminding us that..., no matter how distant they **might** seem.  
 ⑦ Since you are here already, you **may as well** stay here and enjoy yourself.  
 ⑧ The sacrifice of the *Challenger* calls to us, reminding us that we **must** continue to reach for the stars...  
 ⑨ If you **must** smoke, please go out.  
 ⑩ **Shall** we begin our lesson?  
 ⑪ Tell Jerry that he **shall** get a gift if he is nice.  
 ⑫ It's strange that he **should** be late.  
 ⑬ **Will/Would** you go with me?  
 ⑭ The world went into shock, most people having assumed that this space flight **would** be no more dangerous than travelling in an aeroplane.  
 ⑮ But there was never any doubt that manned flights **would** continue, and on 29 September 1988, the space shuttle programme resumed with the successful launch of *Discovery*.

- 以上例句中①②③④为 can/could 的用法,它们可以表示能力,允许,推测,客观或理论上的可能性。
- 例句⑤⑥⑦为 may/might 的用法,它们可以表示请求,推测等, may/might as well 意为“不妨……”。
- 例句⑧中 must 意为“一定”;例句⑨中 must 意为“硬要”。
- 例句⑩中 shall 表示征求对方意见;例句⑪中 shall 表示允诺。
- 例句⑫中 should 意为“竟然”。
- 例句⑬中 will/would 表示请求,建议;例句⑭中

would 表示习惯;例句⑮中 will/would 表示意愿和意志。

#### 「语法精讲」

##### 一、情态动词概述

情态动词主要用来表明说话者的情感、态度和语气。情态动词不能单独作谓语,需要和实义动词一起构成谓语。情态动词主要有 can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, ought to, will, would, need, dare 等。

##### 二、情态动词的基本用法

###### 1. can/could

(1) 表示能力,意为“能,会”。

I **can't** promise anything, but I'll do what I **can**.  
 我不能许诺什么,但我会尽力而为。

(2) 表示请求、许可,意为“能,可以”,与 may 相近。

**Can/Could** you help me with it?  
 你能帮我一下吗?

(3) 表示客观可能性,意为“有时候会……”。

It **can** be quite cold here in winter.  
 这里的冬天有时还真够冷的。

###### 2. may/might

(1) 表示请求、许可,比 can 正式。

**May** I use your computer?  
 我可以用一下你的电脑吗?

(2) 表示希望、祈求、祝愿,常用结构为 may + 主语 + v.。

**May** all of our wishes come true.  
 愿我们所有的愿望都能实现。

###### 3. must

(1) 表示主观看法,意为“必须”,肯定回答用 must, 否定回答用 needn't 或 don't have to。

—**Must** I give up smoking?

——我必须戒烟吗?

—Yes, you **must**./No, you **needn't**/you **don't have to**.

——是的,你必须。/不,你不必。

(2)表示坚持,意为“偏偏,偏要”。

**Must** you make so much noise?

你非得弄出这么多噪声吗?

(3) **mustn't** 表示禁止,意为“不许,禁止”。

We **mustn't** let the water run to waste.

我们不能让这水白白流掉。

#### 4. shall

(1)用于第一人称,表示将要做某事。

I **shall** travel to New York by air this weekend.

这个周末我将要乘飞机去纽约旅行。

(2)用于第一、第三人称,表示征求对方意见。

**Shall** the driver wait outside?

司机在外边等着可以吗?

(3)用于第二、三人称,表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺或威胁。

It has been announced that candidates **shall** remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected.

据宣布,在所有试卷收上来之前,考生必须留在自己的座位上。

#### 5. should

(1)表示劝告、建议、责任、义务等,意为“应该”。

I **should** go and visit him this afternoon, but I wonder if I will be free.

今天下午我应该去看望他,但我不知道我是否有空。

(2)表示“竟然”。

It's strange that he **should** fail in the examination.  
真奇怪,他竟然考试不及格。

(3)表示“万一”,常用于条件句。

If it **should** rain tomorrow, I won't go climbing.

万一明天下雨,我就不去爬山了。

#### 6. will/would

(1)表示意愿。

They **won't** lend us any more money.

他们不愿再借给我们钱了。

(2)表示请求。

**Will/Would** you do me a favour?

请帮我一下,好吗?

(3)表示一般真理,意为“总是”。

Oil **will** float on water.

油总是浮在水面上。

(4) **will** 表示现在的习惯, **would** 表示过去的习惯,意为“常常做某事”。

He **would** get up early when he lived in the country.

他住在乡下时总是早起。

#### 7. need

**need** 意为“需要”,既可作情态动词,又可作实义

动词。

(1) **need** 作为情态动词,主要用于否定句和疑问句中,其否定形式为 **needn't**,意为“不必”。用 **need** 提问时,肯定回答为 **must**,否定回答为 **needn't**。

— **Need** I go with you?

——我需要和你一起去吗?

— Yes, you **must**. / No, you **needn't**.

——是的,你必须。/不,你不必。

(2) **need** 作为实义动词,此时有人称、数和时态的变化,如果是人作主语,后面多接动词不定式。

He **doesn't need to do** it.

他不必做这件事。

#### 8. dare

**dare** 意为“敢,敢于”,既可作情态动词,又可作实义动词。

(1) **dare** 作为情态动词,多用于否定句、疑问句或条件句中,后接动词原形。

I don't know whether he **dare** say that to her.

我不知道他是否敢对她说那件事。

(2) **dare** 作为实义动词,此时有人称、数和时态的变化。

He **doesn't dare to interrupt**.

他不敢插嘴。

### 三、情态动词的其他用法

#### 1. “情态动词+动词原形”表示推测的用法

(1) **must** 表示推测时,意为“一定”,用于肯定句中。其后接动词原形是对现在情况的推测。

Bob is very fat. He **must** like food which contains a lot of fat.

鲍勃很胖。他一定喜欢含有许多脂肪的食品。

(2) **can** 和 **could** 表示推测时,意为“可能”,主要用于否定句和疑问句中。其后接动词原形是对现在情况的推测。

That man **can't** be John, because he is on business in Guilin at present.

那名男子不可能是约翰,因为他目前正在桂林出差。

(3) **may** 和 **might** 表示推测时,意为“可能”,可用于肯定句、疑问句或否定句中。其后接动词原形是对现在情况的推测。

— Are you going to attend Mary's graduation party?

— I'm not sure. I **may/might** have no time then.

——你打算参加玛丽的毕业派对吗?

——我不能确定。我那个时候可能没时间。

(4) **should/ought to** 表示推测时,意为“理应,应该”,表示某个情况是合理的,符合逻辑的。其可用于肯定句、疑问句或否定句中。

Those children left school at four o'clock. They **should/ought to** be at home by now.

那些孩子们是四点钟离开学校的。他们现在应该在家里了。

### 名师点拨

按照推测可能性大小排列如下:

must > can > could > may > might

#### 2. “情态动词+have+过去分词”的用法

(1)“must have+过去分词”表示对过去发生的情况推测,只用于肯定句中。

Tom went out to play football. He **must have finished** his homework.

汤姆出去踢足球了。他一定是完成作业了。

(2)“can have+过去分词”和“could have+过去分词”的用法

①“can/could have+过去分词”表示对过去发生的情况的推测,用于否定句和疑问句中。

②“could have+过去分词”表示过去本来能做某事,但实际上并未做。

You **could have won** first prize in this competition, but you were too nervous.

你本来能在这次竞赛中获得第一名的,但你太紧张了。

(3)“may have+过去分词”和“might have+过去分词”的用法

①“may have+过去分词”和“might have+过去分词”都可用于对过去发生的事情的推测,可用于肯定句、否定句、疑问句中。

Mr Lee wasn't punctual for the meeting. He **might have been** caught in the traffic jam.

李先生没有按时参加会议。他可能是遇上交通堵塞了。

②“might have+过去分词”表示本来可能做某事,但实际上未做,其程度比 could 低。

You **might have met** him in the stadium, but you came late.

你本来可能会在体育馆见到他的,但你来晚了。

(4)“should have+过去分词”和“ought to have+过去分词”都表示本来应该做某事,但实际上未做。

You **shouldn't have shouted** at your parents yesterday. You must have been crazy.

你昨天不应该对你的父母大喊的。你一定是疯了。

(5)“needn't have+过去分词”的用法

“needn't have+过去分词”表示本来没必要做某事,但实际上做了。

As it was a small house party, we **needn't have**

**dressed** up so formally.

由于它只是个小型的家庭聚会,我们没必要穿得那么正式。

## 「语法冲关」

### I. 从括号内选择适当的情态动词填空

- As a graduate, you should (should/can) listen to the talk about how to find a good job.
- For the engine to work, the green lever must (may/must) be in the “up” position.
- According to the rule, all the students shall (shall/will) go to school before 8:00 am.
- I would (could/would) be surprised if he did not agree with me.
- You can bring a gift to the hostess, but it needn't (needn't/mustn't) be too expensive.
- Susan's family is very rich and her parents can (may/can) afford to send her to China for further study.
- Don't worry, Martin. You shall (shall/must) have a new pair of sports shoes tomorrow.
- The light in his office is still on. He must (should/must) be in.
- It can't (can't/mustn't) be the headmaster. He has gone to America.
- I'm afraid you dare (dare/need) not do such a terrible thing.

### II. 根据汉语提示,用情态动词完成对话

- A: Yong Hui looks very angry. What has happened?  
B: Oh, Wang Peng must have won his customers back (一定把他的顾客赢回去了).
- A: Could you give me some advice, Mrs Brown?  
B: Of course. First, you should apologise to Helen (应该向海伦道歉).
- A: You mustn't park your car (不许停你的车) here. It may be in the way.  
B: Sorry. I will drive it away.
- A: It's a great pity that the home team lost the match.  
B: Yes. The captain could have played better (本来能打得更好).
- A: Mr Smith hasn't turned up at the party yet.  
B: Oh. He may/might have forgotten about it (可能已经忘记了它).

## 课后素养评价(二十八)

### I. 词语填空

sign up for; take care of; put on; go on; set out;  
be scared of; take in; submit; take part in;  
according to; make the most of; awesome

1. He takes part in the speech competition and wins the second prize in his group.
2. Humans take in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide.
3. What made you decide to sign up for that art course?
4. Some scientists say unemployment will go on rising for some time.
5. He has achieved what he set out to do three years ago.
6. You've been absent six times according to our records.
7. The plan will be submitted to the committee for official approval.
8. You should make the most of your spare time to get good grades.
9. The view from the top of that mountain is awesome.
10. I can eat what I want but I never put on weight.
11. When he fell ill, his wife took care of everything for the family.
12. She was very brave, but she was scared of the doctor.

### II. 用适当的情态动词填空

1. It is cold in the room. They must have turned off the heating.
2. You may/can leave when you've finished the work.
3. She can speak French and Spanish besides English.
4. You needn't finish that work today because it is unimportant.
5. Students should wear school uniforms according to the school regulation.
6. Every time she was in trouble, she would turn to him for help.

### III. 完成句子

1. So hard did he study that he passed the exam in the end.  
他学习那么努力,以至最终通过了考试。
2. As is mentioned above, the key to success is hard work.  
正如上面提到的那样,成功的关键是努力工作。
3. No wonder you're tired, you've been walking for

hours.

难怪你累了,你一直走了好几个小时。

4. If I had the chance to go there, I'd go without hesitation.  
要是我有机会去那儿,我会毫不犹豫去的。
5. We all arrive as early as we can so that we have time to warm up.  
我们都尽可能早地到达,以便我们有时间热身。

### IV. 阅读理解

#### A

A new study suggests the earth could have lost up to 60 percent of its atmosphere in the collision of space objects that created the moon. Most scientists believe this event happened about 4 billion years ago when the earth was still developing. They think a massive object, possibly the size of the planet Mars, hit the earth, sending vaporised particles into space. Gravity is believed to have brought these particles together to form the moon.

The study presents evidence that this collision might have caused the earth to lose 10 to 60 percent of the atmosphere it had. A report on the study appeared in the publication *The Astrophysical Journal Letters*. The researchers' impact assumption is one of three leading theories of how the moon was formed. The others suggest the moon was either created at the same time as the earth, or that it was captured by the earth's gravitational field as it travelled through space.

The researchers decided to explore how massive collisions of objects affected rocky planets with thin atmospheres. To do this, they carried out more than 300 "supercomputer simulations". The experiment considered the positions at which the objects hit the planet, the speed of the impacts, as well as the size and mass of the colliding objects. Earlier research suggested that impact collisions during the latter stages of the formation of a planet can affect its atmosphere. The computer models in this study expanded on this idea. They showed that a collision like the one that may have formed the moon likely took a large part of the earth's atmosphere.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。一项新的研究显示,地球在与其他太空物体碰撞而产生月球的过程中失去了多达60%的大气层。

1. What do most scientists believe?

- A. The earth has lost its atmosphere in the collision.
- B. The moon was created in the collision of space objects.
- C. The planet Mars hit the earth about 4 billion years ago.
- D. The collision of space objects caused the atmosphere to increase.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*They think a massive object, possibly the size of the planet Mars, hit the earth, sending vaporised particles into space. Gravity is believed to have brought these particles together to form the moon.*”可知,大部分科学家相信,地球与一个尺寸与火星相当的物体碰撞,将许多汽化粒子分散到宇宙中,引力又将这些粒子聚集在一起形成了月球。故选 B。

2. What can we infer from Paragraph 2?

- A. The collision of the earth and the moon affected gravity.
- B. The atmosphere on the earth is the cause of the collision.
- C. Scientists hold different points on how the moon was formed.
- D. An agreement on the formation of the moon has been reached.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*The researchers' impact assumption is one of three leading theories of how the moon was formed.*”可知,对于月球是如何形成的问题有三种主要的理论,即科学家们对月球是如何形成的持不同观点。故选 C。

3. What does the passage talk about?

- A. The process of the moon's being formed.
- B. The heated debate among different scientists.
- C. The supercomputer experiment of planets' collision.
- D. The collision of space objects affected the earth's atmosphere.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段第一句“*A new study suggests the earth could have lost up to 60 percent of its atmosphere in the collision of space objects that created the moon.*”,第二段第一句“*The study presents evidence that this collision might have caused the earth to lose 10 to 60 percent of the atmosphere it had.*”及最后

一段最后一句“*They showed that a collision like the one that may have formed the moon likely took a large part of the earth's atmosphere.*”可知,本文主要是关于太空物体的碰撞影响了地球的大气层。故选 D。

4. What is the purpose of the passage?

- A. To inform.                      B. To persuade.
- C. To debate.                      D. To warn.

A 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段第一句“*A new study suggests the earth could have lost up to 60 percent of its atmosphere in the collision of space objects that created the moon.*”可知,本文的目的是告知读者一项新的研究。故选 A。

**B**

Some new comets (彗星) have been discovered accidentally by amateur (业余的) astronomers. Surprisingly a few bright comets have been discovered with the naked eye by members of the general public. However, a great number of comets are found by comet hunters carrying out telescope searches of chosen areas of the night sky.

As the movement of all comets is directed around the Sun and because these bodies brighten as they move towards the Sun, there is a greater possibility for the discovery of a new comet in the skies towards the Sun rather than away from the Sun's direction. This means that searches should be put on the western sky after evening light and on the eastern sky before morning light.

From the astronomical point there is no time during the year which is the best for the discovery of new comets. A search can be done at any time providing there is no bright Moon.

Studies done on the discovery conditions of comets discovered before show that more comets have been discovered in the morning sky than in the evening sky. Thus the smart comet hunter should make sure that morning activity receives as much if not more attention than any evening effort.

In recent times, the use of advanced CCD technology to discover objects close to the earth will in the future greatly reduce the chances of new comets being found with small telescopes. An example of the new technology is the very successful

LINEAR programme operating in New Mexico. However, until a similar system is based in the southern half of the earth there will continue to be chances for the discovery of new comets which come from the south.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了观测彗星的要领。

5. What are comet hunters advised to do?
- A. Look away from the Sun.  
B. Stay where there's bright light.  
C. Face the western sky in the daytime.  
D. Turn to the east in the early morning.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*This means that searches should be put on the western sky after evening light and on the eastern sky before morning light.*”可知,早晨的太阳出来之前应观测东面的天空。故选 D。
6. What do we know about the time for the discovery of new comets?
- A. Days when they're close to the earth are great chances.  
B. Certain fixed days are best for watching comets.  
C. Every day is the same if there's no bright Moon.  
D. Days with the Moon should never be missed.
- C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*A search can be done at any time providing there is no bright Moon.*”可知,只要没有月亮,每一天对彗星猎手来说都可以观测。故选 C。
7. Which of the following is a smart idea for comet hunters?
- A. Paying more attention in the morning than in the evening.  
B. Being equally serious both in the morning and evening.  
C. Being more relaxed in the morning than in the evening.  
D. Forming a habit of working only in the morning.
- B 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*Thus the smart comet hunter should make sure that morning activity receives as much if not more attention than any evening effort.*”可知,早晚观测彗星应该投入一样的精力。故选 B。
8. What can be inferred about the CCD technology?

- A. It's similar to a telescope.  
B. It'll disappoint comet hunters.  
C. It's spreading all over the world.  
D. It'll make comet hunters feel lucky.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*the use of advanced CCD technology... greatly reduce the chances of new comets being found with small telescopes*”可知,这一技术降低了彗星猎手发现新的彗星的概率,因此他们应该会感到有些失望。故选 B。

#### V. 完形填空

From the time I was seven, I had a dream of becoming a member of the Students' Union. I always 1 my school leaders for taking responsibility for all of us. So I dreamed of being a leader. Years flew by, and soon I was able to participate in the elections, 2 I would win. But the reality struck that I hadn't had a chance. Girls across the school 3 knew me. I just did not have what it 4 to win a school election. As I cried in my room that evening, I suddenly took a deep 5 and decided I wouldn't stop dreaming.

What were the points that would work in my favour? I had good grades, and I was friendly and helpful. I would not allow my plain appearance to 6 me back from putting my best foot forward. That evening, I began my election 7 a whole year in advance.

I loved making friends and I liked being helpful, so I decided that perhaps I could use these 8 to work to my advantage. In order to learn how to 9 a great election speech, I also 10 a course on effective public speaking.

The day after the election, when the principal 11 I won the second highest number of votes, the students 12. Suddenly, I realised that I had 13 much more than I had dreamed of. I had won acceptance and love of my schoolmates and they knew me as somebody who would 14 them. I was able to put a smile on their faces and 15 their day.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者为了进入学生会的梦想所做的努力。作者最终赢得了选举,顺利地进入了学生会,在实现了儿时梦想的同时也收获了很多。



1. A. admired                      B. remembered  
C. praised                          D. believed  
A 根据下文“So I dreamed of being a leader.”可知,作者总是钦佩学校的领袖们对所有人负责。故选 A。
2. A. planning                      B. praying  
C. considering                    D. judging  
B 根据上文“I was able to participate in the elections”可知,因为作者能够参加选举了,所以作者祈祷自己能获胜。故选 B。
3. A. almost                        B. gradually  
C. hardly                          D. neither  
C 根据上文“But the reality struck that I hadn’t had a chance.”可知,作者几乎没有机会获胜,由此可知,全校女生几乎不认识作者。故选 C。
4. A. took                          B. educated  
C. provided                        D. meant  
A 学校几乎没有女生认识作者,所以作者不具备赢得学校选举所需要的条件。故选 A。
5. A. sigh                          B. surprise  
C. confuse                        D. breath  
D 根据下文的“and decided I wouldn’t stop dreaming”可知,作者深吸一口气,决定不放弃。take a deep breath 表示“深呼吸”,为固定短语。故选 D。
6. A. put                            B. leave  
C. hold                              D. fight  
C 根据下文的“That evening, I began my election 7 a whole year in advance.”可知,作者不允许自己普通的外表阻碍自己向前迈进。hold sb. back from doing sth.表示“阻止某人做某事”,为固定搭配。故选 C。
7. A. classes                        B. chances  
C. dreams                         D. plans  
D 空前一句说到,作者不允许自己普通的外表阻碍自己向前迈进,所以此处表示作者开始了自己的选举计划。故选 D。
8. A. people                        B. qualities  
C. ways                            D. attitude  
B 根据上文“I loved making friends and I liked being helpful”可知,作者想把这些好的品质作为自己的优势。故选 B。
9. A. reach                         B. present  
C. show                            D. repeat

- B 根据下文的“a great election speech”可知,此处表示发表演讲,需用动词 present。故选 B。
10. A. attended                    B. prepared  
C. reminded                      D. referred  
A 根据下文的“a course”可知,此处表示“上课”,需用动词 attended。故选 A。
11. A. discussed                    B. pretended  
C. announced                    D. promised  
C 根据下文的“I won the second highest number of votes”可知,此处表示宣布选举结果,需用动词 announced。故选 C。
12. A. nodded                      B. cheered  
C. gathered                        D. waited  
B 因为作者以第二高的票数获胜,所以学生们欢呼了起来。故选 B。
13. A. achieved                    B. celebrated  
C. devoted                        D. developed  
A 此处表示作者意识到自己取得了比梦想的更多的收获,需用动词 achieved。故选 A。
14. A. rely to                        B. take in  
C. look for                        D. stand by  
D 根据下文“I was able to put a smile on their faces”可知,此处表示作者会支持自己的同学们。故选 D。
15. A. brighten                      B. bless  
C. expand                         D. enrich  
A 根据上文内容可知,作者可以使同学们的脸上带着微笑,所以此处表示作者会让他们的日子变得更美好。故选 A。

## 【微点写作】太空生活日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 说到太空食品,很多人认为它缺乏多样性,味道不好。

Speaking of space food, many people think that it lacks variety and tastes bad.

2. 在来到这里之前,我假设的许多东西都被证明是错误的。

There are many things that I had assumed before coming up here that have proven to be wrong.

3. 这是我第一次在太空生活。

This is the first time that I have lived in space.

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,把握文章大意,了解望远镜的发展史及其重要意义;
3. 了解“旅行者 1 号”太空探测器的相关信息,理解其携带信息的重要意义。

### 自主式预习

#### 「基础预习」

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

##### (一)核心词汇

1. self-discipline *n.* 自我约束,自律
2. fetch *v.* (去)拿来
3. sneeze *v.* 打喷嚏
4. disc *n.* 激光唱片;光碟,光盘
5. straightforward *adj.* 简单的
6. invisible *adj.* 看不见的
7. be composed of 由……组成
8. look back to/at 回首
9. focus on 聚焦于;专注于
10. (be) similar to 与……相似
11. regard... as... 把……认为是……;把……当作……

12. in reality 事实上,实际上
13. be engaged in 忙于;从事于
14. more or less 或多或少;差不多
15. carry out 实行,实施

##### (二)阅读词汇

1. pepper *n.* 胡椒粉
2. conceivably *adv.* 可以相信地;可想象地
3. muscle *n.* 肌肉
4. telescope *n.* 望远镜
5. angle *v.* 斜置
6. galaxy *n.* 星系
7. cosmic *adj.* 宇宙的
8. subatomic *adj.* 亚原子的;原子内的
9. particle *n.* 粒子
10. the naked eye 肉眼
11. rinse off 冲洗掉;漂洗

#### 「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	People in ancient times were fascinated by the night sky.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• People used their <b>1. imaginations</b> to create a world in the sky.</li> <li>• It was believed that the large-eyed bronze statues from the Chinese archeological site at Sanxingdui were able to look across great distances into <b>2. the stars</b>.</li> </ul>
Part 2 (Para. 2)	What happened when the first <b>3. telescope</b> was invented.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Our power to <b>4. investigate</b> and understand space changed dramatically.</li> <li>• It enabled us to realise the <b>5. universe</b> is far larger than we imagined.</li> </ul>

续表

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3 (Para. 3)	What happened when the Hubble Space Telescope was launched into orbit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Hubble Space Telescope was launched into orbit, people could enjoy the images of the universe taken from <b>6. <u>beyond Earth</u></b> for the first time.</li> <li>We could see so much over great distances, from enormous clouds of gas to huge <b>7. <u>black holes</u></b>, and even to new planets.</li> </ul>
Part 4 (Para. 4)	A brief introduction to the FAST telescope.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The FAST telescope was completed in China in 2016.</li> <li>It is used in the search of <b>8. <u>dark matter</u></b>. Its vast <b>9. <u>dish</u></b> has the ability to make discoveries beyond our imaginations.</li> </ul>
Part 5 (Para. 5)	The universe remains unexplored.	Though more and more advanced telescopes allow us to see further and further into space and look back at the past billions of years ago, there is still so much of the universe waiting for us to explore. We are still <b>10. <u>close to</u></b> the start of the journey of discovery.

## 任务型课堂

### I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Which of the following changed our power to investigate and understand space?
  - The large-eyed bronze statues.
  - The first angled telescope.
  - The first telegraph.
  - Our naked eye.
- What can be learned from Paragraph 2?
  - The Sun is the only star in the Milky Way.
  - The Milky Way is much larger than the universe.
  - The universe is limited.
  - The universe is enormous.
- What is the FAST telescope mainly used for?
  - Searching for dark matter.
  - Searching for the aliens.
  - Searching for more unknown stars.
  - Searching for black holes.

答案: 1~3 BDA

### II. 课文语法填空

The night sky has been an endless source of **1. fascination** (fascinate) since the start of human history. However, in ancient times people had to use their imaginations **2. to create** (create) a world in the sky. When the first telescope was invented, our

power to see the world changed **3. dramatically** (dramatic). It enabled us to realise that the universe is far **4. larger** (large) than we ever imagined. For example, the Sun was just one star among billions in the galaxy **5. that/which** we call the Milky Way and the Milky Way **6. itself** (it) was just one galaxy among billions of others. After the Hubble Space Telescope **7. was launched** (launch) into orbit, people could enjoy the images of the universe taken from beyond Earth **8. and** could see so much over great distances. In 2016 China's FAST telescope was completed. It is being used in the search **9. for** dark matter. With the development of science and technology, we can see further and further into space. But much of the universe remains **10. unexplored** (explore).

### III. 阅读升华

- Why do you think people have always been interested in the stars?
 

Because there are so many stars in the sky and they can't understand what the stars are.(回答合理即可)
- Do you want to study the universe? Why or why not?
 

略

## 课后素养评价(二十九)

### I. 单词拼写

- The explanation of this phenomenon is straightforward (简单的).
- It takes a lot of self-discipline (自律) to go jogging in winter.
- Fetch (拿来) me the tape from my drawer, please.
- You need to release the tension in these shoulder muscles (肌肉).
- The pepper in the food caused me to sneeze (打喷嚏).
- He teamed up with the band to produce the disc (激光唱片).
- It's known to all that some stars are invisible (看不见的) to the naked eye.

### II. 短语填空

after all; be composed of; on a regular basis; for example; more or less; in reality; look back to; carry out; focus on; be similar to; be close to; work out; be engaged in

- He has always been engaged in the development of his business.
- In reality, his English is the best in his class.
- Each group should be composed of at least ten members.
- According to medical research, doing exercise on a regular basis can release pressure.
- The advertising industry, for example, often makes use of it.
- Their house is similar to ours, but ours is bigger.
- Our boss ordered that the work should be carried out without delay.
- Let's be practical and work out the cost first.
- It is more important to get your concentration back and focus on the next question.
- I like to look back to my high school days, which were the happiest in my life.
- As far as I know, they have more or less finished the work.
- Don't blame him for breaking that vase; after all he is a child.

- The number of travellers to this country was close to one million.

### III. 完成句子

- Henry is believed to have stolen the car.  
人们相信是亨利偷了小汽车。
- The little girl hid her box, nobody knowing where it was.  
小女孩把盒子藏了起来,没有人知道它在哪里。
- It is generally assumed that pressure is caused by too much work.  
人们普遍认为,压力是由太多工作引起的。
- So angry was he that he couldn't say a word.  
他如此生气,以至于话都说不出来。
- While his story sounds fun, most of us don't regard it as the best one.  
虽然他的故事听起来很有趣,但我们大多数人并不认为它是最好的。

### IV. 七选五

#### Will Traditional TV Ever Be Replaced by Streaming?

For a long time, people had to listen to the radio to get news, drama, and music at home. This all changed with the development of the television in the early 20th century. 1 Since then, British TV viewers have enjoyed the launch of commercial TV, the addition of Channel 4, and then Channel 5, and finally the birth of paid services through satellites and cables.

#### A Slow Decline

While the uptake of TV ownership exploded, the decline of television's dominance has been slow and has been going on for the past decade. 2 Streaming services have given us access to more content than was ever possible, including back catalogues of classic shows and blockbuster movies.

#### Changing Viewing Habits

In the UK, adults are spending more time watching content on streaming services than ever before. In 2018, the figure was 26 minutes per day. 3

#### Still the King

4 For example, in 2018 UK adults

continued to watch BBC One for an average of 41 minutes per day, more than any streaming service.

Average viewing time for all traditional TV channels continues to decline though, despite much larger quantities of original content being produced by these organisations. 5

While the traditional TV networks have seen a decline, the television set itself doesn't look like it's going anywhere any time soon.

- A. This has been the trend for the last couple of decades.  
 B. The original content has included massively popular shows.  
 C. Suddenly, we were able to see what was going on, not just listen along.  
 D. The traditional TV channels are taking away audiences from streaming services.  
 E. Most major TV channels have their own catch-up streaming service.

F. While demand for streaming services is up, TV continues to be the most watched overall.

G. Today, we have the power to watch whatever, whenever, wherever we want.

答案: 1~5 CGAFB

### 【微点写作】太空生活日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 总之,在太空生活十分有趣。

In a word, living in space is rather interesting.

2. 在太空中,通过轻轻地用一只手或两根手指,我就可以随心所欲地移动重型设备。

In space, by gently using one hand or two fingers, I can move heavy equipment as I wish.

3. 因为橡胶带箍在了身上,我中途失败了。

I failed halfway with the rubber band stuck around my body.

## Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

### 学习任务及目标

- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 阅读课文,理解作者的情感,感悟课文主题,从而加深对单元主题意义的认识,养成勇于探索未知事物、科学求真的思维品质;
- 运用本单元所学词汇和表达,结合日志的写作特点,学会写太空生活日志,描述太空生活。

## 自主式预习

### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- He **fetch**ed his map, and looked for the castle, but could not find it. (去)拿来
- Media that cannot be modified, such as CD-ROM **discs**, will automatically be mounted read-only. 光盘
- The virus can be spread to others by coughing and **sneezing**. 打喷嚏
- It's up to your own **self-discipline**—how much effort you put into study. 自我约束,自律
- The **pepper** makes the food hot. 胡椒粉
- It's hoped that the **telescope** will enable scientists to see deeper into the universe than ever before. 望远镜

7. He **angled** his chair so that he could sit and watch her. 斜置

8. A proton (质子) is an elementary **particle** of matter. 粒子

9. We recognised that the task was not **straightforward**. 简单的

10. The exercises are designed to strengthen your stomach **muscles**. 肌肉

### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>fascination</u> <i>n.</i> 魅力; 着迷	fascinate <i>v.</i> 使着迷,迷住

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>mysterious</u> <i>adj.</i> 神秘的	mystery <i>n.</i> 神秘
<u>imagination</u> <i>n.</i> 想象力	imagine <i>v.</i> 想象
	imaginable <i>adj.</i> 可想象的
<u>conceivably</u> <i>adv.</i> 可以相信地; 可想象地	conceive <i>v.</i> 想象, 设想
	conceivable <i>adj.</i> 可想象的; 可信的
<u>invisible</u> <i>adj.</i> 看不见的	visible <i>adj.</i> 看得见的
	visibly <i>adv.</i> 看得见地

### III. 补全短语

- be composed of 由……组成
- in reality 事实上, 实际上
- carry out 实行, 实施
- more or less 或多或少; 差不多
- regard... as ... 把……认为是……; 把……当作……
- after all 毕竟; 终究

### IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: be + 过去分词 + to do sth.

For example, the mysterious large-eyed, bronze statues of the ancient Shu Kingdom, discovered at

the Chinese archeological site at Sanxingdui, were believed to have been able to look across great distances into the stars.

例如, 在中国考古遗址三星堆发现的古蜀国的神秘的巨目青铜像, 古时的人们认为它们能够看到遥远的星空。

- 句型公式: it + be + 过去分词 + that...

Soon, it was understood that the Sun was just one star among billions in the galaxy we call the Milky Way.

不久以后, 人们了解到太阳只是我们称之为银河系的数十亿计的恒星中的一个。

- 句型公式: so... that...

So much of the universe remains unexplored that we are still close to the start of this incredible journey of discovery.

宇宙还有很多的未知领域, 我们才刚刚接近这段奇幻发现之旅的起点。

- 句型公式: sound like + *adj.*

... while sleeping on the ceiling might sound like fun, astronauts need to be strapped to sleeping compartments to protect themselves from injury. ... 虽然睡在天花板上可能听起来很有趣, 但宇航员需要被绑在睡眠舱上, 以保护自己免受伤害。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. fetch v. (去)拿来

(教材原文) A vacuum cleaner also comes in handy for **fetching** items that are floating around out-of-reach!

一个真空吸尘器也派上了用场, 用于拿到漂浮在用手够不到的地方的物品!

#### 一感 读句子感悟用法

Could you **fetch** some chalk **from** my office?

你能从我办公室拿些粉笔来吗?

Please **fetch me my coat**.

请把我的外套拿来。

Have you **fetch**ed the doctor?

你请来医生了吗?

**Fetch** me the book **from** my drawer, please.

请把我抽屉里的书取来。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	fetch sb. sth. = fetch sth. for sb. 给某人取某物
	fetch and carry 打杂, 干杂务
	fetch... _____ ... 把……从……接来/取来
	fetch in 把……拿进来/带进来
	fetch out 把……拿出去; 使……出现/被看到; 使显出(意义、光彩等)
探究结论	from

## 【易混辨析】fetch, bring, take, carry

易混词汇	区别
fetch	指去拿(来), 强调一个来回
bring	指带来
take	指带去
carry	指携带, 没有明确的方向性

## 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I asked my son to fetch (fetch) me the evening paper.② Rose fetched my dictionary for me.③ He has the skill to fetch out the beauty of a gem (宝石) by polishing.

(2) 选词填空(fetch, bring, take, carry)

① Don't worry. Tom will take the book to you this afternoon.② Please fetch me the paper from Mr Yang's office.③ Wherever he goes, he carries his son's photo with him.④ Wait for me at home, and I will bring some vegetables and fruit for you.

## 2. after all 毕竟; 终究

(教材原文) Carrying out these everyday tasks effectively helps the astronauts stay healthy and focus on their work in space—**after all**, imagine what would happen if they caught a cold and started to sneeze!

有效地执行这些日常任务有助于宇航员保持健康, 专注于他们在太空的工作——毕竟, 想象一下, 如果他们感冒了, 开始打喷嚏会发生什么!

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

You'd better accept the job offer. **After all**, the salary is high.

你最好接受这份工作。毕竟, 薪水是高的。

Dr Yuan **doesn't** care about fame or money **at all**.  
袁博士根本不在乎名利。

**Above all**, we should recognise our strengths and weaknesses.

首要的一点是, 我们应该认识到自己的优点和缺点。

## 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(not) _____ all 根本(不), 全然(不)
	_____ all 首要的一点是
	in all 总共
	all in all 总而言之
探究结论	first of all 首先
	at; above

## 三评 多维度评价测试

用 all 的相关短语填空

① Don't blame him any more. After all, he is only seven years old.② He didn't come at all. It was silly of us to keep on waiting for him.③ I'm very lucky to have a comfortable life, where there's always food on the table, heat in the winter, and, above all, love in home.④ All in all, it was a surprisingly delightful weekend spent between a river, a dam and a hawthorn tree.

## 3. sb./sth. be believed to do... 人们相信/认为……

(教材原文) For example, the mysterious large-eyed, bronze statues of the ancient Shu Kingdom, discovered at the Chinese archeological site at Sanxingdui, **were believed to have been able** to look across great distances into the stars.

例如, 在中国考古遗址三星堆发现的古蜀国的神秘的巨目青铜像, 古时的人们认为它们能够看到遥远的星空。

[句式分析] 本句属于“sb./sth. be believed to do...”句型的应用, 意为“人们相信/认为……”, 该句型可改写为“It be believed that...”或“sb./sth. believe(s) that...”。

## 一感 读句子感悟用法

The man **is said to visit** China next week.

据说这名男子下周去参观中国。

The company **is said to be planning** to set up a new company.

据说该公司在计划成立一个新公司。

He **is believed to be** one of the best basketball players in the CBA.

他被认为是中国男子篮球职业联赛最好的篮球运动员之一。

**It is believed that** music can help people relax themselves.

人们认为音乐有助于放松自己。

**Green is said to be** the most restful colour.  
= **It's said that** green is the most restful colour.  
据说绿色是最宁静的颜色。

### 二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究 要点	(1) 在 sb./sth. be believed to... 句型中, 不定式根据情况可用一般式(to do)、进行式(to be doing)和完成式(to have done)。				
	<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">sb./sth. be+过去 分词+</td> <td rowspan="3">{</td> <td>_____ sth. 在说话的动作之后或与其几乎同时发生</td> </tr> <tr> <td>_____ sth. 与说话的动作同时发生</td> </tr> <tr> <td>_____ sth. 在说话的动作之前发生</td> </tr> </table>	sb./sth. be+过去 分词+	{	_____ sth. 在说话的动作之后或与其几乎同时发生	_____ sth. 与说话的动作同时发生
sb./sth. be+过去 分词+	{			_____ sth. 在说话的动作之后或与其几乎同时发生	
				_____ sth. 与说话的动作同时发生	
		_____ sth. 在说话的动作之前发生			
	(2) 用于本句型的动词还有 say, think, expect, report, consider, suppose 等。				
	(3) sb./sth. be said/reported/thought/supposed that... = It be said/reported/thought/supposed that... 据说/据报道/据认为/据推测……				

探究 结论	(1) to do; to be doing; to have done
----------	--------------------------------------

### 三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Mr King is believed to have finished (finish) his third book last month.

② It is believed that Mrs Lin has gone to Changsha by plane.

(2) 句型转换

① A number of household appliances are believed to have been destroyed.

→ It is believed that a number of household appliances have been destroyed.

② It is said that the book has been translated into more than fifty different languages.

→ The book is said to have been translated into more than fifty different languages.

## 写作探究

### 太空生活日记

#### 一、写作指导

太空生活日记主要记叙的是在太空里的生活情况。

写这类文章时, 需要注意以下几点:

1. 简要讲述在太空的日常生活, 以及自己最喜欢的或最感动的事情。
2. 人称: 此类日记一般以第一人称为主。
3. 时态: 此类日记一般以一般过去时为主。

#### 二、典题示例

请根据下面的内容写一篇英文日记。

我是翟志刚, 一名来自中国的航天员。我很自豪成为中国第一位在太空行走的航天员。我和我的战友景海鹏、刘伯明一起在太空里待了接近三天。我们主要观察地球, 做科学实验。令我最激动的是我出舱展示五星红旗的时刻。看到五星红旗飘扬在太空中, 我感到非常自豪, 因为这意味着我们的国家成为世界上第三个独立掌握空间出舱技术的国家。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 文章须包括所有的内容, 可以适当增加细节, 以使内容连贯。

参考词汇: 船舱 cabin; 太空出舱活动 extravehicular activities

#### 三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	一般过去时
人称	第一人称
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 简要介绍自己</li> <li>2. 记叙太空中的日常生活; 记叙自己最喜欢的事或最激动、感动的事情</li> <li>3. 发表自己的看法</li> </ol>

#### 四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇

- ① approximately three days 大约三天
- ② carry out experiments 做实验
- ③ thrill sb. 使某人兴奋
- ④ display the five-star red flag 展示五星红旗
- ⑤ can't help but 禁不住
- ⑥ observe 观察; 观测



⑦ undertake 承担

⑧ master 掌握

(二)完成句子

① What we mainly undertook (我们主要承担的) was to observe Earth and carry out scientific experiments.

② When I saw the flag floating in space, I felt very proud (感到非常自豪).

③ I was very excited and I couldn't help but cry (禁不住哭起来).

④ Our country has now become the third country in the world to master (成为世界上第三个掌握……的国家) the technology of extravehicular activities.

(三)句式升级

①用现在分词短语作状语升级(二)中句②

Seeing the flag floating in space, I felt very proud.

②用 so... that... 句式升级(二)中句③

I was so excited that I couldn't help but cry.

(四)连句成篇

I'm Zhai Zhigang, an astronaut from China. I'm quite proud that I'm the first astronaut in China to walk in space.

My comrades-in-arms, Jing Haipeng, Liu Boming and I stayed in space for approximately three days. What we mainly undertook was to observe Earth and carry out scientific experiments. What thrilled me most was to go out of the cabin and display the five-star red flag.

Seeing the flag floating in space, I was so proud and excited that I couldn't help but cry. It shows that our country has now become the third country in the world to master the technology of

extravehicular activities.

## 五、学以致用

假设你是中国第一位女航天员刘洋,请根据下面的内容写一篇英文日记。

我是刘洋,一名中国航天员。我是中国第一位进入太空的女航天员。我曾和战友景海鹏、刘旺于2012年在太空待了13天。我们在太空的主要工作是按计划进行一些科学实验、与地面人员通话。最令我兴奋的事情是在太空做了一些科学实验,被世界上数百万人观看。知道那么多人在看我做实验,我既紧张又激动。

能为祖国的航天事业贡献自己的力量,我感到非常自豪。

注意:词数80左右。

[参考范文]

I'm Liu Yang, an astronaut from China. I'm the first female astronaut in China to be sent to space. My comrades-in-arms Jing Haipeng and Liu Wang, and I stayed in space for thirteen days in 2012. What we mainly undertook in space was to do some scientific experiments according to plan and communicate with people on the ground. What excited me most was that I did some scientific experiments watched by millions of people on Earth. Knowing that so many people were watching the experiments, I felt very nervous but excited.

I feel very proud that I could pull my weight in our country's space cause.

## 课后素养评价(三十)

### I. 单句语法填空

- Every substance, no matter what it is, is composed of very small particles called molecules.
- To my surprise, the idea that he came up with is similar to mine.
- Social skills are regarded as one of the most important skills of human beings in today's society.

- It is necessary to examine how the proposals can be carried out.
- The astronomers are engaged in exploring the galaxy every night.
- I think we're more or less clear on what the show will be like.
- For example, if you get something in your eyes, don't start rubbing (揉) it.
- You should forgive him for his forgetfulness; after all, he is over seventy.

### II. 完成句子

- His dream is believed to have been realised.

人们认为,他的梦想已经实现。

2. It is well-known that it is of great importance to explore space.

众所周知,探索太空很重要。

3. So much has she changed that I can hardly recognise her.

她变化得如此之大,以致我几乎没认出她来。

4. Your idea sounds wonderful, but in reality it doesn't work.

你的想法听起来很棒,但实际上它不起作用。

5. While he felt upset, he forced himself to focus on his study.

尽管他感到沮丧,他强迫自己集中精力学习。

### III. 语法填空

Since the beginning of time, exploring the universe has been a dream of humankind. Human 1. curiosity (curious) has fuelled interest in exploring and discovering new worlds, pushing the boundaries of 2. the known, and expanding scientific and technical knowledge.

States and space agencies 3. have been working (work) on space exploration since the first space launch. The first space launch led to the first human space flight, 4. which led to the first moonwalk. Nowadays focus has shifted to joint human and robotic missions, near-Earth asteroids (小行星), Mars and destinations beyond our own solar system.

Space exploration and the innovation 5. involved (involve) in it are essential drivers for opening up new areas in space science and technology. That produces new partnerships 6. and develops capabilities that create new opportunities for 7. addressing (address) global challenges. Space exploration also motivates young people 8. to pursue (pursue) education and careers in science, technology, engineering and mathematics (the STEM disciplines).

Though the precise nature of future benefits from space exploration is not easily predefined (预先确定), current trends suggest that significant advantage may 9. be found (find) in areas such as new materials, health and medicine, transportation and computer technology. As the benefits of space exploration and innovation become 10. better (well) known, increasingly more countries and non-governmental entities are interested in engaging in

exploration and innovation.

## IV. 写作

### 第一节 应用文写作

假设最近你班同学就“太空探索是否值得”这一话题开展了一次讨论。请根据下表提供的信息,写一篇英语短文,介绍你们讨论的情况,并给出你的观点。

30%的同学反对	70%的同学赞成
1. 离我们和我们的日常生活太远; 2. 浪费金钱,这些金钱本可以用来解决饥饿、污染等问题。	1. 已使用卫星进行通讯、天气预报等; 2. 有望解决地球能源短缺问题。
你的观点	

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

### [参考范文]

Recently our class had a discussion on whether space is worth exploring. 30% of the students don't think it worthwhile because space is too far from us and our life and the money spent on it could have been used to solve such problems as starvation and pollution. However, 70% of the students think differently because we have used satellites for communication and weather forecast. Also, it helps us solve the problem of energy shortage on the earth.

Personally, I am in favour of space exploration. We may solve the population problems by moving to other planets one day.

### 第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

“What am I doing wrong?” Jasmine Wilson thought to herself as she heavily breathed. And her breaths could be heard from nearby but were drowned out by the firm steps of several pairs of feet hitting the ground, each desperately pushing forward to get to the finishing line before the other. It was her first track meeting, and she had almost given up midway through the race.

She didn't know why she decided to choose track and field as an after-school activity. As many times as she thought out her reasons as to why she chose to do a sport that requires a lot of hard training instead of something easier, she simply

assumed that since it was from her interest, she was willing to try it out.

Track practices were much harder than she thought and very exhausting. At least, that's what it felt like to her. When she observed her teammates, they were effortlessly working hard. She wanted to be like them, but it was difficult.

"Ms Wilson, do you have a goal in mind?" Smith Jones, the coach of the track team asked Jasmine one day after practice. "I just want you to think about that. What are you running for? Who are you running for? What will you get out of this experience, and how will that help your overall goal? These are questions that you really need to consider, Ms Wilson." The older woman placed a hand on Jasmine's shoulder with a firm look. "You don't have to answer me right now, but I look forward to finding it out from you."

Now, at the race, small beads of sweat ran down the sides of her flushed face and dripped onto the faded letters of the high school track team's uniform, which was close to her skin. Jasmine could barely focus on the present moment because her heart was pounding too loud in her ears.

"Wilson! Ms Wilson, are you alright?" The familiar voice made her come back to her senses.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*When she looked up, it was the coach of their team, Smith Jones. "Coach?" called Jasmine, who looked like she was at the edge of crying. "I can't do this. It is too much tiring and hard, and I couldn't hold on." Jasmine was interrupted by the coach. "Don't you remember those questions I asked you the other day? I wanted to see your determination towards reaching your goal! Believe in yourself and your ability to succeed in doing everything and it'll pay off eventually. Right now, this is just another obstacle that you need to overcome. I believe you." After hearing her coach's words, Jasmine was lost in thought.*

*Jasmine took a deep breath and suddenly felt full of energy. Wiping the beads of sweat away from her face, she now wore a confident expression. "I will get better, no matter how long it takes or hard it may be," she thought. Thinking of this, she used up all her strength to march on. One circle. Another circle... She kept on running bitterly until she came to her final lap. She gathered up all her strength to rush for the finishing line. The classmates congratulated her, and then she caught a glimpse of her coach, who was smiling at her, nodding. Jasmine ran towards her, giving her a bear hug. "Thank you. It is you who accompany me until the end of the competition and make me realise that I can make it," exclaimed Jasmine excitedly.*

## 读后续写技能养成

## 细节描写之修辞手法

### 「技能概述」

1. 修辞手法:指运用各种表现方式,使语言表达得准确、鲜明而生动有力。常见的修辞手法有比喻、拟人、夸张、排比等。以比喻为例,即用某些有类似特点的事物来比方说明某一事物。常用的喻词有 like, as, seem, as if, similar to, as ... as ... 等。
2. 续写技巧:务必抓住事物的特征,通过选用恰当的修辞手法来描写。

### 「范例体悟」

Suddenly Sylvia's dark grey eyes caught a flash of white that grew larger and larger. It was the white heron bathed in the light of the early morning. "Get you!" A

voice came unexpectedly. Sylvia turned around in astonishment and caught sight of the young man, gun in hand. "No!" she squealed, witnessing the heron falling down. Her legs giving out, she sat on her knees, countless tears coursing down her cheeks. The wind embraced the branches, while the little girl was haunted by loneliness, only the bird whistle hovering in mind for company.

找出文中使用修辞手法的句子并写出来。

the white heron bathed in the light of the early morning(拟人); The wind embraced the branches(拟人)

## 「词句储备」

### I. 好词积累

1. blanket *n.* 毯子
2. wake *v.* 醒来
3. arrow *n.* 箭
4. dance *v.* 起舞
5. kiss *v.* 亲吻
6. embrace *v.* 拥抱
7. sweaty *adj.* 满是汗的
8. blur *v.* (使)视线模糊
9. float *v.* 漂浮
10. diamond *n.* 钻石
11. unexplored *adj.* 未开发的
12. rush away 飞奔而去
13. crowd into 涌入
14. well up 涌出
15. hang over 笼罩
16. a warm current 一股暖流

### II. 佳句背诵

1. It looked like a beautiful woven blanket spread out upon the ground just for us.  
它看起来就像一张美丽的编织好的地毯,铺展在地上等着我们。
2. Life is an unexplored river, full of twists and turns.  
生活就像一条未经勘探的河流,充满着各种曲折。
3. Waking from the dream, Jim rushed away like an arrow.  
吉姆从梦中醒来,像箭一样飞奔而去。
4. Then Susan handed her a strange thing looking like a net.  
然后苏珊递给她一个看起来像网一样的奇怪的东西。
5. Everything would feel as light as a pencil.  
所有东西都像铅笔一样轻。
6. My mother took my arm as if she were the First Lady.

母亲挽着我的胳膊,就好像她是第一夫人一样。

7. (2022·新高考 I 卷 续写范文) Everyone is like a flower, some having fragrance, but some not.  
每个人都像一朵花,有的有香味,有的没有。

## 「技能达标」

### I. 完成句子

1. The smile on her face shone like a diamond.  
她脸上的笑容像钻石一样闪闪发光。
2. The gentle breeze and singing birds seem to cheer for him.  
轻柔的微风和歌唱的鸟儿似乎在为他欢呼。
3. She spoke hurriedly, as if her heart had leapt into her throat.  
她讲话急促,好像她的心跳到了嗓子眼一样。
4. Depression hung over him like a heavy dark cloud and tears welled up in his eyes.  
沮丧(的情绪)像乌云一样笼罩着他,泪水夺眶而出。
5. Falling leaves, red, yellow and orange, danced gracefully in the air.  
红的、黄的、橙的落叶在空中优雅地跳舞。

### II. 用修辞手法完成语段

Finally, in tears, and with great reluctance, my son told us the truth. "I sent it to the offering box with your names," he murmured, the salty water pooling in his eyes. His words suddenly hit me

1. like lightning (像闪电). I was glued to the spot, speechless, with a lump in my throat—it had taken my son years to save that money.

He had given it to us willingly—without telling us what he had done.

2. The following moment witnessed me (接下来的一刻见证了我) drawing my son into my arms, sobbing and apologising. Never in my life had I been aware of my son's love, silent but pure and deep, which had saved our family and now warmed my life
3. like sunshine (像阳光一样).

## 第六单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

### I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

#### A

Throughout history, countless people have made valuable contributions to astronomy. Here is a list of some of them.

#### Nicolaus Copernicus

Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus did just one thing. Most scholars, however, think it was the greatest thing ever done in astronomy. Copernicus formulated what's now called the heliocentric model—the moved Earth from the centre of the universe and replaced it with the Sun. He didn't publish his theory until he was on his deathbed in 1543.

#### Johannes Kepler

Indeed, German astronomer Johannes Kepler's laws, especially the first, which states that planets move in ellipses (not circles)—set the stage for the law of universal gravitation. In addition to many years of hard orbital calculations, Kepler also observed a supernova (超新星), now called Kepler's Nova, in 1604.

#### Tycho Brahe

Danish astronomer Tycho Ottesen Brahe was history's greatest pre-telescopic observer. In fact, his careful observations of Mars enabled Kepler to develop his laws of planetary motion. Two of his famous observations were of the supernova that appeared in 1572 (now called Tycho's Nova) and the Great Comet of 1577.

#### Galileo Galilei

The first lens Galileo made is where optical (光学的) astronomy began. For that reason, Italian astronomer Galileo di Vincenzo Bonaiuti de Galilei ranks No. 1 on a list of astronomers. Although he

didn't invent the telescope, Galileo was the first to use it to study the sky: He observed sunspots, the phases of Venus, Saturn's rings, and the four large moons of Jupiter.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了四位对天文学作出重大贡献的人物。

1. Whose research laid the foundation for the law of universal gravitation?

- A. Nicolaus Copernicus.
- B. Johannes Kepler.
- C. Tycho Brahe.
- D. Galileo Galilei.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Indeed, German astronomer Johannes Kepler's laws, especially the first, which states that planets move in ellipses (not circles)—set the stage for the law of universal gravitation.”可知,开普勒的研究为万有引力定律奠定了基础。故选B。

2. What made Galileo the number one on the list?

- A. His observation of Mars.
- B. His observation of a supernova.
- C. The heliocentric theory he proposed.
- D. The significance of the lens he made.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段的前两句“The first lens Galileo made is where optical (光学的) astronomy began. For that reason, Italian astronomer Galileo di Vincenzo Bonaiuti de Galilei ranks No. 1 on a list of astronomers.”可知,伽利略因为制造了第一个透镜预示着光学天文学的开始而在该名单上排第一。故选D。

3. Where can the text be found?

- A. In an advertisement.
- B. In a novel.
- C. In a magazine.
- D. In a biography.

C 文章出处题。根据第一段的内容以及下文分别对所列举的人物进行了介绍可知,本文是一篇介绍历史上重要人物的文章,应出现在杂志上。故选 C。

**B**

Space exploration, investigation, by means of crewed and uncrewed spacecraft, of the reaches of the universe beyond Earth's atmosphere and the use of the information so gained to increase knowledge of the cosmos and benefit humanity.

Humans have always looked at the heavens and wondered about the nature of the objects seen in the night sky. With the development of rockets and the advances in electronics and other technologies in the 20th century, it became possible to send machines and animals and then people above Earth's atmosphere into outer space. Well before technology made these achievements possible, however, space exploration had already captured the minds of many people, not only aircraft pilots and scientists but also writers and artists. The strong hold that space travel has always had on the imagination may well explain why professional astronauts and laypeople alike consent at their great peril, in the words of Tom Wolfe in *The Right Stuff* (1979), "to sit on top of an enormous Roman candle, such as a Redstone, Atlas, Titan or Saturn rocket, and wait for someone to light the fuse". It perhaps also explains why space exploration has been a common and enduring theme in literature and art. As centuries of speculative fiction in books and more recently in films make clear, "one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind" was taken by the human spirit many times and in many ways before Neil Armstrong stamped humankind's first footprint on the Moon.

Achieving spaceflight enabled humans to begin to explore the solar system and the rest of the universe, to understand the many objects and phenomena that are better observed from a space perspective, and to use for humans to benefit the

resources and attributes of the space environment. All of these activities—discovery, scientific understanding, and the application of that understanding to serve human purposes—are elements of space exploration.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人类对太空的探索活动。

4. What is the function of the first paragraph?

- A. Identification.
- B. Demonstration.
- C. Clarification.
- D. Definition.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容及全文可推断,第一段阐明了人类探索太空的事实。故选 C。

5. Which of the following has not been sent into space?

- A. Machines.
- B. People.
- C. Animals.
- D. War.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“With the development of rockets and the advances in electronics and other technologies in the 20th century, it became possible to send machines and animals and then people above Earth's atmosphere into outer space.”可知,被送到太空的有机器、动物和人。故选 D。

6. How did people “get to space” before real space exploration?

- A. By flying in a plane.
- B. By reading fictional books.
- C. By visiting space museums.
- D. By using their telescopes.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Well before technology made these achievements possible, however, space exploration had already captured the minds of many people, not only aircraft pilots and scientists but also writers and artists. The strong hold that space travel has always had on the imagination may well explain why professional astronauts and laypeople alike consent at their great peril, in the words of Tom Wolfe in *The Right Stuff* (1979), ‘to sit on top

of an enormous Roman candle, such as a Redstone, Atlas, Titan or Saturn rocket, and wait for someone to light the fuse'. It perhaps also explains why space exploration has been a common and enduring theme in literature and art."可知,在真正的太空探索之前,人类是通过读虚构的书“到达太空”的。故选 B。

7. What does the author think of the space activities?

- A. Negative.                      B. Beneficial.  
C. Harmful.                        D. Superb.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者认为太空活动是有益的。故选 B。

### C

Scientists know quite a lot about stars. After centuries of pointing telescopes at the night sky, astronomers and amateurs alike can figure out key traits of any star, such as its mass or its composition.

To calculate a star's mass, just look at the time it takes to orbit a companion star. Then do a bit of calculation. To determine what it's made of, look to the spectrum of light the star sends out. But one question scientists haven't quite cracked yet is how to calculate the exact time of a star.

"The sun is the only star we know the age of," says astronomer David Soderblom. He works at the Space Telescope Science Institute in Baltimore, Md. We use what we know about it and how it compares to others, he says, to figure out the age of other stars.

Even well-studied stars surprise scientists every now and then. In 2019, the red supergiant Betelgeuse became gradually dark. At the time, astronomers weren't sure if this star was just going through a phase. The alternative was more exciting: It might be ready to explode as a supernova. (Turns out it was just a phase.) The sun also shook things up when scientists noticed that it wasn't behaving like other middle-aged stars. It's not as magnetically active as other stars of its age and mass. That

suggests astronomers still might not fully understand the timeline of middle age.

Using physics and indirect measurements, scientists can make a rough estimate of a star's age. Some methods, it turns out, work better for different types of stars.

Why do we even care? Galaxies are huge collections of stars of different ages. Star ages might help us figure out how such galaxies grow and evolve or how planets within them form. Knowing star ages might even assist in the search for life in other solar systems.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了科学家对恒星仍然存在的疑惑以及研究恒星年龄的意义。

8. What may scientists want to research about stars most now?

- A. Their companions.  
B. Their types.  
C. Their ages.  
D. Their characteristics.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,关于恒星,科学家们现在可能最想研究的是它们的年龄。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined word "cracked" in Paragraph 2 probably mean?

- A. Discussed.                      B. Described.  
C. Touched.                        D. Solved.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词后的“how to calculate the exact time of a star”以及第三段的内容可知,下文提到太阳是我们唯一知道年龄的恒星,由此可见,科学家们还没有完全解决的一个问题是如何计算恒星的确切时间,故画线词的意思是“解决”。故选 D。

10. Why is the example in 2019 mentioned?

- A. To show scientists still have puzzles about stars.  
B. To prove scientists have studied stars to the full.  
C. To provide facts for scientists' researches on stars.

D. To warn scientists to notice some surprising stars.

A 推理判断题。根据倒数第三段中的“*In 2019, the red supergiant Betelgeuse became gradually dark. At the time, astronomers weren't sure if this star was just going through a phase. The alternative was more exciting: It might be ready to explode as a supernova. (Turns out it was just a phase.) The sun also shook things up when scientists noticed that it wasn't behaving like other middle-aged stars. It's not as magnetically active as other stars of its age and mass. That suggests astronomers still might not fully understand the timeline of middle age.*”可推知,提到2019年的例子是为了证明科学家们对恒星仍有困惑。故选A。

11. What does the author want to tell us in the last paragraph?

- A. The reasons for caring about space.
- B. The significance of researching star ages.
- C. The ways of measuring a star's age.
- D. The benefits of figuring out solar systems.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者在最后一段想告诉我们研究恒星年龄的意义。故选B。

#### D

Why should mankind explore space? Why should money, time and effort be spent exploring and researching something with so few apparent benefits? Why should resources be spent on space rather than on conditions and people on Earth? These are questions that, understandably, are very often asked.

Perhaps the best answer lies in our genetic makeup as human beings. What drove our ancestors to move from the trees onto the plains, and all possible areas and environments? The wider the spread of a species, the better its chance of survival. Perhaps the best reason for exploring space is this genetic tendency to expand wherever possible.

Nearly every successful civilisation has

explored, because by doing so any dangers in surrounding areas can be identified and prepared for. Without knowledge, we may be completely destroyed by the danger. With knowledge, we can lessen its effects.

Exploration also allows minerals and other potential resources to be found. Even if we have no immediate need of them, they will perhaps be useful later. Resources may be more than physical possessions. Knowledge or techniques have been acquired through exploration. The techniques may have medical applications which can improve the length or quality of our lives. We have already benefited from other spin-offs including improvements in earthquake prediction, in satellites for weather forecasting and in communication systems. Even non-stick pans and mirrored sunglasses are by-products (副产品) of technological developments in the space industry.

While many resources are spent on what seems a small return, the exploration of space allows creative, brave and intelligent members of our species to focus on what may serve to save us. While space may hold many wonders and explanations of how the universe was formed or how it works, it also holds dangers. The danger exists, but knowledge can help human beings to survive. Without the ability to reach out across space, the chance to save ourselves might not exist.

While Earth is the only planet known to support life, surely the adaptive ability of humans would allow us to live on other planets. It is true that the lifestyle would be different, but human life and cultures have adapted in the past and surely could in the future.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章讨论了人类为什么要探索太空的问题。作者指出太空探索能使我们发现潜在资源,在多方面帮助我们。

12. Why does the author mention the questions in Paragraph 1?

- A. To express his doubts.



- B. To compare different ideas.  
 C. To describe the conditions on Earth.  
 D. To introduce points for discussion.

D 推理判断题。通过第一段提的问题(人类为什么要探索太空?为什么要把钱、时间和精力花在探索和研究那些没有明显好处的东西上?为什么要把资源花在太空而不是地球上的环境和人身上?)可知,第一段提出一系列关于太空探索利弊的问题,引出本文讨论的主题。故选 D。

13. What is the reason for exploring space based on Paragraph 2?

- A. Humans have the tendency to fight.  
 B. Humans are natural-born to do so.  
 C. Humans may find new sources of food.  
 D. Humans don't like to stay in the same place.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Perhaps the best answer lies in our genetic makeup as human beings.”和“Perhaps the best reason for exploring space is this genetic tendency to expand wherever possible.”可知,人类探索太空的原因在于人类的基因构成,人类天生就会这么做。故选 B。

14. What makes it possible for humans to live on other planets?

- A. The adaptive ability of humans.  
 B. Resources on Earth.  
 C. Our genetic makeup.  
 D. By-products in space exploration.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“While Earth is the only planet known to support life, surely the adaptive ability of humans would allow us to live on other planets.”可知,人类的适应能力使人类能够在其他星球上生存。故选 A。

15. Which of the statements can best sum up the passage?

- A. Space exploration has created many wonders.  
 B. Space exploration provided the best value for money.  
 C. Space exploration may help us avoid potential problems on Earth.

D. Space exploration may benefit science and technology.

C 主旨大意题。根据第三段首句“Nearly every successful civilisation has explored, because by doing so any dangers in surrounding areas can be identified and prepared for.”,第四段首句“Exploration also allows minerals and other potential resources to be found.”及第五段首句“While many resources are spent on what seems a small return, the exploration of space allows creative, brave and intelligent members of our species to focus on what may serve to save us.”可知,太空探索可以使我们发现潜在资源以及解决问题的有用资源,C项“太空探索可以帮助我们避免地球上潜在的问题”符合文意。故选 C。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

#### When Did the First Stars Shine

Our universe is home to countless galaxies (银河), with each galaxy hosting hundreds of billions of stars. Each one is a ball of energy powered by the nuclear explosion of elements in their hearts. 16 But when did the first stars shine?

Billions of years ago, there was a time before stars or before lights, called the Dark Ages. There used to be not enough material of high densities (密度) to cause nuclear explosion. Without nuclear explosion, there were no stars. 17 What ended the Dark Ages was the birth of the first stars, thought to be the Cosmic (宇宙) Dawn. And this marked the age of light in our universe. Stars began shining and galaxies started forming.

Those first stars burned fiercely and died quickly. None of them survived to the present day. 18 They shone so brightly that their light may still be visible today after travelling billions of light years.

Recently, a team of astronomers used 70 hours of observing time to take pictures of six extremely distant galaxies. 19 They also calculated that the Cosmic Dawn started to burn between 250 and 350 million years after the Big Bang. That means it

took a long time for the initial gas out of the Big Bang to cool and form the first generation of stars.

Hopefully, upcoming missions, like James Webb Space Telescope, will be able to directly observe those galaxies in greater detail. And some star mysteries will be disclosed. **20** How long did it take for the first stars to live and die? How did the stars transform the cosmic to give us the universe that we know today?

- A. Nevertheless, they left their mark.
- B. Accordingly, there was no visible light either.
- C. Each one also pours out light into the empty universe.
- D. It was much darker than it is today with only a little light.
- E. For example, when did the Cosmic Dawn exactly take place?
- F. Based on their observations, they were able to estimate the age of the galaxies.
- G. They're so far away that we can't capture them even with powerful telescopes.

答案:16~20 CBAFE

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

In a remote village, selling chestnuts was the main source of livelihood for local villagers. In late autumn, the hills were covered by the trees and chestnuts were 21 from the branches of the trees, which 22 with the wind attracting local villagers to 23 them at this time of year.

The villagers took the chestnuts, carried them home and 24 them out. The whole family sifted (筛) and sorted them according to their 25, and then transported them to the city for wholesale or retail. Every villager knew that if they wanted to sell for a good price, what really 26 was to send the selected chestnuts to the market first. Many families, which were short of 27, would go to the nearby villages to hire workers with high 28. Still, to many people's 29, there was a young man in the village who would never need help, 30 he had limited hands. He lived with

his blind and old mother. He always arrived at the market one step ahead of the other ones 31 he could sell out of all the chestnuts and then happily drove back with his truck 32.

The secret of the young man was: after picking chestnuts, he put them 33 into a sack (麻袋) and carried them to the truck. When he set out, he chose the road, 34 and bumpy (不平的), to go, 35 the small ones would jump to the bottom of the bag and the larger ones would stay on the top of the bag. It would save time for classification and selection. When inquired how he found the way, the young man smiled, "If you put your heart into it, you will find the right way. This is not an accident but a necessary result."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一个年轻人用便捷的方法筛选栗子的故事, 进而启迪读者——世上无难事, 只怕有心人。

- 21. A. holding                                      B. filling  
C. planting                                      D. hanging  
D 根据语境及常识可知, 山丘上遍布树木, 栗子从树枝上垂下来(hanging)。故选 D。
- 22. A. fell    B. shook  
C. jumped    D. folded  
B 根据空后的“with the wind”可推知, 栗子随风摇动(shook), 吸引当地的村民们在一年中的这个时候来采摘(pick)。故选 B。
- 23. A. enjoy    B. view  
C. seek    D. pick  
D 参见上题解析。
- 24. A. poured    B. took  
C. thought    D. figured  
A 根据下文中的“The whole family sifted (筛) and sorted them”可推知, 村民们把采摘的栗子带回家, 倒(poured)出来, 然后才能进行筛选和分类。故选 A。
- 25. A. shape    B. size  
C. taste    D. colour  
B 根据下文中的“35 the small ones would jump to the bottom of the bag and the larger ones would stay on the top of the bag”可推知,

整个家庭根据栗子的大小(size)进行筛选和分类。故选B。

26. A. mattered                      B. cared  
C. interested                      D. minded

A 根据语境可推知,真正要紧(mattered)的是把挑选好的栗子先送到市场上去。故选A。

27. A. hands                          B. power  
C. experience                      D. ways

A 根据下文中的“30 he had limited hands”可推知,许多家庭在这个时候就会缺少人手(hands),会去附近的村子里以高薪(salary)雇人干活。故选A。

28. A. quality                         B. quantity  
C. money                          D. salary  
D 参见上题解析。

29. A. puzzlement                 B. relief  
C. astonishment                 D. delight

A 根据上文内容可知,在栗子收获的季节许多家庭往往缺少人手,并结合下文内容可知,这个年轻人从不需要帮忙,由此可推知,这点让很多人困惑(puzzlement)。故选A。

30. A. only if                         B. as if  
C. even if                          D. if only

C 根据语境可知,即使(even if)这个年轻人人手有限,但他从不需要帮助。

31. A. which                         B. where  
C. whom                          D. who

B 分析句子结构可知,本句含有一个定语从句,空处在从句中作地点状语,修饰先行词 the market。故选B。

32. A. full                             B. filled  
C. empty                          D. loaded

C 根据上文的“he could sell out of all the chestnuts”可知,他能够卖光自己所有的栗子,然后开心地开着空的(empty)卡车回家。故选C。

33. A. suddenly                      B. shortly  
C. directly                         D. hurriedly

C 根据上文内容可知,人们把采摘的栗子带回家,倒出来,然后进行筛选和分类,最后才运到市场上卖掉,而这个年轻人直接(directly)把采摘的栗子装进麻袋里,将它们搬上卡车。故选C。

34. A. tough                         B. rough  
C. regular                         D. smooth

B 根据设空处与下文的“bumpy (不平的)”为并列结构可推知,他选择的路是高低不平的(rough)。故选B。

35. A. even                         B. or  
C. but                              D. so

D 根据语境可知,设空处前后存在逻辑上的因果关系,前因后果。故选D。

#### IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

Do stars only appear at night? The answer is no. Venus (金星) is one star **36. that** can be seen in the daytime. It is the second **37. brightest** (bright) natural object, behind Earth's moon, in the night sky. Why is it so bright?

First of all, Venus is the closest planet to Earth. Besides, it **38. is covered** (cover) by highly reflective clouds, which can reflect about 70 percent of the sunlight **39. striking** (strike) it.

If Venus is so bright and close to us, isn't it a better choice for human **40. exploration** (explore) than Mars? It is closer to Earth than Mars and it's closer to Earth **41. in** size. The closer distance to the sun means solar power would be easier **42. to produce** (produce) as well.

**43. However**, with a temperature of about 465°C on the surface, Venus is the hottest planet in our solar system! But scientists never give up. Recently, a team of scientists **44. have created** (create) new computer equipment that can stand 480°C. **45. What** they expect next is to send a probe (探测器) to Venus by 2025.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假定你是李华,上周日你校举办了一次户外徒步活动。请你为校英文报写一篇80词左右的报道,内容包括:

1. 你的所见所闻;
2. 对此次活动的感受。

## [参考范文]

**A Hiking Activity**

Our school held a hiking activity last Sunday, which has a great effect on our study and life.

It was at 6 o'clock that we set off. In the beginning, we walked all the way, chatting and singing. After a while, some students were so tired that they couldn't keep up with other classmates. But they helped each other. Four hours later, we all made it to our destination.

The activity will surely leave a happy experience in our memories.

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Lily worked busily on her spelling test. Mr Federer sat at the desk, ensuring every student was taking the test on his own. Her palms sweating, her heart racing, Lily double-checked the words on her paper. Should her words be all correct, she would win the competition plus a brand-new tennis racket (球拍).

Two more words to go. L-o-v-e-l-y. D-r-y-l-y. H-o-n-e-s-t-y. Wait! She'd spelled "honesty", not "honestly". With her hand trembling, she wrote the correct form of "honest". Then she handed in the paper with brimming confidence.

The next day, Mr Federer marched into the classroom, stack of papers in hand. Seeing this, Lily sat restlessly in her seat with her fingers crossed. She felt her heart would bounce out of her mouth. Mr Federer planted himself in the front of the classroom, cleared his throat and announced, "Way to go, Lily! You made it!" Amid loud bursts of applause, Mr Federer presented Lily with the prize. Holding the box containing the tennis racket, Lily was walking on air.

When school was dismissed, Lily hurried home, dying to tell her mother the good news. "What's up?" Mum sensed something unusual and

asked after Lily seated herself. "Mum, guess what! I won the spelling test!" Lily said proudly. Mum hugged her, asking her to show the test paper to Dad when he got home. Instinctively, Lily took another look at the test paper, but was horrified to find "H-O-N-E-S-L-Y". She suddenly felt dizzy and her face was burning.

Mum smelled a rat and asked what was wrong. "I am just... too excited," Lily stammered, hastily stuffing the test paper into her backpack. Mum brought her some tea. Yes, a "t" was exactly what she needed.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

## [参考范文]

About one hour later, Dad came home. Hardly had he put down the briefcase when Mum eagerly announced the good news. Hearing this, Dad walked to Lily's room, great delight sparkling in his eyes. "I am so proud of you, girl!" Dad said, giving a gentle pat on her back. But Lily didn't dare to meet her father's gaze. Guilt swallowed her. Finally, summoning up her courage, Lily said in a low voice, "I don't deserve the prize. I misspelled 'honestly'." Then tears streamed down. Seeing this, her father uttered that honesty matters more than the prize. He suggested Lily should tell the teacher the truth.

The next morning, Lily went to school earlier than usual. She made her way to Mr Federer's office. When he saw Lily, a surprised look crossed his face, for Lily came to school extra early today. But instantly he knew with his experience that Lily had a story to tell. "I can't keep these. I spelled 'honestly' wrong and you didn't catch it," Lily said clearly, giving Mr Federer the spelling paper and the tennis racket. For a moment, Mr Federer just stood rooted to the ground. Then picking up his pen, he crossed out "perfect" and wrote "honest" on the paper. "Please keep the tennis racket for honesty," said Mr Federer.

## 综合检测(一)

(时间:100分钟,分值:120分)

## I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

## A

## • Social Justice Book Club

The purpose of our club is to build community by reading a variety of literary types such as poetry, fiction and nonfiction that reflect social justice. Our mission is to highlight literature and authors that promote overall social justice.

The book selected for our next meeting, 11:00 am—12:00 pm on May 17th, is *Asian American Dreams* by Helen Zia. Zoom links will be emailed to registered participants prior to time.

## • Penumbra Online's Book Club

We are excited to announce that Penumbra Online will be hosting a summer book club. We will be reading a book that spotlights Penumbra Online's summer theme of self-love. Join us as we spend the summer reading and rediscovering the love we have for ourselves.

We will be discussing our first book, *Fat Chance, Charlie Vega*, by Crystal Maldonado via Zoom on August 10th at 6 pm. Grab a snack or a drink, and join us as we explore this fun summer read!

## • Undocu Book Club

The purpose of our Undocu Book Club is to expand our community's personal literature experience by reading and discussing works that reflect themes such as personal and professional growth. The mission is to bring accessibility to literature to our community and promote acceptance.

The specific book will be *Born a Crime* by Trevor Noah on our next meeting date, Thursday, September 16th. If the time conflicts with your schedule, you can still be part of our club by sharing your thoughts via Zoom chat.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了三个读书俱乐部的信息。

1. What is required to attend the meeting on May 17th?

- A. Selecting a book.
- B. Signing up first.
- C. Sharing thoughts.
- D. Sending an email.

B 细节理解题。根据 • Social Justice Book Club 部分中的“The book selected for our next meeting, 11:00 am—12:00 pm on May 17th, is *Asian American Dreams* by Helen Zia. Zoom links will be emailed to registered participants prior to time.”可知,因为 Zoom 链接将通过电子邮件提前发送给已登记的参与者,所以参加 5 月 17 日的会议需要先报名。故选 B。

2. What's the book *Fat Chance, Charlie Vega* probably about?

- A. Self-love.
- B. Social justice.
- C. Personal growth.
- D. Literature experience.

A 推理判断题。根据 • Penumbra Online's Book Club 部分中的“... summer theme of self-love. Join us as we spend the summer reading and rediscovering the love we have for ourselves.”可知, Penumbra Online 读书俱乐部主要关注我们对自己的爱。由此推知, *Fat Chance, Charlie Vega* 这本书的话题可能是关于自爱的。故选 A。

3. What do the three book clubs have in common?

- A. They offer summer activities.
- B. Their meetings are held online.
- C. Their members are all students.
- D. They focus on the same theme.

B 推理判断题。根据 • Social Justice Book Club 部分中的“Zoom links will be emailed to registered participants prior to time.”, • Penumbra Online's Book Club 部分中的“We will be discussing our first book, *Fat Chance, Charlie Vega*, by Crystal Maldonado via Zoom

on August 10th at 6 pm.”和 • Undocu Book Club 部分中的 “If the time conflicts with your schedule, you can still be part of our club by sharing your thoughts via Zoom chat.”可知,这三个俱乐部的会议都与 Zoom 视频聊天软件有关。由此可知,这三个俱乐部的会议都是在网上举行的。故选 B。

**B**

I cannot remember a point in my life when I desired anything other than becoming a teacher. At the beginning of my senior year in high school, I began applying to the University of Connecticut. But what I didn't realise was how expensive my dream was. I came from a low-income family, and it seemed as though we'd always struggled to make ends meet.

I wasn't the smartest person in my class, not even close; but my heart was in the right place, and I was determined. I applied for every scholarship I could get my hands on. What did I have to lose? And then my guidance counselor told me about the financial aid system. I applied, but I didn't think I would qualify for that either.

After the holidays, my friends started receiving their acceptance letters from colleges, and I eagerly anticipated mine. Finally, a letter arrived from the University of Connecticut. Feelings of fear and joy overwhelmed me when I opened the envelope with trembling hands. I had done it! I cried for a while, feeling both extremely excited and afraid. I had been working a full-time job, but that was barely enough to pay for tuition, and it was impossible for my parents to finance my education.

Months went by before a letter from the financial aid office arrived. I opened it eagerly, but it was only a letter requesting more information to process my application. This happened over and over, and my hopes kept getting shot down. Finally, a bulky envelope arrived, the one that would determine whether I could attend college. Not only was financial aid going to help me out with my expenses, but also I won two of the scholarships I had applied for! I had actually made my dream come true.

I am now a junior at the University of Connecticut, pursuing a degree in English.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。本文讲述了作者因家庭贫困无法入学,但作者没有轻易言败,而是积极争取奖学金,努力赚取学费,最终成功入学的故事。作者通过自己的经历想要告诉读者一个道理:永不言败。

4. What was the author's main trouble in realising her dream?
- A. She lacked determination.  
B. Her family was short of money.  
C. She didn't know which university to apply to.  
D. Her parents disapproved of her attending university.

**B 细节理解题。**根据第三段中的 “I had been working a full-time job, but that was barely enough to pay for tuition, and it was impossible for my parents to finance my education.”可知,作者在实现梦想的过程中遇到的主要困难是她家缺钱。故选 B。

5. How did the author get money for her tuition fees?
- A. By taking up part-time jobs.  
B. By receiving her parents' support.  
C. By turning to her guidance counselor for help.  
D. By applying for scholarships and financial aid.
- D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的 “Not only was financial aid going to help me out with my expenses, but also I won two of the scholarships I had applied for! I had actually made my dream come true.”可知,作者通过申请奖学金和助学金得到了学费。故选 D。
6. Why did the financial aid office send the author the first letter?
- A. To test her determination.  
B. To inform her of their refusal.  
C. To ask for supplemental information.  
D. To check the process of her application.

**C 细节理解题。**根据第四段中的 “Months went by before a letter from the financial aid office arrived. I opened it eagerly, but it was only a letter requesting more information to process my application.”可知,助学金办公室给作者寄了第一封信要求补充信息。故选 C。

7. What does the author want to convey by sharing her story?
- A. Never say never.

- B. More haste, less speed.  
 C. Aiming higher, achieving more.  
 D. Pride hurts, modesty benefits.

A 推理判断题。通读全文可知,本文讲述了作者因家庭贫困无法入学,但作者没有轻易言败,而是积极争取奖学金,努力赚取学费,最终成功入学的事。作者通过自己的经历想要告诉读者一个道理:要永不言败。故选A。

## C

Forests have a crucial role in cooling Earth's surface by absorbing CO<sub>2</sub> like a sponge (海绵). But only two-thirds of their cooling power comes from their ability to suck in CO<sub>2</sub> and store it, according to a study by Deborah Lawrence, an environmental scientist. The other one-third comes from the biophysical effects—their ability to create clouds, dampen the air and release cooling chemicals.

Trees in the forests provide shade, but they also dampen the air by pulling water from the ground and releasing it from their leaves, which helps to cool the surrounding area in a way similar to sweating, Lawrence says.

This, in turn, creates the right conditions for clouds, which like snow and ice in the Arctic, can reflect sunlight higher into the atmosphere and further cool the surroundings. Trees also release organic compounds that react with other chemicals in the atmosphere to sometimes create a net cooling effect.

To quantify (量化) these effects, Lawrence and her colleagues compared how the various effects of forests around the world feed into the climate system, breaking down their contributions in ranges of ten degrees of latitude (纬度). The researchers found that the world's forests cool the surface of the planet by around 0.5°C because of biophysical effects alone.

Threats to rainforests are dangerous not only for the global climate, but for communities that neighbour the forests, Lawrence says. She and her colleagues found that the cooling caused by biophysical effects was especially significant locally. "Having a rainforest nearby can help to protect an area's agriculture and cities from heatwaves," Lawrence says. "Every tenth of a degree matters in

limiting extreme weather. And where you have forests, the extremes are minimised."

This study confirms that forests have other significant ways of affecting the climate system, giving us more reasons why deforestation is bad for the climate. It could enable scientists to improve their climate models while helping governments to work out better conservation and climate strategies.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了森林像海绵一样吸收二氧化碳,在冷却地球表面方面起着至关重要的作用,但一项研究表明它们的冷却能力只有三分之二来自吸收并储存二氧化碳的能力。另外三分之一来自生物物理效应——它们能够制造云层、使空气潮湿和释放凉爽的化学物质。

8. What does the underlined word "This" in Paragraph 3 refer to?

- A. The tree leaves in forests.  
 B. The shade provided by trees.  
 C. The surrounding area in forests.  
 D. The water circulation done by trees.

D 代词指代题。根据第二段的内容可知,“This”指代的是树木的水循环作用。故选D。

9. How did Lawrence quantify the biophysical effects of forests?

- A. By removing some other factors.  
 B. By comparing data of different times.  
 C. By studying the contributions separately.  
 D. By measuring the temperature in different places.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“To quantify (量化) these effects, Lawrence and her colleagues compared how the various effects of forests around the world feed into the climate system, breaking down their contributions in ranges of ten degrees of latitude (纬度).”可知, Lawrence 是通过以每十度纬度为范围,分别研究森林的贡献来量化森林的生物物理效应的。故选C。

10. What is the significance of Lawrence's study?

- A. It develops a new climate model.  
 B. It matters in limiting extreme weather.  
 C. It highlights the dangers of deforestation.  
 D. It provides a scientific basis for conservation efforts.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段的内容可知,

Lawrence 的研究为环境保护工作提供了科学依据。故选 D。

11. What's the best title for the text?

- A. Forests: More Than a Carbon Sponge
- B. Forests: The Disappearing Green Lung
- C. Forests: Major Players in Carbon Cycles
- D. Forests: Guardians of Local Communities

A 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍了森林像海绵一样吸收二氧化碳,在冷却地球表面方面起着至关重要的作用,但一项研究表明它们的冷却能力有三分之一来自生物物理效应。由此可知,选项 A“Forests: More Than a Carbon Sponge”最适合作本文的标题。故选 A。

**D**

Like a phoenix (凤凰), some stars may burst to life covered in “ash”, rising from the remains of stars that had previously passed on.

Two fireballs covered in carbon and oxygen, ashy byproducts of helium fusion (氦聚变), belong to a new class of stars, researchers report in the *Monthly Notices*. Though these burning objects are not the first stars found covered in carbon and oxygen, they are the first discovered to have helium-burning cores.

“That merger (并合) tells you the star must have evolved differently,” says study author Nicole Reindl.

The stars may have formed from the merger of two white dwarfs (白矮星), the remaining hearts of stars that exhausted their fuel, Reindl further explains. One of the two was rich in helium, while the other contained lots of carbon and oxygen. These two white dwarfs had already been orbiting one another, but gradually drew together. Eventually the helium-rich white dwarf “ate” its partner, leaving carbon and oxygen all over its surface, just as a messy child might get food all over their face.

“Such a merger would have produced a star covered in carbon and oxygen to burn nuclear fusion in its core again,” says Tiara Battich, a German astrophysicist.

To test this idea, Battich copied the evolution, death and eventual merger of two stars on his

computer and simulated (模拟) the process. He found that putting together a carbon-and-oxygen-rich white dwarf and a more massive helium one could explain the compositions of the two stars observed by Reindl and her colleagues.

“But this should happen very rarely,” Battich says. In most cases the opposite should occur, because carbon-oxygen white dwarfs are usually the more massive ones. For the rarer case to occur, two stars slightly more massive than the sun must have formed at just the right distance and the right time.

The original story Battich proposes demands a very specific and unusual set of circumstances, says Simon Blouin, a Canadian astrophysicist. “But in the end, it makes sense.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了拥有氦燃烧核心的恒星,引发了一系列关于恒星并合方式的思考与讨论。

12. What's the newest discovery of the merger of two stars?

- A. It produces a mass of helium ash.
- B. It possesses a helium-burning core.
- C. It is covered in carbon and oxygen.
- D. It makes an oxygen atmosphere for life.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,两颗恒星并合的最新发现是它拥有氦燃烧核心。故选 B。

13. How did Battich prove his assumption of the merger?

- A. By co-working with Reindl's team.
- B. By making astronomic observations.
- C. By building models on his computer.
- D. By testing the two stars' compositions.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第三段第一句“To test this idea, Battich copied the evolution, death and eventual merger of two stars on his computer and simulated (模拟) the process.”可知,Battich 是通过在电脑上构建模型来证明他的猜想的。故选 C。

14. The underlined phrase “the opposite” in Paragraph 7 means “\_\_\_\_\_”.

- A. the carbon-oxygen white dwarf “ate” the helium one
- B. the helium white dwarf “ate” the carbon-oxygen one



C. helium white dwarfs are usually the more massive ones

D. carbon-oxygen white dwarfs are usually the more massive ones

A 词义猜测题。根据第四段最后一句“Eventually the helium-rich white dwarf ‘ate’ its partner, leaving carbon and oxygen all over its surface, just as a messy child might get food all over their face.”, 倒数第二段第一句中的“But this should happen very rarely”和第二句“In most cases the opposite should occur, because carbon-oxygen white dwarfs are usually the more massive ones.”可知, 画线部分指的是“通常碳氧白矮星会吃掉含氦的白矮星”。故选 A。

15. What's the main idea of the text?

A. The formation of stars makes sense.

B. The burning of stars brings them to life.

C. Stars inspire scientists to reflect on the universe.

D. Star mergers can unfold in more than one way.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文, 尤其是第二段第一句“Two fireballs covered in carbon and oxygen, ashy byproducts of helium fusion (氦聚变), belong to a new class of stars, researchers report in the *Monthly Notices*.”和倒数第二段的内容可知, 本文主要是在探讨恒星并合的不同方式。由此可知, 选项 D 符合题意。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 12.5 分)

People say water can improve health and memory. But now some experts say that to think drinking water equals health is taking things too far and that hydration (水合作用) is about the balance between electrolytes (电解质) like sodium and the water in your body.

Then, how much water do you need to drink? Many say you should drink eight 8-ounce glasses of water a day. Not so, some experts say.

16 A 200-pound person who hikes 10 miles in the heat needs more water than a 120-pound office manager in a temperature-controlled building.

17 Someone with a heart condition or kidney stones has one level of need. A person taking diuretic drugs (利尿药) may need a different

amount of water. You may need to change the amount you are drinking if you have been ill with vomiting or diarrhea.

Water is a better choice than sugary sodas or fruit juices. 18 One popular idea is that caffeine or alcohol will make your body lose much water. But one study showed the effect is not significant. You also get water from what you eat. Fruits, vegetables, and soups all add to the intake of water. Your body will tell you if you are hydrated enough. You don't have to think about it or add up the ounces you drink. 19

Electrolytes are essential minerals. 20 Some sports drinks ads say you need to add electrolytes to stay healthy. But some experts say that your body produces electrolytes. You may need more water if you exercise a lot during the heat of the day. Otherwise, most people get enough electrolytes from food.

A. Just drink when you are thirsty.

B. They are vital to many functions in the body.

C. It gives you more energy and makes you look good.

D. Instead, your body and the activities you attend matter.

E. It is also necessary to set a timetable about when to drink water.

F. The amount of water you need in a day also depends on your health.

G. But when it comes to hydration, any drink can add water to your system.

答案: 16~20 DFGAB

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

Great books can do great things for you in your life. They 21 have for me and I use a simple method to make sure I don't forget what I've learned from the best books I've read. It's really simple and I highly 22 you give it a try.

First, as I read, I 23 the best points made by the author, the ones that jump out at (一下子吸引) me and instruct, 24 and motivate me. Next, I make a 25 in the front or back of the book, with the page number and a short summary of what 26 me as a real gem (宝石). After I have finished the book, I 27 all the page

numbers and quotes (引用) onto a fancy notebook. Then, anytime I need a mental, emotional or motivational push, I quickly and easily 28 my notes of a particular book. It's easy and simple.

My mentor Paul J. Meyer said, "It's better to 29 or review over and over 20 or 30 or 100 great books than to read 1,000 30 books." I have never forgotten that and it has 31 my life and dreams very well.

In 32 the notebook, I see my notes on books like, "Satisfaction" "Feel the Fear and Do It Anyway" "The Power of Now", to 33 just a few. All these will 34 me of the time I read the books and the 35 I got from the author. Of course, I can also share the insight I develop from the book with my readers.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者的阅读方法以及阅读对作者的影响。

21. A. rarely                      B. certainly  
C. gradually                    D. extremely  
B 根据上文的“Great books can do great things for you in your life.”和下文的“for me”可知,此处表示“它们当然对我有帮助”,故选 B。
22. A. recommend                B. desire  
C. insist                         D. command  
A 根据上文的“I use a simple method to make sure I don't forget what I've learned from the best books I've read”可知,作者是想把这个方法推荐给读者,故选 A。
23. A. remark                    B. estimate  
C. underline                    D. organise  
C 根据下文的“the best points”和第 28 空后的“my notes of a particular book”可知,作者在阅读时,会在最佳观点下画线,故选 C。
24. A. behave                    B. disturb  
C. inspire                        D. amuse  
C 根据下文的“and motivate me”可知,作者会画出那些让自己眼前一亮、启发和激励自己的观点,故选 C。
25. A. note                        B. sound  
C. point                         D. sense  
A 根据第 28 空后的“my notes of a particular book”可知,作者是在书的前面或后面做笔记,故选 A。
26. A. regards                    B. considers

C. treats                        D. strikes  
D 根据下文的“as a real gem (宝石)”和上文的“I 23 the best points made by the author, the ones that jump out at (一下子吸引) me and instruct, 24 and motivate me”可知,作者会简短地总结自己认为真正珍贵的东西,空格处意为“让(某人)觉得”,故选 D。

27. A. translate                  B. transfer  
C. transport                    D. transform  
B 根据下文的“onto a fancy notebook”可知,作者会把所有的页码和引文都誊写在一个漂亮的笔记本上,空格处表示“转移,转录”,故选 B。
28. A. review                    B. refuse  
C. remember                  D. criticise  
A 根据上文的“I need a mental, emotional or motivational push”可知,此处表示“每当我需要精神上、情感上或动机上的激励时,我就会快速而轻松地复习某本书的笔记”,故选 A。
29. A. recount                    B. rewrite  
C. reread                        D. preview  
C 根据下文的“or review over and over”可知,此处表示“一遍又一遍地重读或复习”,故选 C。
30. A. cheap                      B. expensive  
C. rare                            D. average  
D 根据上文的“20 or 30 or 100 great books than to read 1,000”可知,重读或复习 20 本、30 本或 100 本伟大的书,总比读 1 000 本普通的书要好,空格处表示“普通的”,故选 D。
31. A. served                    B. respected  
C. realised                      D. occupied  
A 根据上文的“I have never forgotten that”可知,此处表示“我从未忘记这一点,它对我的生活和梦想大有帮助”,空格处表示“对……有用”,故选 A。
32. A. taking in                  B. giving away  
C. setting out                  D. looking through  
D 根据下文的“I see my notes on books”可知,作者是在浏览笔记本,故选 D。
33. A. show                        B. call  
C. name                         D. put  
C 根据上文的“‘Satisfaction’ ‘Feel the Fear and Do It Anyway’ ‘The Power of Now’”可知,

作者是在列举自己的笔记,空格处的短语表示“仅举几例”,固定短语 to name just a few 符合语境,故选 C。

34. A. inform                      B. remind  
C. convince                      D. accuse

B 根据下文的“the time I read the books”可知,这些笔记让作者想起了自己读过的书,故选 B。

35. A. wisdom                      B. evidence  
C. promise                      D. peace

A 根据下文的“I can also share the insight I develop from the book”可知,人们可以从读过的书的作者那里获得智慧,故选 A。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Every civilisation has its own set of unique ways to produce its delicious food. When **36.** it comes to China, its unique method is to use ancient herbs in their dishes. Chinese cuisines are tasty, full of flavour, and are now widespread throughout the world due to their **37.** popularity (popular). If you want to bring the Chinese taste to your home, **38.** growing (grow) some herbs is the best way to go.

Most herbs originating from Asia are simple plants that are easy **39.** to plant (plant). You won't struggle much to plant a garden of them on your lawn. Most of them are natively from a warm environment, **40.** so/and they grow best in a warm climate. However, you can also plant them in containers and they'll adapt **41.** to their new environment. Get a package of seeds of your desired herbs and plant them in **42.** suitable (suit) pots. You'd need to give them moisture (水分) and temperature. When the plants grow out of the soil, transfer them to your garden bed **43.** where they can grow well. Make sure your pots, as well as your garden bed, **44.** are exposed (expose) to natural sunlight. These herbs grow on moisture, but too much of it could be dangerous for them. If you **45.** have equipped (equip) your house with HVAC equipment (供暖与空气调节设备) already, research ways how to maintain the herbs' growth while using air

conditioning.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,是你校学生会主席。你校将开展卫生大扫除活动,新来的外教 Sara 给你发邮件,想了解此次活动的详情,请你写一封电子邮件告知她具体情况。内容包括:

1. 活动的目的和时间;
2. 活动安排;
3. 注意事项。

注意:词数 80 左右。

参考词汇:大扫除 a thorough clean

##### [参考范文]

Dear Sara,

In order to improve our school's environment, our school plans to launch a thorough clean. As the chairman of the Students' Union, I will take the responsibility to give you some detailed information.

The activity is scheduled at 2:00 pm on Saturday. Each class will be divided into three groups. The first group are going to sweep and mop the floor, the second are to clean the windows, desks and chairs, and the third are responsible for the area outside the classroom. Most importantly, all the students must be aware; safety comes first; do not play with tools; remember to get to the classroom before 2:00 pm and bring tools.

Best wishes!

Yours,  
Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Spelling was my favourite subject in fourth grade. Every week I memorised the new words, and by Friday I was prepared to take the spelling test. I usually got all the words right. My teacher, Mrs Casazza, usually wrote “Excellent!” on the top of my paper.

One day, Mrs Casazza announced to the class that we would have a spelling bee (拼字比赛) on

Thursday. “Oh, no,” I thought. Last month when I had to stand in front of the class and give a book report, my arms shook so badly that it was hard to read my paper. I was very conscious of the twenty-seven pairs of eyes on me and all I wanted to do was to run back to my seat. A spelling bee would be even worse. I wouldn't have a paper to read from!

After lunch on Thursday, Mrs Casazza explained the rules. “Say the word, spell it, and then say it again,” she said. “Be careful not to repeat any letters.” One at a time, she pronounced a word for each student to spell. Two boys made mistakes right away and had to sit down. With sweaty hands, I waited for my turn. After the girl next to me correctly spelled her word, Mrs Casazza called my name and said, “Your word is ‘echo’.”

“Echo,” I started. Then my mind went blank. Everyone was looking at me, waiting for me to speak out the first letter. But I couldn't think. My face got hot and I was unable to finish the word. Mrs Casazza had to let me sit down. Afterwards, Mrs Casazza said it worked so well that she decided to have a spelling bee every Thursday.

Afraid that I'd mess up again, I didn't want to go to school the following Thursday. “What's wrong?” my mother asked. I told her about the

spelling bee and explained that I was nervous when they were all looking at me. “You're a good speller and you do so well in your tests, so just believe in yourself,” my mother said.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*The encouragement from my mother gave me much confidence in myself. Soon the spelling bee was coming again and my word was “piece”. “Piece,” I started. “P...” The strange feeling that everyone was staring at me began to appear again, but I remembered what my mother had said. Taking a deep breath, I had a big smile on my face. My mind cleared and I concentrated. Now did the word start with P-I or P-E? I knew this. We'd learned that there is a “pie” in “piece”. “I-E-C-E,” I said. “Piece.”*

*“Very good,” Mrs Casazza said with a cheerful smile on her face. I did it once, so I knew I could do it again. Throughout the year, I even won a few spelling bees. It worked so well that I had so much fun from the spelling bee and looked forward to it every Thursday. Thanks to my mother, I wasn't afraid of standing in front of the class. Now, I have more confidence in myself at school, jumping at the chance to give speeches and book reports.*

## 综合检测(二)

(时间:100 分钟,分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

### A

#### Amazing Stories of Animals Acting Just Like Humans

◆Horses are picky eaters.

Horses have an even better sense of smell than humans do. When horses raise their noses and open their nostrils (鼻孔), their nervous system allows them to sense smells we can't sense. This might explain why they refuse dirty water and carefully

move around meadows, eating only the tastiest grass, experts say.

◆A whale says thanks.

In 2011, a whale expert spotted a humpback whale trapped in a fishing net and spent an hour freeing it. Afterwards, in an hour-long display of thanks, the whale swam near their boat and leaped into the air about 40 times.

◆Pandas like to be naughty.

Is there anything more lovely than a baby

panda, except maybe a human baby? In fact, baby pandas sometimes behave like human babies. They sleep in the same positions and value their thumbs. A panda is shy by nature for its shy behaviours such as covering its face with a paw or ducking its head when confronted by a stranger.

◆ A cat honours its owner.

Paper towels and a plastic cup are just a few of the gifts that Toldo, a devoted three-year-old gray-and-white cat, has placed on his former owner Iozzelli Renzo's grave every day since the man died in September 2011. Renzo adopted Toldo from a shelter when the cat was three months old, and the two formed an inseparable bond. After Renzo passed away, Toldo followed the coffin to the cemetery, and now "stands guard" at the grave for hours at a time.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了与人类行为相似的一些动物的行为。

1. What can horses do to pick the most delicious grass?

- A. Feel it.                      B. Smell it.  
C. Observe it.                 D. Taste it.

B 细节理解题。根据 Horses are picky eaters. 部分中的 "their nervous system allows them to sense smells we can't sense. This might explain why they refuse dirty water and carefully move around meadows, eating only the tastiest grass" 可知, 它们的神经系统会让它们感觉到我们人类感觉不到的气味。这或许可以解释为什么它们拒绝饮用脏水, 在草地上小心翼翼地走动, 只吃最美味的草。所以马是靠嗅觉来挑选最美味的草。故选 B。

2. Which animal feels shy when facing strangers?

- A. The whale.                 B. The horse.  
C. The panda.                 D. The cat.

C 细节理解题。根据 Pandas like to be naughty. 部分中的 "A panda is shy by nature for its shy behaviours such as covering its face with a paw or ducking its head when confronted by a stranger." 可知, 熊猫天生害羞, 它们有害羞的行为, 比如在遇到陌生人时, 会用爪子遮住脸, 低下头。所以熊

猫遇到陌生人时会害羞。故选 C。

3. What do the whale and the cat have in common according to the passage?

- A. They have a grateful heart.  
B. They are quite clever.  
C. They are active and lovely.  
D. They have a good sense of smell.

A 推理判断题。根据 A whale says thanks. 部分中的 "Afterwards, in an hour-long display of thanks, the whale swam near their boat and leaped into the air about 40 times." 以及 A cat honours its owner. 部分中的 "a devoted three-year-old gray-and-white cat, has placed on his former owner Iozzelli Renzo's grave every day since the man died in September 2011" 可判断出, 鲸鱼和猫的共同特点是它们有一颗感恩的心。故选 A。

## B

We all know that the blue light that emits from our smartphones isn't good for our eyes, but a new study has discovered just how much damage it can cause. Researchers say that this light is absorbed by vital molecules in our retina (视网膜) and triggers the production of a toxic chemical that kills cells.

This damage can lead to large blind spots in our vision that are the hallmark of macular degeneration (黄斑变性), a disease that leads to blindness. The team from the University of Toledo in Ohio says it is urging the public not to use phones in the dark because this can dilate (放大) pupils and lead to even more harmful blue light entering our eyes.

Age-related macular degeneration (AMD) is the leading cause of vision loss for those aged 50 or older, according to the National Eye Institute. The condition occurs when the macula, an oval area near the centre of the retina that allows for sharp vision, becomes damaged.

Sufferers will experience blurred vision or even "blind spots" in their central vision that may grow larger as the retina dies. Treatments include medications that stop new blood vessels from forming in the eye as well as laser therapies that

destroy abnormal blood vessels.

For this study, the team decided to focus on retinal, a form of vitamin A found in the retina that converts light into metabolic energy. Photoreceptor cells (视细胞) use retinal to convert light into signals that are sent to the brain.

“The human eye reflects UV light (such as from the sun) very well but it allows blue light to enter and the retinal can absorb blue light very well,” lead author Dr Ajith Karunarathne, an assistant professor in the UT Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry, said.

Dr Karunarathne noted that blue light alone or retinal that hadn't absorbed blue light did not have any effect on the cells. He added that there was no activity when retinal was exposed to other light colours such as green, red or yellow.

The team did find a molecule, a vitamin E derivative (衍生物) known as alpha-tocopherol, that can stop the cells from dying.

“When you damage the photoreceptor cells, they're damaged for good, so the vitamin E derivative currently just reduces damage,” said Dr Karunarathne. “We're currently screening for more molecules to see if they can stop this damaging reaction.”

He explained that as we get older, the ability to prevent attacks from retinal that has absorbed blue light becomes weaker, which leads to macular degeneration.

“Looking at cell phones in the dark can be very harmful because the pupils are dilated so more blue light can get in and cause damage,” he said.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了最新研究显示,手机等电子产品发出的蓝光可能会对眼睛有较大伤害。

4. What does the underlined word “hallmark” in Paragraph 2 mean?

- A. Method.                      B. Symbol.  
C. Idea.                            D. Feature.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“This

damage can lead to large blind spots in our vision”和后面的“a disease that leads to blindness”可知,这种伤害可能导致视觉上出现较大的盲点,这也是黄斑变性的一大特征。所以 hallmark 为“特征”之意。故选 D。

5. Blue light damages our vision because it can \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. dilate pupils to cause retina cells to die  
B. cause large blind spots related to blindness  
C. produce a chemical that destroys blood vessels  
D. be reflected by important molecules in our retina

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“This damage can lead to large blind spots in our vision that are the hallmark of macular degeneration (黄斑变性), a disease that leads to blindness.”可知,蓝光损害我们的视力,因为它可以造成与失明相关的、较大的盲点。故选 B。

6. Which of the following statements may Dr Ajith Karunarathne agree with?

- A. Blue light alone has a great influence on the cell.  
B. People's eyes can absorb both UV light and blue light.  
C. Alpha-tocopherol will help photoreceptor cells to recover.  
D. The ability to withstand attacks from retinal becomes weak when we become older.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知,当我们变老时,抵抗吸收了蓝光的视黄醛攻击的能力变弱。故选 D。

7. What is most likely to be further discussed if the article continues?

- A. Some ways to protect our vision.  
B. The reasons for macular degeneration.  
C. The function of the vitamin E derivative.  
D. How photoreceptor cells convert light into signals.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容及全文可知,文章主要介绍蓝光对眼睛的伤害,从而推断,如果文章继续展开,最有可能进一步讨论一些保护视力的方法。故选 A。

## C

Scientists from the British Antarctic Survey (BAS) have found evidence of diverse life forms in the sediment (沉淀物) of an Antarctic sub-glacial lake (南极冰下湖) for the first time. The possibility that extreme life forms might exist in the cold and dark lakes hidden kilometres beneath the Antarctic ice sheet has attracted scientists for decades.

Direct sampling of these lakes from the inside of Antarctica continues to present major technological challenges, however. Recognising this, scientists from BAS have been searching around the withdrawing edges of the ice sheet for sub-glacial lakes that are becoming exposed for the first time. This is because parts of the ice sheet are melting and withdrawing at such fast rates as the temperature rises at the poles.

The group targeted Lake Hodgson on the Antarctic Peninsula, which was covered by more than 400m of ice at the end of the last Ice Age, but now has a thin covering of just three to four metres of ice. The lake was thought to be a severe environment for any form of life, but the layers of mud at the bottom of the lake represent a time capsule storing the DNA of the microbes (微生物), which have lived there for thousands of years. The scientists took samples of the mud from the bottom of the lake. The top few centimetres of the mud contained current and recent creatures which live in the lake, but once the samples reached 3.2m deep, the microbes most likely date back to nearly 100,000 years ago.

“We were surprised at the high biomass (生物量) and diversity. This is the first time microbes have been identified living in the sediment of an Antarctic sub-glacial lake,” leading author David Pearce says. “And it indicates that life can exist in environments we would consider too extreme. The fact that these creatures have survived in such a unique environment could mean they have developed in such unique ways, which would be exciting

discoveries for us. This is the early stage and we now need to do more work to further investigate these life forms.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了科学家首次在南极冰下湖的沉淀物中发现了多种生命形式存在的证据,有的微生物可以追溯到近十多年前。

8. What can we learn from the first two paragraphs?
- All parts of the ice sheet are melting and withdrawing at fast rates.
  - There are major difficulties in taking direct samples of life in the lakes.
  - That extreme life forms exist near the surface of the lake has attracted scientists.
  - Scientists have first discovered the edges of the ice sheet of the sub-glacial lake.
- B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Direct sampling of these lakes from the inside of Antarctica continues to present major technological challenges, however.”可知,从这些湖里直接取样面临着重大技术难题。故选B。
9. Why did scientists choose Lake Hodgson to do the research project?
- They found mud layers with microbes at the bottom.
  - It is regarded as a very difficult environment to live in.
  - It has much more varieties of life forms.
  - Its covering of ice is now very thin.
- D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The group targeted Lake Hodgson on the Antarctic Peninsula, which was covered by more than 400m of ice at the end of the last Ice Age, but now has a thin covering of just three to four metres of ice.”可知,科学家选择 Lake Hodgson 的原因是这里的冰层现在非常薄。故选D。
10. What can be inferred from the microbes at the bottom of the Antarctic sub-glacial lake?
- The scientists don't fully know how the microbes have developed.
  - With the temperature rising quickly, the microbes will no longer exist.
  - The top few centimetres of the mud contained the DNA of the ancient microbes.

D. The microbes living deep have proven to date back to about 100,000 years ago.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The fact that these creatures have survived in such a unique environment could mean they have developed in such unique ways, which would be exciting discoveries for us. This is the early stage and we now need to do more work to further investigate these life forms.”可知,科学家对于这些微生物是如何进化的还不完全了解。故选 A。

11. What is the text mainly about?

- A. Scientists have been searching for diverse life forms in an Antarctic sub-glacial lake.
- B. Scientists have discovered life in the sediment of an Antarctic sub-glacial lake.
- C. Scientists want to prove that life can exist in extremely bad conditions.
- D. Scientists will further investigate creatures in the layers of mud.

B 主旨大意题。根据全文,尤其是第一段中的“Scientists from the British Antarctic Survey (BAS) have found evidence of diverse life forms in the sediment (沉淀物) of an Antarctic sub-glacial lake (南极冰下湖) for the first time.”可知,文章主要介绍了科学家首次在南极冰下湖的沉积物中发现了多种生命形式存在的证据。故选 B。

D

Being perfect is something many of us want and try to achieve. It makes us feel we're correct and that our hard work has paid off. However, as much as perfection and being perfect is not all a perfect thing.

Perfection is all about being without mistakes and criticism. Wanting or trying to be perfect can make it hard to admit a mistake. Nevertheless, it is important to own up to mistakes and work to fix them. Not being able to take criticism and fix mistakes is arrogance, not perfection.

Perfection is a double-edged sword. In our lives, we want perfection. Perfection holds us accountable; it's the mistakes and imperfection that keep pushing us harder and further at what we do.

It's the perfect motivator. But it's also the perfect killer. For example, the movie *Black Swan* showcased how perfection can kill us. Working and training and stress hurt our body, mind, and so much more that we can't do it any more.

But perfection can also have the opposite effect. The movie *High Strung* showed that perfection doesn't exist, but practising and pushing ourselves can bring us great rewards. In *Black Swan*, the main character tried to be perfect but he also compared himself to someone else who he thought was better than him. This added more pressure and self-doubt, which can cause unhealthy ways of achieving perfection. The main character of *Black Swan* didn't know when to stop, whereas the main character of *High Strung* did, or at least didn't focus so much on the comparison, and instead focused on the competition and the ones she cared about.

Perfection is something we can't live without and can't live with. The only way to keep the sword from cutting us is if we know when to stop. Some days are going to be good days and others will be bad. We have to take whatever day it is—perfect or imperfect—and hope that's enough.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了完美是我们很多人想要并努力实现的,并指出完美并不是没有错误和批评,完美是一把双刃剑。

12. What does the underlined phrase “own up to” mean in Paragraph 2?

- A. Make.
- B. Avoid.
- C. Correct.
- D. Acknowledge.

D 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“Not being able to take criticism and fix mistakes is arrogance, not perfection.”以及画线短语后的“mistakes and work to fix them”可知,不能接受批评和纠正错误是傲慢,而不是完美,所以承认错误并努力改正是很重要的。故画线短语的意思是“承认”。故选 D。

13. What prevents the character in *Black Swan* from going further?

- A. Comparison.
- B. Self-doubt.
- C. Pressure.



D. Competition.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*In Black Swan*, the main character tried to be perfect but he also compared himself to someone else who he thought was better than him. This added more pressure and self-doubt, which can cause unhealthy ways of achieving perfection.”可知,是比较阻止了《黑天鹅》中的角色走得更远。故选 A。

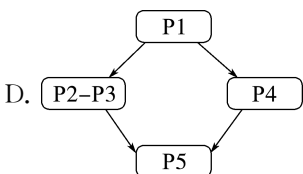
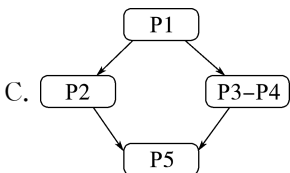
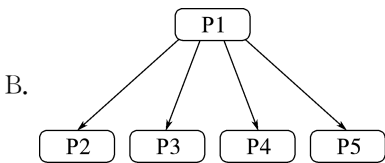
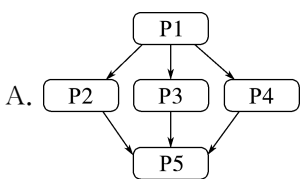
14. What does the author advise us to do while trying to be perfect?

- A. Try not to make mistakes.  
B. Push ourselves harder.  
C. Stop before going too far.  
D. Prove our ability to others.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Perfection is a double-edged sword. In our lives, we want perfection. Perfection holds us accountable; it's the mistakes and imperfection that keep pushing us harder and further at what we do. It's the perfect motivator. But it's also the perfect killer.”可知,作者建议我们在追求完美的同时,不要走得太远。故选 C。

15. What could be the best structure of the passage?

(P=Paragraph)



C 篇章结构题。通读全文可知,第一段总起全

文,引出关于“完美”的话题;第二段中的“Perfection is all about being without mistakes and criticism.”为第一个论点,第三段和第四段指出完美是一把双刃剑,为第二个论点;最后通过第五段的内容对全文进行总结。由此可推知,选项 C 最符合文章结构。故选 C。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

If you like spending more time outside close to home, you may notice a lot more of what happens naturally in your neighbourhood. 16 That's called “citizen” or “community” science. Thousands of community science projects are out there. Here's how to get started.

Figure out what sparks your curiosity. Ask yourself what gets you excited about nature. Do you love observing the weather? Are you concerned about the water quality where you live? 17 Then there's going to be a project about them.

18 All you need is a smartphone or a computer for most community science projects. Check out *citizenscience.gov* to learn more and find projects in the database. If you're interested in a broader topic but you're not sure exactly what you want to study, you can choose a broader topic like “astronomy and space” and see a range of available projects. 19 Naturalist allows you to record your observations to share with fellow naturalists. Or Bird is a great way to turn your birdwatching hobby into a service for scientists, too.

You can be a citizen scientist no matter where you live. People often see nature, especially if you live in a city, as something that is far away or hard to get to. In fact, studying nature can happen everywhere, even in the cracks of the sidewalk. You don't have to be out in the wilderness. 20

- A. Gather your tools.  
B. Turn to naturalists.  
C. Just step outside and start your observation.  
D. Or you might be really into birds or flowers.  
E. Citizen science can be fun and sometimes quite interesting.  
F. If you have a good idea of what you're interested in, you can turn to a specialised app.  
G. Regular people like you and I can share what we

see with scientists through apps and websites.

答案:16~20 GDAFC

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

At 91, Dr Edith Kaufmann was the second oldest person in the area. I met her when I 21 at a care home for the elderly in London six years ago. I didn't realise it would be the start of a close 22, where the age gap spanned six decades.

At first sight, I was 23 by her self-confidence. Her doctorate (博士学位) told me she was intelligent and 24. From the beginning, I never felt as if Edith and I 25 conversation. Edith could have a full conversation with me about anything, and her memory stretched back so easily, 26 even small things which took place 80 years ago.

She was also 27. She loved dancing as a child and I recall, only a few weeks before her death, 28 she smiled when I played the waltz and we 29 hands and danced along to the music. Although in her later years she was 30 to a wheelchair, she still participated in the exercise classes.

As I 31 Edith each week, I realised that I was going as much for me as I was for her. I learnt to take the words of 32 when I could get them. When I have 33 over the years, and small decisions have weighed on my mind, I have 34 nothing more than the opportunity to regain my perspective (视角) on life and what actually 35.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者与 Edith Kaufmann 博士成为朋友的故事。作者在与 Edith Kaufmann 博士的友谊中重新审视了自己的人生观, 知道了真正重要的东西。

21. A. studied                      B. relaxed  
C. volunteered                  D. lectured

C 根据下文“at a care home”和“she smiled when I played the waltz”可知, 作者在养老院做志愿工作, 故选 C。

22. A. cooperation                B. friendship  
C. attention                      D. encounter

B 本句提到作者与 Edith 之间有 60 岁的年龄差, 再结合下文“I never felt as if Edith and I 25 conversation. Edith could have a full

conversation with me about anything”可知, 作者与 Edith 无话不谈, 发展了一段亲密的友谊, 所以此处表示作者没有意识到她们会发展出一段亲密的友谊, 故选 B。

23. A. upset                        B. embarrassed  
C. stressed                      D. struck

D 根据下文“Her doctorate (博士学位) told me she was intelligent and 24.”可知, Edith 聪明, 可以和作者畅谈任何事情, 所以作者很欣赏 Edith, 被她的自信打动。be struck by 表示“被……打动”, 故选 D。

24. A. helpful                    B. kind  
C. bossy                         D. sharp

D 根据上文“Her doctorate (博士学位)”和“told me she was intelligent”可知, 此处应选择“敏锐”, 与 intelligent(聪明)并列说明 Edith 的优点, 故选 D。

25. A. lacked                      B. enjoyed  
C. needed                        D. started

A 根据下文“Edith could have a full conversation with me about anything”可知, 作者与 Edith 无话不谈, 所以作者觉得和 Edith 之间并不缺乏交谈, 故选 A。

26. A. explaining                B. confusing  
C. forgetting                    D. recalling

D 根据下文“even small things which took place 80 years ago”可知, Edith 的记忆力很好, 能回忆起 80 年前的小事, 故选 D。

27. A. artistic                     B. literary  
C. active                         D. capable

C 根据下文“She loved dancing as a child”和“Although in her later years she was 30 to a wheelchair, she still participated in the exercise classes.”可知, 她很活跃, 故选 C。

28. A. how                         B. why  
C. what                         D. when

A 根据下文“she smiled when I played the waltz”可知, Edith 喜欢跳舞, 所以作者记得她在跳舞时微笑着, 是多么高兴。此处 how 表示程度, 强调她很高兴, 故选 A。

29. A. shook                      B. held  
C. raised                         D. clapped

B 根据下文“hands and danced along to the music”可知, 这里是说手拉着手一起跳舞。hold

hands 表示“手拉手”,故选 B。

30. A. restricted            B. devoted  
C. addicted                D. introduced

A 根据下文“to a wheelchair”可知,她晚年坐在轮椅上,所以说她受限于轮椅,故选 A。

31. A. missed                B. visited  
C. called                  D. pushed

B 根据下文“Edith each week”和全文内容可知,作者在 Edith 所在的养老院做志愿者并且与她成了朋友,所以此处应是指每周去看望她,故选 B。

32. A. praise                B. greeting  
C. wisdom                D. thanks

C 根据上文“I learnt to take the words of”和下文“When I have 33 over the years, and small decisions have weighed on my mind, I have 34 nothing more than the opportunity to regain my perspective (视角) on life and what actually 35.”可知,作者在与 Edith 的友谊中,开始审视自己的人生观,知道了生活中什么是最重要的,所以作者学会了接受“智慧之言”,故选 C。

33. A. succeeded            B. failed  
C. dreamed               D. progressed

B 本句提到作者有机会重新审视自己的人生观,再结合并列句“and small decisions have weighed on my mind”可知,此处应表达的是“当我失败时”,故选 B。

34. A. appreciated        B. provided  
C. expected               D. created

A 根据下文“nothing more than the opportunity to regain my perspective (视角) on life and”和全文内容可知,作者在与 Edith 的友谊中,开始审视自己的人生观,知道了生活中什么是最重要的,所以在失败时和需要做决定时,作者对此很感激,故选 A。

35. A. differs                B. matters  
C. exists                  D. happens

B 根据上文“nothing more than the opportunity to regain my perspective (视角) on life and what actually”和全文内容可知,作者开始重新审视自己的人生观,所以知道什么才是真正重要的,故选 B。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Creative activities like baking contribute to a

sense of well-being. When interviewed last week, Boston University professor of psychological and brain sciences Donna Pincus **36. told** (tell) us that there is “a stress relief that people get from a way to express **37. themselves** (them)”.

Baking works wonders in focusing the mind because it often relies **38. on/upon** very exact measurements. For instance, you have to add ingredients in the correct order, **39. or** your cookies will be unpleasantly wet. Having complete focus on a recipe and not allowing yourself to be distracted by your thoughts often bring a healing effect. In the process, most of the decisions have already been made for you, **40. enabling** (enable) you to concentrate on the details while taking your mind away from various **41. anxieties** (anxious) of your life outside the kitchen. **42. Basically** (basic), baking is a creative activity **43. where** you can imagine a happy moment in the future.

Pincus indicates that the act of sharing your product benefits the body and soul. When the bread or cake **44. is finished** (finish) and shared with family or friends, “you feel like you’ve done something meaningful for **45. the** world and increased connection with other people as well.”

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你是李华,你的外国朋友 Jack 要在暑假回国,他想给家人带一些礼物,问你能否给一些建议,请你给他写信介绍一些富有中国特色的礼物。

注意:词数 80 左右。

[参考范文]

Dear Jack,

I am glad to hear that you are going back home during the summer holiday and that you want to bring some gifts for your family members that symbolise the Chinese culture.

Firstly, I suggest that you buy some silk products. As is known, China is famous for silk. You may find a variety of silk products, which are light and easy to carry, such as scarves and handkerchiefs. Secondly, paper-cutting works are also good choices. They are a symbol of traditional Chinese folk culture and good decorations for rooms.

Lastly, some local snacks are also worth buying.

I hope my suggestions are of help to you. If you want to know any other objects, don't hesitate to ask me.

Yours,  
Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Matt is ten years old and always nervous about something. When the night sneaks up on him, he lies in bed with the blanket tightly up around his chin. The shadows on the edge of the ceiling make him slide deeper under the cover. And tonight is no exception. That's why his mother left the light on in the hallway. To frighten away strange noises.

But that's not all that's wrong with Matt. He is also very unhappy. In the daytime he watches everyone pass by. He notices adults carry their briefcases on their way to work. He even worries about how hard they have to work. He sees ladies holding umbrellas in case the rain comes in the afternoon. He thinks a hurricane or a terrible rainstorm might come.

Matt always thinks the worst. He even lingers behind other children on their way to school. Some play friendly tricks on each other and tease and holler in loud voices. Not Matt. He has very few friends. In fact, if he has to think very hard, he can't remember more than two. They live on the other side of Truro. So he's pretty much alone.

That day was very special for Matt. He didn't realise that his grandfather was watching him. He saw Matt go to school and waited for him to come out for lunch. He watched Matt eat by himself on one of the benches in the schoolyard.

It was right near one of Matt's favourite

squirrels. He watched as Matt motioned the squirrel to come across the yard to sit with him. A black blur raced towards him and then jumped up on the bench to take the peanut treat. Grandfather saw this and was glad.

Over the next few days, Grandfather was able to observe the kindness, which Matt had not only for animals but for people as well. When Sally fell off her bike and cut herself, Matt stayed with her until she was fixed up by her mother.

Most of the neighbourhood children took part in a Saturday baseball game with their parents. Matt was watching a few children play ball at Victoria Park.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

[参考范文]

*Matt never played because he thought he was not good enough. He was afraid of making a mistake. He was old enough and big enough but he was too afraid to try. He thought he would never be able to hit the ball. Then he would let everyone down, and they would laugh at him. And if he hit the ball, he would be too slow to run to first base, or he might miss the ball when it was thrown to him.*

*Grandfather knew this and wanted to help Matt. Holding a ball, Grandfather strolled over to Matt and yelled, "Hey, Matt." Matt jumped up with great surprise. "Grandpa!" he shouted. "I want to play baseball. Will you do me a favour to play with me?" Grandfather asked. Matt hesitated, head down. "Sorry, I can't. I play..." "Come on, boy! Let's have fun." With Grandfather's patient encouragement and constant praise, he gradually felt easy to play baseball freely. Matt was confident and he did play in the very next baseball game, which turned out to be an unexpected success.*